



LIBRARY  
—  
LATIN  
—  
SMITH

**DISCARD**

Property of  
Bethany College  
Library

Best Copy

**DISCARD**

Property of  
Bethel College  
Library









THE APPIAN WAY.

# ELEMENTARY LATIN

495  
Sm2

BY

M. L. SMITH

HIGH SCHOOL, GALESBURG  
ILLINOIS

---

*Omne tulit punctum qui miscuit utile dulci.* — HORACE

---

ALLYN AND BACON

BOSTON

NEW YORK

CHICAGO

..ATLANTA

SAN FRANCISCO..

**COPYRIGHT, 1920.**

**BY M. L. SMITH.**

OAP

**Norwood Press**

**J. S. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.**

**Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.**



## PREFACE

*Elementary Latin*, the 1920 edition of Smith's *Latin Lessons*, retains the general plan of the original book. The changes are in matters of detail and serve to emphasize the four fundamental aims of the previous edition. These aims are to make Latin seem alive; to give the first year study a value for general culture; to minimize the difficulties of beginning Latin; to prepare thoroughly for the second year work.

To carry further the first two aims of the book, the number of illustrations has been nearly doubled, and a description in English is attached to each. These descriptions taken together give a general idea of the life and customs of the Romans.

To minimize the difficulties of beginning Latin, the early lessons have been divided and made shorter, so that the approach to the subject is much more gradual in the new edition than in the old. The first ten lessons of the former edition make twenty in the new book.

Another feature not only lessens the difficulties of the first year but also carries out the fourth aim, which is to help prepare more thoroughly for the second year's work. This new feature is the introduction of forty passages in connected Latin. These begin in the fifth lesson and continue throughout the book. They are supplemented by the Story of Ulysses and by interesting passages from Caesar.

In a word, the author has endeavored to make *Elementary Latin* simpler and more thorough than its predecessor, and at the same time more interesting and attractive.

M. L. S.

GALESBURG, ILLINOIS,  
April 8, 1920.



# CONTENTS

	PAGE
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS . . . . .	xi
LESSON	
I. THE VALUE OF LATIN . . . . .	1
II. THE LATIN CASES . . . . .	3
III. FIRST DECLENSION . . . . .	6
IV. PRESENT INDICATIVE . . . . .	8
V. DIRECT OBJECT . . . . .	10
Arena Romana. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	12
VI. REVIEW . . . . .	13
VII. SECOND DECLENSION . . . . .	14
VIII. CONJUGATION OF <b>Sum</b> . . . . .	17
Gallia. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	18
IX. SECOND DECLENSION, NEUTER . . . . .	19
X. ADJECTIVES . . . . .	21
Oppugnatio Oppidi. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	23
XI. REVIEW . . . . .	24
Via Appia. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	26
XII. PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS . . . . .	27
XIII. IMPERFECT AND FUTURE TENSES. INDIRECT OBJECT	29
XIV. ADJECTIVES ( <i>Continued</i> ). ABLATIVE OF MEANS . . . . .	33
Servus Malus. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	35
XV. CONJUGATION OF <b>Sum</b> ( <i>Continued</i> ) . . . . .	36
XVI. PERFECT TENSE . . . . .	38
XVII. PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES . . . . .	40
XVIII. EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE . . . . .	42
Carolus et Poma. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	44
XIX. REVIEW . . . . .	45

LESSON		PAGE
XX.	THIRD DECLENSION . . . . .	47
XXI.	THIRD DECLENSION. ABLATIVE OF ACCOM- PANIMENT . . . . .	50
	Servus Fidus. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	52
XXII.	SECOND CONJUGATION . . . . .	54
XXIII.	THIRD DECLENSION ( <i>Continued</i> ) . . . . .	57
XXIV.	THIRD DECLENSION. I-Stems . . . . .	60
	Helvetii. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	63
XXV.	REVIEW . . . . .	64
XXVI.	PASSIVE VOICE. ABLATIVE OF AGENT . . . . .	66
XXVII.	THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES . . . . .	71
	Auxilium Amici. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	73
XXVIII.	THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES . . . . .	75
XXIX.	SECOND CONJUGATION, PASSIVE . . . . .	77
	Dux Militibus. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	79
XXX.	REVIEW . . . . .	80
XXXI.	Possum. COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE . . . . .	82
	Populus Romanus. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	83
XXXII.	THIRD CONJUGATION . . . . .	85
XXXIII.	APPOSITION. PARSING . . . . .	88
XXXIV.	THIRD CONJUGATION. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE . . . . .	90
	Puer et Poma. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	92
XXXV.	THIRD CONJUGATION, PASSIVE . . . . .	93
XXXVI.	REVIEW . . . . .	96
	Rex Galliae. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	97
XXXVII.	COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES . . . . .	98
XXXVIII.	COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN -er AND -lis . . . . .	101
XXXIX.	IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES . . . . .	104
	A Practical Joke. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	106
XL.	FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS . . . . .	107
	Horatius Cocles. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	109
XLI.	REVIEW . . . . .	111



# CONTENTS

vii

LESSON	PAGE
XLII. FOURTH DECLENSION. GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE	113
The Mouse-Tower I. <i>Reading Lesson</i>	115
XLIII. FIFTH DECLENSION. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES	116
The Mouse-Tower II. <i>Reading Lesson</i>	119
XLIV. FOURTH CONJUGATION	120
XLV. FOURTH CONJUGATION, PASSIVE	123
Corneliae Ornamenta. <i>Reading Lesson</i>	125
XLVI. ADJECTIVES OF PECULIAR DECLENSION	126
XLVII. REVIEW	128
Forum Romanum. <i>Reading Lesson</i>	129
XLVIII. INFINITIVES. INDIRECT DISCOURSE	130
XLIX. Duo AND Trēs	135
The Weather-Wise Donkey. <i>Reading Lesson</i>	136
L. THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS IN -iō	138
LI. NUMERALS	140
A Breach of Discipline. <i>Reading Lesson</i>	143
LII. PREPOSITIONS	144
Orgetorix. <i>Reading Lesson</i>	146
LIII. REVIEW	147
Nasica et Ennius. <i>Reading Lesson</i>	148
LIV. SUBJUNCTIVE. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE	149
LV. SEQUENCE OF TENSES	152
Tarpeia. <i>Reading Lesson</i>	155
LVI. REVIEW	157
Robert, King of Scots I. <i>Reading Lesson</i>	158
LVII. DEPONENT VERBS	159
Robert, King of Scots II. <i>Reading Lesson</i>	161
LVIII. SUBJUNCTIVE AND OBJECTIVE GENITIVES. GENI-	
TIVE WITH ADJECTIVES	162
LIX. SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT	165
Domus Romana. <i>Reading Lesson</i>	167
LX. REVIEW	168

LESSON	PAGE
LXI. RELATIVE PRONOUN . . . . .	169
LXII. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	172
The Beginnings of Rome. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	175
LXIII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS . . . . .	176
Romulus and Remus. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	179
LXIV. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	180
LXV. REVIEW . . . . .	183
The Death of Amulius. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	183
LXVI. FERŌ AND ITS COMPOUNDS . . . . .	185
The Naming of Rome. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	187
LXVII. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	188
LXVIII. DOUBLE QUESTIONS . . . . .	191
The Seizure of the Women. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	193
LXIX. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS . . . . .	194
LXX. REVIEW . . . . .	197
The Reign of Romulus. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	198
LXXI. PARTICIPLES . . . . .	199
Numa and Tullus. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	202
LXXII. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE . . . . .	203
The Fourth and Fifth Kings. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	205
LXXIII. SUBJUNCTIVE WITH Cum . . . . .	207
Servius Tullius . . . . .	210
LXXIV. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES . . . . .	212
LXXV. REVIEW . . . . .	217
LXXVI. EŌ. DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS . . . . .	219
Tarquin the Proud. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	221
LXXVII. Volŏ, Nŏlŏ, Mālŏ. DATIVE OF PURPOSE . . . . .	222
Virgines Vestales. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	224
LXXVIII. SEMI-DEPONENTS. DATIVE OF POSSESSOR . . . . .	225
The First Punic War. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	227
LXXIX. GERUND AND GERUNDIVE . . . . .	228
The Capture of Regulus. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	231

# CONTENTS

ix

LESSON	PAGE
LXXX. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS . . . . .	232
LXXXI. REVIEW OF CASES . . . . .	235
LXXXII. REVIEW OF CASES ( <i>Continued</i> ) . . . . .	237
LXXXIII. REVIEW OF SUBJUNCTIVES . . . . .	239
The Heroism of Regulus. <i>Reading Lesson</i> . . . . .	240

## SUPPLEMENTARY READING

The Story of Ulysses . . . . .	243
Selections from Caesar . . . . .	255

## SONGS

<i>Gaudeamus Igitur</i> . . . . .	267
<i>Vexillum Stellatum</i> . . . . .	268
<i>Rei Publicae Paean Militaris</i> . . . . .	270
<i>Flevit Lepus Parvulus</i> . . . . .	272
<i>Dies Festus Hodie</i> . . . . .	273
<i>Domine Salvam Fac</i> . . . . .	273
<i>Integer Vitae</i> . . . . .	274

## APPENDICES

I. FREQUENCY OF LATIN WORDS AND PHRASES . . . . .	275
Latin in Everyday Use . . . . .	275
State Mottoes . . . . .	276
Latin Words in the Constitution . . . . .	277
Latin Phrases . . . . .	277
Abbreviations for Latin Words . . . . .	278
Latin Quotations . . . . .	279
II. HELPFUL HINTS . . . . .	282
First Half Year	
Vocabulary . . . . .	282
Inflections . . . . .	286
Principles of Syntax . . . . .	287
Word Formation . . . . .	287
Derivation Notebook . . . . .	289

	PAGE
Oral Sentence Work . . . . .	290
Latin Readings . . . . .	290
Second Half Year	
Vocabulary . . . . .	290
Inflections . . . . .	294
Principles of Syntax . . . . .	295
Word Formation . . . . .	295
Oral Sentence Work . . . . .	296
Latin Readings . . . . .	296
Composition . . . . .	296
III. INFLECTIONS . . . . .	297
Nouns . . . . .	297
Adjectives . . . . .	299
Pronouns . . . . .	304
Verbs . . . . .	307
English Grammar . . . . .	323
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	1
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY . . . . .	33
INDEX . . . . .	47



## ILLUSTRATIONS

1. The Appian Way ( <i>colored</i> ) . . . . .	<i>Frontispiece</i>
	PAGE
2. A Roman Amphitheater in Gaul . . . . .	5
3. A Trumpet . . . . .	6
4. Roman Sword and Javelin . . . . .	9
5. Roman Writing Materials . . . . .	11
6. The Roman Arena at Nimes . . . . .	12
7. Legatus . . . . .	15
8. Roman Manuscripts . . . . .	16
9. Roman Boxers . . . . .	18
10. The Colosseum at Rome . . . . .	20
11. The Storming of a Town . . . . .	23
12. The Appian Way . . . . .	24
13. Via Appia . . . . .	26
14. A Roman Street Scene ( <i>colored</i> ) . . . . .	<i>facing</i> 28
15. Murus Fossaque . . . . .	30
16. The Porta San Sebastiano at Rome . . . . .	32
17. Roman Bow, Arrow, and Javelin . . . . .	34
18. The Colosseum seen through the Arch of Titus ( <i>full page</i> )	<i>facing</i> 36
19. Pompeii and Its Destroyer . . . . .	43
20. The Street of the Tombs at Pompeii . . . . .	46
21. A Roman Sword in Its Sheath . . . . .	49
22. The Library of Hadrian's Villa . . . . .	51
23. The Olympeium at Athens . . . . .	53
24. The Amphitheater at Pompeii . . . . .	56
25. The Colosseum ( <i>full page</i> ) . . . . .	<i>facing</i> 56
26. The Roman Forum . . . . .	59
27. Caesar . . . . .	62
28. Ruins of the so-called Imperial Palace at Trèves . . . . .	63
29. Porta a Romanis Aedificata . . . . .	68
30. Centurio . . . . .	70
31. Navis Romana . . . . .	72
32. The Temple of Fortuna at Pompeii . . . . .	74
33. Imperator . . . . .	76

	PAGE
34. A Roman Triumph ( <i>colored</i> ) . . . . .	<i>facing</i> 78
35. The Colosseum . . . . .	81
36. The Arch of Titus . . . . .	84
37. The So-called Temple of Vesta at Rome . . . . .	87
38. Roman Balances . . . . .	89
39. The Claudian Aqueduct . . . . .	91
40. A Roman Camp . . . . .	95
41. Ancient Gallic Monuments . . . . .	97
42. Pons Romanus . . . . .	99
43. Sacrificing a Bull . . . . .	102
44. Relief under the Arch of Titus . . . . .	103
45. Cicero . . . . .	108
46. The Tiber and Hadrian's Tomb . . . . .	110
47. The River Rhine . . . . .	112
48. Roman Soldier with Spear and Shield . . . . .	117
49. The Bridge of Augustus at Rimini . . . . .	118
50. The Mouse-Tower on the Rhine . . . . .	119
51. A Pompeian Kitchen . . . . .	122
52. A Roman Chariot Race ( <i>full page</i> ) . . . . .	<i>facing</i> 122
53. Cornelia and Her Jewels . . . . .	125
54. Jupiter . . . . .	127
55. The Roman Forum Restored ( <i>full page</i> ) . . . . .	<i>facing</i> 129
56. Minerva . . . . .	132
57. The Roman Forum . . . . .	133
58. The Temple of Apollo at Pompeii . . . . .	134
59. Ruins of a Roman House at Pompeii . . . . .	137
60. Roman Temple at Nîmes . . . . .	139
61. The Dying Gaul . . . . .	142
62. A Roman Candelabrum . . . . .	143
63. Augustus Caesar . . . . .	145
64. The Swimming-Pool at Hadrian's Villa . . . . .	146
65. A Roman Urn . . . . .	150
66. Naples and Vesuvius . . . . .	151
67. Interior of the Pantheon . . . . .	154
68. The Tarpeian Rock . . . . .	156
69. A German Bodyguard . . . . .	157
70. Spring, an Ancient Festival ( <i>full page</i> ) . . . . .	<i>facing</i> 160
71. Juno . . . . .	163
72. The Little Theater at Pompeii . . . . .	164
73. A Roman House ( <i>colored</i> ) . . . . .	<i>facing</i> 167

	PAGE
74. House of the Vettii, Pompeii . . . . .	170
75. A Roman Aqueduct in Gaul . . . . .	173
76. Mars . . . . .	175
77. The Temple of Apollo at Pompeii . . . . .	177
78. A Roman Altar . . . . .	179
79. A Roman Slinger . . . . .	182
80. The Arch of Constantine . . . . .	184
81. A View of the Rhine . . . . .	186
82. Marcus Aurelius . . . . .	189
83. The Roman Forum Restored . . . . .	190
84. Pompey . . . . .	192
85. The Palatine Hill . . . . .	196
86. Augustus as Imperator . . . . .	198
87. The Alban Lake . . . . .	202
88. The Palace of Titus . . . . .	206
89. The Marine Gate at Pompeii . . . . .	208
90. A Charioteer . . . . .	210
91. The Parthenon at Athens . . . . .	211
92. Cicero denouncing Catiline . . . . .	215
93. View inside the Porta San Sebastiano . . . . .	217
94. The Baths of Caracalla . . . . .	221
95. Agrippina, Mother of Nero . . . . .	223
96. A Vestal Virgin . . . . .	224
97. Syracuse . . . . .	227
98. The Harbors of Carthage . . . . .	231
99. Caesar's Famous Bridge across the Rhine . . . . .	233
100. The Interior of the Colosseum . . . . .	236
101. A Roman Matron . . . . .	238
102. The Site of the Citadel at Carthage . . . . .	240
103. The Temple of Neptune at Paestum . . . . .	241
104. The Ruins of Troy . . . . .	243
105. Mount Aetna in Sicily . . . . .	246
106. Ulysses . . . . .	247
107. Laocoön . . . . .	249
Map of Italy and Gaul . . . . .	<i>following</i> 254





## INTRODUCTION

**I. The Latin Alphabet.**—Latin is the language of the people who inhabited ancient Latium. The chief city of Latium was Rome. The conquests of the Romans made Latin the principal language not only of Italy but of all Western Europe. The modern languages of Italy, France, Spain, and Portugal are derived directly from Latin, and most English words come from it directly or indirectly.

Not only have English and Latin many similar words and constructions, but the Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no **j** and no **w**. **I** is generally a consonant between vowels, and at the beginning of a word before a vowel: **eius, iubeō**.

(a) The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y**.

(b) The diphthongs are **ae, au, oe, ei, eu, ui**.

(c) The double consonants are **x** (= *cs* or *gs*) and **z** (= *ds*).

**II. Vowels.**—English vowels have various sounds, as **a** in *fate, fat, far*, and *fall*. But Latin vowel sounds are simple and uniform.

The *quantity* of a vowel refers to the length of time given to its pronunciation. A vowel is either long or short. Twice as much time should be given to the pronunciation of a long vowel as to a short one. A long vowel is marked **ˉ**. The sounds are as follows:

### LONG

**ā** as in *father*: **lātus**.

**ē** as in *they*: **lātē**.

**ī** as in *machine*: **dīcō**.

**ō** as in *old*: **mōns**.

**ū** as in *rude*: **mūrus**.

### SHORT

**a** as in *idea*: **ab**.

**e** as in *net*: **et**.

**i** as in *cigar*: **in**.

**o** as in *wholly*: **rosa**.

**u** as in *put*: **sub**.

III. **Diphthongs.**—Latin diphthongs are easy to learn. They are always long and each has always the same sound, so that a pupil does not have the trouble a foreigner has in learning to pronounce English *hear*, *heard*, *head*, and *heart*.

**ae** like *ai* in *aisle*: **prae**.

**ei** like *ei* in *reign*: **hei**.

**au** like *ow* in *how*: **laudō**.

**eu** like *eu* in *feud*: **neuter**.

**oe** like *oi* in *oil*: **proelium**.

**ui** like *we*: **cui** (*kwe*).

IV. **Consonants.**—Latin consonants, except *v*, *x*, and *i*, are pronounced as in English. Some English consonants have more than one sound, but each Latin consonant has only one.

**c** like *c* in *can*: **castra**.

**g** like *g* in *get*: **gerō**.

**s** like *s* in *yes*: **cōnsul**.

**t** like *t* in *tin*: **tertia**. (Never soft like *sh*.)

**v** like *w* in *went*: **ventus**.

**z** like *dz* in *adze*.

**i** (consonant) has the sound of *y* in *yet*: **iubeō**.

**ch** has the sound of *k*: **pulcher**.

**bs** and **bt** have the sound of *ps* and *pt*: **urbs**, **obtimeō**.

V. **Quantity of Vowels.**—The quantity of vowels should be learned by observation. A few rules, however, are given:

- (a) A vowel is long before **nf**, **ns**, **nx**, and **nct**; also when it is the result of contraction.
- (b) A vowel is short before another vowel or **h**, and before **nd** or **nt**.

VI. **Syllables.**—There are as many syllables in Latin words as there are vowels or diphthongs, **mi'les**, **lau'dant**, **pu el'la**, **per suā'dē**.

In the division of words into syllables,

- (a) A single consonant goes with the following vowel; as in **fe'rō**.
- (b) If two or more consonants are between two vowels, the division is *generally* made after the first consonant, as **ma gis'ter**.

VII. **Quantity of Syllables.**—A syllable is long or short, according to the time required in pronouncing it.

- (a) A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong.

- (b) A syllable is generally long if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants or by *x* or *z*.
- (c) Otherwise a syllable is short.

VIII. **Accent.** — Unlike English, Latin accent is very simple and uniform.

- (a) Words of two syllables are always accented on the first, as **tu'ba**.
- (b) Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult (the next to the last) if that is a long syllable, otherwise on the antepenult (the one before the penult): **Rō mā nō'rum**, **in'co lae**.

IX. **Gender.**<sup>1</sup> — The gender of the great majority of Latin nouns is determined by the ending of the nominative singular. The rules for the gender of such nouns are given with the various declensions. The following general rules, however, may be a help to pupils in determining gender:

- (a) Names of males, rivers, winds, and months are masculine.
- (b) Names of females, trees, and countries are feminine.
- (c) Indeclinable nouns, infinitives, phrases, and clauses used as nouns are neuter.
- (d) The gender of most other nouns is determined by the ending of the nominative singular. See §§ 7, 32, 45, etc.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare § 610.



# LATIN LESSONS

## LESSON I

### THE VALUE OF LATIN

---

*Labor omnia vincit. — Work wins everything.\**

---

**1. English and Latin.** — More than half our English words are derived, directly or indirectly, from the Latin. Some, like *labor* and *animal*, come directly with no change. Others, like *cause*, *form*, *note*, are almost exactly like their Latin equivalents (*causa*, *forma*, *nota*). Still others come indirectly, like *people*, *space*, *peace* (*populus*, *spatium*, *pax*).

Many English words which are commonly misspelled offer no difficulty to students of Latin. A few examples are: *library*, from the Latin noun *librarium*; *laboratory*, from *laboratorium*; *committee*, from *com-mittere*; *supersede*, from *super-sedere*; *accommodate*, from *accommodatus*, the perfect participle of *accommodare*; and *separate*, from the participle of *separare*.

**2. An English-Latin Letter.** — The value of Latin is well shown in the following letter, written by a business man — a firm believer in Latin — to a doubting pupil.

“Latin is a great help in everything you study. In bookkeeping, you won’t confuse *debit* and *credit* if you know their derivation. In botany, agriculture, and nearly all the sciences, most of the names come from the Latin (or Greek).

---

\* Literally: *Labor conquers all things.* The motto of Oklahoma.

“But in English — the most everyday, practical study of all — Latin helps you most. If you know Latin, you never misspell *separate*, *preparation*, *precedence*, *laudable*, and so on. Consciously or unconsciously you use it all the time, not only indirectly in fully half the words you speak or write, but directly as well. You see a poster :

### High School *versus* Academy

Game called at 3 P.M.

Do you know the italicized words and letters? In the game only *bona fide* students are allowed to play; others are unfit to represent your *Alma Mater*. You go to the game and pay your money (which has *e pluribus unum* stamped on it) to the manager, who is *ex officio* gate-keeper. Your team beats the other (or *vice versa*) and the captain makes an *ex tempore* speech. You pretend the other team is dead, and you hold a *post mortem* celebration, parading the streets with a big banner with a *facsimile* of the rival school marked *Requiescat in Pace*.

“If the principal opposes athletics, you may argue *pro* and *con(tra)*, urging a *referendum* to the students. A single *lapsus linguae* may spoil your case *in toto*. You may use an effective *a priori* argument, or say there is *prima facie* evidence that football is a good thing; but if you fail to make your point, things remain *in statu quo*, the principal gives his *ultimatum*, and you make your *exit*.

“And so I could go on *ad infinitum* not only about football, but about *fiat* money, *ad valorem* tariff duties, *ex post facto* laws, and *ante bellum* days, when the *per capita* income of the country was less *per annum* than it is now. But you ought to be studying your Latin, instead of reading about it, so I will stop.”

## LESSON II

### THE LATIN CASES

---

*Tempus fugit. — Time flies.*

---

**3. English and Latin Inflection.** — In the last two examples of § 1 (*separate* and *accommodate*) we saw that the perfect passive participle in Latin is not formed as in English by prefixing words like *having been*. Instead, the form is changed merely by varying the ending.

This change of form or ending is called *inflection*.<sup>1</sup> The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation*; that of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives, *declension*. Accurate knowledge of these inflections is of great practical value in English spelling and is essential to intelligent reading of Latin.

**4. Declension.** — In English the form of a noun changes only in the possessive and the plural. The objective is like the nominative, and the same form is used with a preposition to show other relations.

In Latin a noun usually changes its form not only for the possessive and plural, but for the objective case as well. And many uses which in English are indicated by prepositions are shown in Latin by changing the form of the noun.

These changes in the form are made by adding certain endings to a permanent part of the word which we call the *base*. To *decline* a noun is to give all its different forms in a regular order. These forms taken together are called the *declension* of a noun.

---

<sup>1</sup> English has some inflection, as *I, me, mine; love, loved, loving*; but there is so little that it is usually called an *uninflected* language.



**5. The Cases.** — In declining Latin nouns we may give six cases: the **nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative, and ablative.** The table below shows their uses and their English equivalents.

Latin case	Use in the sentence	English case
Nominative	Subject	Nominative
Genitive	To denote possession and other relations	Possessive or the objective with <i>of</i>
Dative	Indirect object	The objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i>
Accusative	Direct object	Objective
Vocative	Case of address	Nominative independent
Ablative	Adverbial phrases	The objective with <i>from</i> ; <i>with</i> or <i>by</i> ; <i>in</i> , <i>on</i> , or <i>at</i>

These cases correspond in general to the English, except the ablative, which has three fundamental ideas: (1) that of *separation* (English *from* with the objective), (2) that of *association* (English *with*) or *means* (English *by*), and (3) that of *place where* (English *in*, *on*, or *at*).

**6. Tell what case in Latin is used to express each noun in the following sentences:**

1. Work wins everything. 2. The boy's books are on the table. 3. Mark gave his pencil to his sister. 4. Caesar was an enemy of the Gauls. 5. The girl gave her friend Julia a rose. 6. Lucius, give your sister that book on the table.

7. The farmer's field was in Gaul. 8. We told a story to the girl. 9. The woman saw many roses in the field. 10. The girl was carrying water from the river. 11. The picture was painted by an artist. 12. He came from the town with a trumpet in his hand.

13. The native land of the boy's friend was Gaul. 14. The girl lent the farmer her father's horse. 15. She went with her brother and found the horse in the field. 16. John, give a glass of water to the man on the horse. 17. In the picture the boy is bringing food from the house and giving it to the soldier. 18. There are beautiful flowers in the forests of Gaul.



A ROMAN AMPHITHEATER IN GAUL.

Gaul and the Gauls are often mentioned in these sentences and throughout the book. The reason is that the story most often read in second year Latin is Caesar's account of his conquest of Gaul. In this story Caesar tells of his battles, many of which were fought on the same fields as battles of the World War; he, too, had a Battle of the Marne. And the trenches with which he fortified his camps were like the modern trenches, and the helmets the Roman soldiers wore resembled the "tin hats" of our American soldiers.

After Caesar had conquered Gaul, the Romans "modernized" it: they built roads, bridges, theaters, arenas, temples, ornamental arches, and waterworks. One of their amphitheaters is shown in the picture above. It is at Nîmes in southern France.

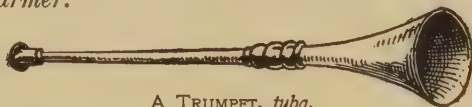
Nîmes was an American "leave area" during the World War and American soldiers played football and basketball in this amphitheater, the interior of which is shown on page 12.

# LESSON III

## FIRST DECLENSION

*Experientia docet. — Experience is the best teacher.\**

7. First declension nouns end in **-a** in the nominative and in **-ae** in the genitive. They are feminine, except a few which are obviously masculine from their meaning; as *agricola*, *farmer*.



A TRUMPET, *tuba*.

The tuba was used by the Romans to give the signal to advance or retreat in battle.

### 8. Tu'ba, fem., a trumpet. BASE, tub-

CASES	SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS	PLURAL	TERMINATIONS
Nom.	tu'ba, a trumpet	a	tu'bae, trumpets	ae
Gen.	tu'bae, of a trumpet	ae	tubā'rum, of trumpets	ārum
Dat.	tu'bae, to a trumpet	ae	tu'bīs, to trumpets	īs
Acc.	tu'bam, a trumpet	am	tu'bās, trumpets	ās
Abl.	tu'bā, by or with a trumpet	ā	tu'bīs, by or with trumpets	īs

(a) The vocative case is omitted in the paradigms, since it is generally like the nominative.

(b) The base is obtained by dropping the termination of the genitive singular: **tubae**, base **tub-**.

(c) There is no word in Latin for *a*, *an*, or *the*. **Tuba** may be translated *trumpet*, *a trumpet*, *the trumpet*, according to the sense.

(d) Note that the ablative singular differs from the nominative singular in having a long ending. Note also which forms are identical.

(e) To learn the declension pronounce all the forms with their meanings, being careful of the accent. Write the forms in order, marking all long vowels. Write the declension from memory and then give it orally. Work for accuracy and speed.

\* Literally: *Experience teaches*.

## 9.

## VOCABULARY

agri'cola, -ae,<sup>1</sup> m., farmer.

a'qua, -ae, f., water.

fē'mina, -ae, f., woman.

Gal'lia, Gal'liae, f., Gaul.

lit'tera, -ae, f., letter (of the alphabet); pl., letter, epistle, or letters.

pīctū'ra, -ae, f., picture.

prōvin'cia, prōvin'ciae, f., province.

puel'la, -ae, f., girl.

ter'ra, -ae, f., earth, land.

tu'ba, -ae, f., trumpet, the straight Roman war trumpet.

(a) Decline each of these nouns like **tuba**. Avoid accenting the last syllable.

## 10. What Latin words do the following suggest?

aquatic      terrestrial      literature      feminine

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

## EXERCISES

11. Pronounce, give case and number, and translate:<sup>2</sup>

1. Galliā.    2. Litteris (two ways).    3. Terra.    4. Prōvinciae (three ways).    5. Agricolārum.    6. Fēminam.  
7. Terrā.    8. Tubārum.    9. Puellae (three ways).    10. Pīctūrās.

## 12. Translate; mark all long vowels in written work:

1. To the farmers.    2. Of Gaul.    3. For the provinces.  
4. The earth (acc.).    5. The girls (acc.).    6. Of the water.  
7. For the women.    8. With a trumpet.    9. By a letter.  
10. Of the pictures.

<sup>1</sup> In the vocabularies the genitive singular ending is placed after the nominative to indicate the declension.

<sup>2</sup> Remember what was said in § 8, c.

## LESSON IV

### PRESENT INDICATIVE

*Excelsior. — Onward and upward.\**

13. The **person** and **number** of a Latin verb are shown by its ending, which is called its **personal ending**. On account of these personal endings the pronoun subject of a verb is expressed only when it shows emphasis or contrast.

The following are the regular personal endings of the active voice:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>First Person.</i>	<b>-ō</b> or <b>-m</b> , <i>I.</i>	<b>-mus</b> ,	<i>we</i>
<i>Second Person.</i>	<b>-s</b> , <i>thou, you.</i>	<b>-tis</b> ,	<i>you.</i>
<i>Third Person.</i>	<b>-t</b> , <i>he, she, it.</i>	<b>-nt</b> ,	<i>they.</i>

#### 14. **Por'tō, I carry**

##### Present Tense

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
1. por'tō,	<i>I carry.</i>	1. portā'mus,	<i>we carry.</i>
2. por'tās,	<i>you carry.</i>	2. portā'tis	<i>you carry.</i>
3. por'tat,	<i>he carries.</i>	3. por'tant,	<i>they carry.</i>

(a) Latin has no progressive or emphatic forms. **Portō** means *I carry, I am carrying, or I do carry.*

#### 15. **VOCABULARY**

<b>a'mō</b> , <i>I love.</i>	<b>pa'rō</b> , <i>I prepare.</i>
<b>lau'dō</b> , <i>I praise.</i>	<b>por'tō</b> , <i>I carry.</i>
<b>nār'rō</b> , <i>I tell.</i>	<b>pug'nō</b> , <i>I fight.</i>
<b>oc'cupō</b> , <i>I seize.</i>	<b>vo'cō</b> , <i>I call.</i>

(a) Conjugate each of these verbs like **portō**.

---

\* The motto of New York State and the title of a poem by Longfellow. Literally: *Higher.*

16. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

laud                  narrate                  portable                  pugnacious

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

#### RULES

17. **Subject.** — The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.

*The girl loves.*    **Puella amat.**

*The farmers are fighting.*    **Agricolae pugnant.**

18. **Agreement of Verb.** — A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

*The girls are praising.*    **Puellae laudant.**

*The farmer is fighting.*    **Agricola pugnat.**



ROMAN SWORD AND JAVELIN.

The Romans used the sword, like our bayonet, for hand-to-hand fighting, and the javelin to hurl at the enemy from a distance.

#### EXERCISES

19. *Translate, and give the construction<sup>1</sup> of each noun:*

(a) 1. Laudā**mus**.    2. Vocā**tis**.    3. Nārrā**s**.    4. Par**ō**.

5. Occupant.

(b) 1. Puella amat.    2. Agricolae pugnant.    3. Nārrā**mus**.

4. Fēminae laudant.    5. Parā**tis**.

20. *Translate, marking all long vowels:*

(a) 1. You (*plural*) fight.    2. They praise.    3. We do love.    4. I am carrying.    5. The farmers are calling.

(b) 1. You (*singular*) seize.    2. The woman is calling.    3. We are preparing.    4. The girls are praising.    5. You (*plural*) are telling.

---

<sup>1</sup> By construction we mean case and rule.

## LESSON V

### DIRECT OBJECT

---

*Roma aeterna. — Rome the eternal.*

---

**21. Direct Object.** — The direct object of a verb is in the accusative case.

*I am carrying a picture. Pīctūram portō.*

*We love the girls. Puellās amāmus.*

### 22.

#### VOCABULARY

fā'bula, -ae, f., story.

lin'gua, -ae, f., tongue, language.

memo'ria, memo'riae, f., mem-  
ory.

nōn, adv., not.

pa'tria, pa'triae, f., country, na-  
tive land.

ro'sa, -ae, f., rose.

sil'va, -ae, f., forest, woods.

vi'a, -ae, f., way, road.

(a) Decline each noun like **tuba**.

**23.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

fable          patriot          linguist          silvan          rose

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

#### EXERCISES

**24.** *Translate,<sup>1</sup> and give the construction of each noun:*

(a) 1. Agricola patriam amat.    2. Puellae pīctūrās por-  
tant.    3. Tubās nōn portāmus.    4. Fēminae silvā amant.  
5. Agricolās vocās.

(b) 1. Viā.    2. Memoriam.    3. Linguīs.    4. Litterās  
parāmus.    5. Prōvinciam occupātis.

---

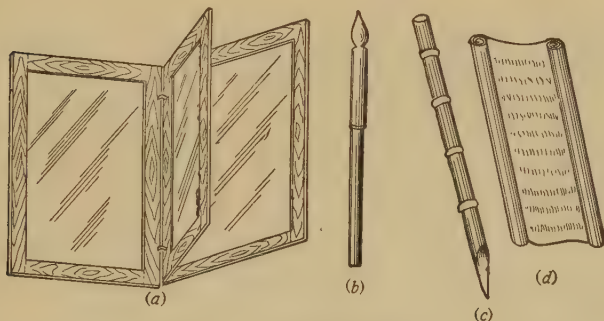
<sup>1</sup> Notice that the usual Latin order is subject, object, verb.



**25. Translate, marking the long vowels:**

(a) 1. They praise (their)<sup>1</sup> native land. 2. I am carrying the trumpet. 3. A girl is telling a story. 4. The farmers seize the province. 5. You (*sing.*) are preparing the road.

(b) 1. The women do not carry water. 2. The farmer is calling the girls. 3. He does not tell stories. 4. You (*plu.*) are seizing Gaul. 5. We love roses.



ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS.

The tablets (a), which look like a modern slate, had a hard surface covered with wax. The Romans wrote on this with the stylus (b). The writing was rubbed out simply by smoothing over the wax. On the scroll (d) a pen (c) and ink were used just as we use them to-day.

**26. Latin Questions.**—When asking a question which may be answered either by *yes* or by *no*, append **-ne** to the emphatic word, usually the first word. The accent is on the syllable before the **-ne**.

The answer *yes* or *no* may be expressed by repeating the sentence to express an affirmative answer, or by repeating it with the negative word **nōn**, *not*, to express a negative answer.

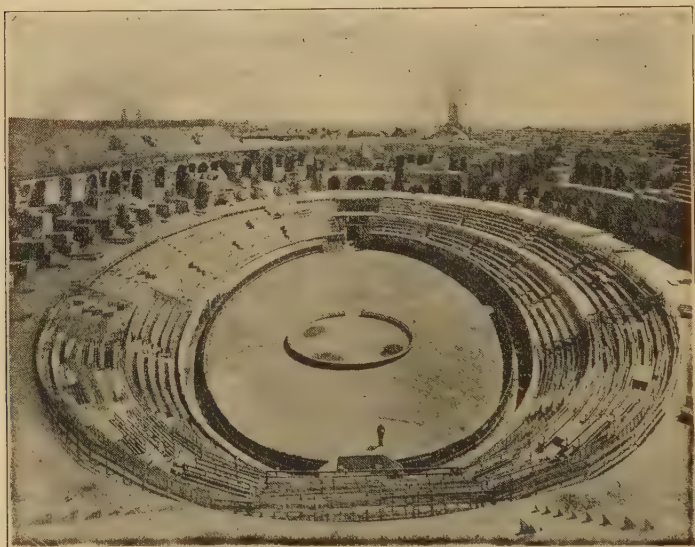
---

<sup>1</sup> Words in parentheses are not to be translated.

## ORAL EXERCISE

27. *Answer these questions in Latin, taking care to change the person of the verb when necessary.*

1. Portās'ne litterās? 2. Fābulās'ne nārrat? 3. Amās'ne patriam? 4. Puellās'ne laudātis? 5. Vocō'ne fēminam?



THE ROMAN ARENA AT NÎMES.

ARĒNA<sup>1</sup> RŌMĀNA

Ecce pīctūra. Arēna<sup>2</sup> est (*it is*). Arēna in Galliā est. Gallia patria<sup>2</sup> agricolārum est. Agricolaе Galliam amant.

Rŏmānī (*the Romans*) Galliam occupant. Viās parant. Agricolaе nŏn pugnant. Gallia prŏvincia<sup>2</sup> Rŏmānŏrum<sup>3</sup> est.

<sup>1</sup> New words will be found in the General Vocabulary.

These Reading Lessons are put in for additional practice in reading continued narrative and may be omitted by teachers who wish a briefer course.

<sup>2</sup> Predicate nominative (§ 41).

<sup>3</sup> of the Romans.

## LESSON VI

### REVIEW

---

*Facta non verba. — Deeds not words.*

---

**28. Derivatives.** — Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following :

aqua	portō	pugnō	terra
vocō	fēmina	laudō	nārrō
lingua	silva	fābula	patria

**29. Word Drill.** — Give the nominative and genitive singular of the Latin words for the following :

girl	Gaul	native land	farmer
rose	story	forest	trumpet

(a) The following words of the first declension have the same form in both Latin and English : **alumna, antenna, arena, formula, inertia, larva, nebula, vertebra.** Look up the meanings of all that you do not know.

**30. Form Drill.** — 1. Decline **agricola.** 2. Conjugate **occupō** in the present tense.

**31. Questions.** — 1. What gender are nouns of the first declension? 2. Give the rule for the agreement of a verb with its subject. 3. Give the rule for the direct object. 4. What are the personal endings of a verb? 5. In what three ways may **pugnant** be translated? 6. What two cases are alike in the singular of the first declension? 7. What two are alike in the plural? 8. How are the following pronounced<sup>1</sup>: **ē, e, ae, ī, i, ā, a, v, c**? 9. How is the number of syllables<sup>2</sup> in a Latin word determined? 10. Pronounce the following: **vir, vi'rī, amī'cīs, lēgā'tum, nūn'tius, vi'a, vo'cō, op'pidum, par'vus.**

---

<sup>1</sup> See Introduction, II, III, and IV.

<sup>2</sup> See Introduction, VI.

## LESSON VII

### SECOND DECLENSION

*Errare humanum est. — To err is human.*

**32.** There are **five declensions** of Latin nouns. They are distinguished by the ending of the *genitive singular*. **Second declension** nouns end in **-ī** in the genitive singular. They are *masculine* if they end in **-us**, **-er**, or **-ir** in the nominative singular.

**33.** **Amī'cus**, m., *friend*. **Pu'er**, m., *boy*. **A'ger**, m., *field*.

	BASE, amīc-	BASE, puer-	BASE, agr-	
		SINGULAR		TERMINA- TIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	amī'cus	pu'er	a'ger	<b>us, er</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	amī'cī	pu'erī	a'grī	<b>ī</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	amī'cō	pu'erō	a'grō	<b>ō</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	amī'cum	pu'erum	a'grum	<b>um</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	amī'cō	pu'erō	a'grō	<b>ō</b>
		PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	amī'cī	pu'erī	a'grī	<b>ī</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	amīcō'rum	puerō'rum	agrō'rum	<b>ōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	amī'cīs	pu'erīs	a'grīs	<b>īs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	amī'cōs	pu'erōs	a'grōs	<b>ōs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	amī'cīs	pu'erīs	a'grīs	<b>īs</b>

(a) Nouns of the second declension ending in **-us** like **amīcus** have the vocative singular in **-e**, as **amīce**, *O friend*!

(b) **Filius** and proper nouns ending in **-ius** form their vocative singular in **-ī** instead of **-ie**.

(c) Nouns of the second declension ending in **-ius** and **-ium** regularly form their genitive singular in **-ī** instead of **-īi**. The accent rests on the penult, the next to the last syllable.

## 34.

## VOCABULARY

a'ger, a'grī, m., *field*.amī'cus, -ī, m., *friend*.e'quus, e'quī, m., *horse*.nūn'tius, nūn'tī, m., *messenger*.lēgā'tus, -ī, m., *lieutenant; ambas-  
sador*.pu'er, -ī, m., *boy*.vir, -ī, m., *man*.35. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

legate

puerile

amicable

equine

virile

agrarian

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

## RULE

36. **Possession.**—Possession is denoted by the genitive case.*The man's horse.* **Equus virī.***A friend of the ambassador.* **Amīcus lēgātī.**

## EXERCISES

37. *Translate, and give the construction of each noun:*

(a) 1. Lēgātī Galliam occupant. 2. Amīcum agricolae amat. 3. Equōs virī vocāmus. 4. Puer litterās lēgātī portat. 5. Nūntius fēminās vocat.

(b) 1. Amīcī agricolārum viam occupant. 2. Linguam prōvinciae nōn laudāmus. 3. Amīcus puellae fābulās nārrat. 4. Fēmina memoriam puellārum laudat. 5. Agrōs virōrum occupātis.

38. *Translate, giving special attention to noun and verb endings:*

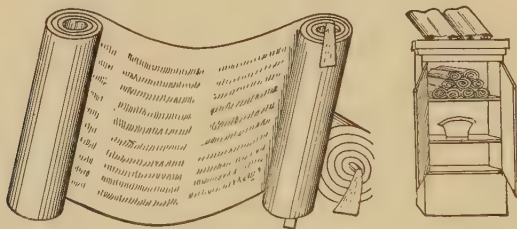
(a) 1. We seize the provinces. 2. The girl praises the boy's memory. 3. The farmers are carrying the women's



LEGATUS.

letters. 4. The messenger calls the man's friend. 5. The boy praises the lieutenant's horse.

(b) 1. The girl is preparing the man's letter (*plu.*). 2. You (*sing.*) love the forests of Gaul. 3. I am praising the boy's friend. 4. The farmers love the land. 5. The boys do not carry the lieutenants' trumpets.



ROMAN MANUSCRIPTS.

Most of the Latin works that have come down to us were written originally on such rolls as these.

### ORAL EXERCISE

39. Answer these questions in Latin, taking care to change the person of the verb when necessary:

1. Pugnāsne? 2. Vocantne amīcōs? 3. Laudāsne equum virī? 4. Fābulāsne nārrāmus? 5. Lēgātīne pugnant?



## LESSON VIII

### CONJUGATION OF SUM

---

*Ave, Maria. — Hail, Mary.*

---

40. **Sum**, *I am*, is an irregular verb.

#### Present Tense

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <b>sum</b> , <i>I am</i> .	<b>sumus</b> , <i>we are</i>
2. <b>es</b> , <i>thou art (you are)</i> .	<b>estis</b> , <i>you are</i>
3. <b>est</b> , <i>he, she, it is</i> .	<b>sunt</b> , <i>they are</i>

41. **Predicate Nominative.** — A noun or pronoun used in the predicate after an intransitive verb is in the nominative case. This is called the *predicate nominative*.<sup>1</sup>

Adjectives are used in this construction the same as nouns and pronouns, and are called *predicate adjectives*.

*The boy is a messenger.* **Puer est nūntius.**

*The girl's friend is a lieutenant.* **Amīcus puellae lēgātus est.**

#### EXERCISES

42. *Read the Latin and translate:*

(a) 1. Sumus amīcī. 2. Nūntiī sunt agricolae. 3. Amīcus puerī est lēgātus. 4. Vir est nūntius. 5. Estis fēminae.

(b) 1. Es puer. 2. Tubam lēgātī nōn portās. 3. Patria agricolae est Gallia. 4. Estis puellae. 5. Virī sunt agricolae.

43. *Translate, giving special attention to noun and verb endings:*

(a) 1. You are farmers. 2. The boys are friends. 3. I am a messenger. 4. They are the farmer's horses. 5. Boys fight.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare the English use, § 613.

(b) 1. The boy praises the girl's memory. 2. You are not the woman's friend. 3. Are the messengers carrying letters? 4. Are you the boy's friend? 5. Gaul is the farmer's native land.

#### ORAL EXERCISE

44. *Answer these questions in Latin, taking care to change the person of the verb when necessary:*

1. Estne vir lēgātus? 2. Amīcīne sumus? 3. Laudāsne equum amīcī? 4. Lēgātīne estis? 5. Esne amīcus virī?



ROMAN BOXERS.

That Romans enjoyed the art of boxing is shown by these statues, though we to-day may not think much of the "style" displayed. But the bouts were fast and furious, as you can read in Virgil, where there is a long account of an exciting contest between Entellus and Dares.

#### GALLIA

Gallia est prōvincia. Gallia patria est agricolārum. Agricolaē terram et linguam Galliae amant. Occupantne agricolae silvās? Agricolaē pugnāt et silvās occupant. Puellae Galliae fābulās amant. Puellae litterās parant et portant. Memoriam puellārum laudāmus.

## LESSON IX

### SECOND DECLENSION, NEUTER

*Post proelium, praemium. — After the battle, the reward.*

**45.** Second declension nouns which end in **-um** in the nominative singular are *neuter*.

(a) Neuter nouns of all declensions have the *nominative and accusative cases alike*, and in the plural these cases always end in **-a**.

**46.** **Bel'lum, n., war.** BASE, **bell-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	bel'lum	um	bel'la	a
<i>Gen.</i>	bel'lī	ī	bellō'rum	ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bel'lō	ō	bel'līs	īs
<i>Acc.</i>	bel'lum	um	bel'la	a
<i>Abl.</i>	bel'lō	ō	bel'līs	īs

**47.** **VOCABULARY**

bel'lum, -ī, n., war.	op'pidum, -ī, n., town.
dō'num, -ī, n., gift, present.	prae'mium, prae'mī, <sup>1</sup> n., reward.
frūmen'tum, -ī, n., grain.	rēgī'na, -ae, f., queen.
īn'sula, -ae, f., island.	et (conjunction), and.

(a) Decline the above neuters like **bellum**.

**48.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

premium      insular      donation      vocation

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

**49.** *Translate:*

- (a) 1. Oppida nōn occupātis.    2. Virī bellum amant.  
 3. Frūmentum agricolārum portāmus.    4. Est<sup>2</sup> praemium.  
 5. Rēgīnae dōna portant.

---

<sup>1</sup> See § 33, c.    <sup>2</sup> **Est** and **sunt** are often translated *there is* and *there are*.

(b) 1. Estne insula? 2. Puer frumentum et aquam portat.  
3. Estne rēgina Galliae? 4. Agricolaē agrōs amant. 5. Lē-  
gātī pugnant et oppidum occupant.

50. *Translate, giving special attention to the nouns:*

(a) 1. The boy and the girl are friends. 2. The men  
seize the island. 3. The boys carry grain. 4. We love  
rewards. 5. You (*sing.*) are praising the queen.



THE COLOSSEUM AT ROME.

Compare this with the pictures on pages 5 and 81 and facing 36.

(b) 1. Do the girls love roses? 2. The queen carries the  
gift. 3. The messenger and the lieutenant praise the farmer's  
horses. 4. The men love (their) country. 5. Do you carry  
water?

#### ORAL EXERCISE

51. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Amatne rēginam? 2. Laudāsne puerōs? 3. Amantne  
praemium? 4. Puellāsne vocāmus? 5. Litterāsne portant?

## LESSON X

### ADJECTIVES

*Pro bono publico.* — *For the public good.*

**52. Latin Adjectives.** — Latin adjectives are declined like nouns. They have a masculine, a feminine, and a neuter form to agree with their nouns in gender.

Adjectives of the first and second declensions have their feminine forms like nouns of the first declension, and their masculine and neuter forms like masculine and neuter nouns of the second declension.

**53. Magnus,<sup>1</sup> great, large.** BASE, **magn-**

	SINGULAR		
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	mag'nus	mag'na	mag'num
<i>Gen.</i>	mag'nī	mag'nae	mag'nī
<i>Dat.</i>	mag'nō	mag'nae	mag'nō
<i>Acc.</i>	mag'num	mag'nam	mag'num
<i>Abl.</i>	mag'nō	mag'nā	mag'nō
	PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	mag'nī	mag'nae	mag'na
<i>Gen.</i>	magnō'rum	magnā'rum	magnō'rum
<i>Dat.</i>	mag'nīs	mag'nīs	mag'nīs
<i>Acc.</i>	mag'nōs	mag'nās	mag'na
<i>Abl.</i>	mag'nīs	mag'nīs	mag'nīs

What is the vocative singular of **magnus**? See § 8, *a*, and § 33, *a*.

---

<sup>1</sup> No other forms are used so constantly and in so many different ways as those in this section. They should be learned so that they "say themselves."

## 54.

## VOCABULARY

al'bus, al'ba, al'bum, *white*.al'tus, al'ta, al'tum, *high, deep*.bo'nus, bo'na, bo'num, *good, kind*.lon'gus, lon'ga, lon'gum, *long, tall*.mag'nus, mag'na, mag'num, *great, large*.mul'tus, mul'ta, mul'tum, *much; plural, many*.par'vus, par'va, par'vum, *small, little*.

(a) Decline **via longa, agricola bonus, puer parvus, praemium magnum**.

55. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

long            magnify            multiply            albino

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

## RULE

**56. Agreement of Adjectives with Nouns.** — An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.<sup>1</sup>

*The boy is small.* **Puer parvus<sup>2</sup> est.**

*The farmers are good.* **Agricolae boni<sup>2</sup> sunt.**

(a) Notice that the adjective does not always end like the noun. **Agricolae**, although of the first declension, is masculine from its meaning, so **boni** is masculine, nominative, plural, to agree with it.

## EXERCISES

**57. Translate, giving the reason for the ending of each adjective:**

(a) 1. *Insula magna est.* 2. *Multa bella longa sunt.*  
3. *Multum frumentum portamus.* 4. *Memoria lēgātī bona est.* 5. *Puer parvus fābulās multās nārrat.*

(b) 1. *Vir bonās litterās puerī parvī laudat.* 2. *Rēgīna puerōs bonōs vocat.* 3. *Puellae rosās albās amant.* 4. *Lēgātī agrōs agricolārum occupant.* 5. *Multa oppida magna sunt.*

<sup>1</sup> This is true whether the adjective is in the predicate or directly attached to the noun.

<sup>2</sup> Predicate adjective, see § 41.



**58. Translate, marking all long vowels:**

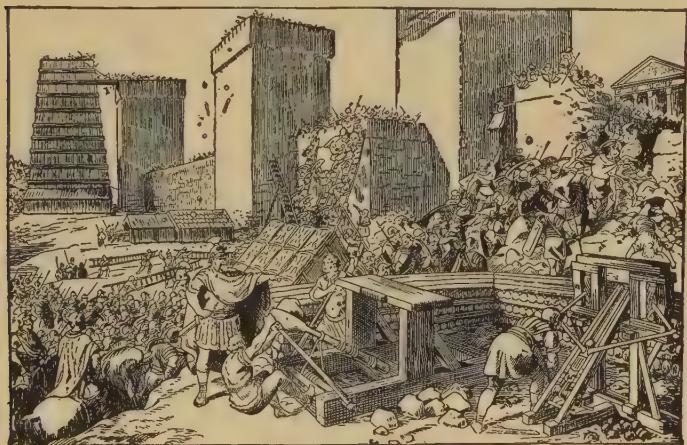
(a) 1. The gifts are large. 2. The men seize the town.  
3. The man's trumpet is large. 4. The good farmers are preparing (their) fields. 5. You are a good friend.

(b) 1. The water is deep. 2. The messenger's horse is small. 3. The rewards are great. 4. The small boy is (my) friend. 5. The lieutenant loves (his) country.

**ORAL EXERCISE**

**59. Answer these questions in Latin:**

1. Equusne puerī magnus est? 2. Bellane longa sunt?
3. Bonine virī pugnant? 4. Estne ager agricolae parvus?
5. Lēgātine multās insulās occupant?



**OPPUGNĀTIŌ OPPIDĪ**

Oppidum magnum est. In oppidō sunt virī et puerī. Virī pugnant; puerī nōn pugnant. Puerī parvī sunt. Multum frūmentum in oppidō est.

Lēgātus bellum parat. Lēgātus et nūntius amīcī sunt. Nūntius lēgātum laudat. Equus nūntium portat. Lēgātus virōs vocat. Virī pugnant et oppidum occupant.

## LESSON XI

### REVIEW

*Absit omen! — May there be no ill omen.\**

**60. Derivatives.**— Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following:

magnus

longus

multus

dōnum

equus

īnsula

praemium

vocō



THE APPIAN WAY.

With the spread of Roman power, good roads became a necessity, in order to communicate quickly with all parts of the Empire. These roads were much like our macadam roads, of sand, stone, and cement. The first of these was called the Via Appia, after the censor Appius Claudius, who started its construction. It extended from Rome to Brundisium, the port of embarkation for Greece.

The paving blocks in the foreground were laid by the Romans twenty-two centuries ago and are still in good condition.

---

\* Literally: *May the omen be absent!* Just as we say: "*Knock on wood!*"

**61. Word Drill.** — Give the nominative and genitive singular and the gender of the Latin words for the following:

queen	lieutenant	war	gift
friend	man	girl	letter
reward	grain	horse	town
messenger	field	language	boy

(a) The following words of the second declension have the same form in both Latin and English: **album**, **alumnus**, **animus**, **campus**, **chorus**, **circus**, **data** (*plu.*), **dictum**, **focus**, **forum**, **frustum**, **fulcrum**, **fungus**, **genius**, **insignia** (*plu.*), **locus**, **maximum**, **medium**, **memorandum**, **minimum**, **minister**, **odium**, **radius**, **rostrum**, **stratum**, **syllabus**, **terminus**, **vacuum**, **vinculum**. Look up the meanings of all that you do not know.

**62. Form Drill.** — 1. Decline **lĕgātŭs**, **dŏnum**, **bonus**. In how many seconds can you write the declension of **magnus**? In how many seconds can you recite it? 2. Conjugate **sum** and **pugnŏ** through the present tense.

**63. Questions.** — 1. What is the gender of nouns of the second declension? 2. What cases are alike in the neuter gender? 3. What is the ending of these cases in the plural? 4. What use do you know for the genitive case? the accusative? 5. What case in English corresponds to each of these? 6. What two uses do you know for the nominative? 7. Why must an adjective have three genders?

#### 64. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

1. Es amīcus nŭntiŏrum.
2. Sumus bonī amīcī rĕgīnae.
3. Magna oppida Galliae occupātis.
4. Tuba parva est.
5. Multae īnsulae sunt parvae.



VIA APPIA.

This is the so-called Via Appia Nuova, or New Appian Way, a view taken nearer to Rome than the picture on page 24. The tombs of wealthy Romans, seen in ruins in the other picture, did not begin as near the city as this.

In the background are the ruins of the Claudian Aqueduct, one of the many sources of Rome's pure water supply. It brought water from the hills southeast of Rome.

## VIA APPIA

Pictūra est pulchra. Pictūra<sup>1</sup> Viae Appiae est. Via Appia antiq̄ua via est. Via Appia est longa et alba. Aquaeductus aquam nōn portat. Aquaeductus ruīna est.

Arborēs sunt in agrō. Sunt (*there is*) frūmenta<sup>2</sup> in agrīs. Vir frūmentum in (*to*) oppidum portat. Via Appia pulchra est.

---

<sup>1</sup> See § 41.

<sup>2</sup> Used in the plural to indicate standing grain.

## LESSON XII

### PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

---

*Cor unum, via una. — One heart, one way.*

---

65. The **Principal Parts** of a Latin verb are the *Present Indicative*, *Present Infinitive*, *Perfect Indicative*, and *Perfect Participle*. These are called principal parts because, when they are known, all forms of the verb may readily be found.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
por'tō	portā're	portā'vī	portā'tus

(a) Form the principal parts of **amō**, **laudō**, **occupō**, **parō**, **nārrō**.

66. **Verb Stems.** — The fixed parts of a verb, to which the different endings are added, are called **stems**. Every regular verb has three stems: *present*, *perfect*, and *participial*, corresponding to its principal parts.

To find the *present stem* of a verb drop **re** from the present infinitive active: **portāre**; stem, **portā-**.

67. **The first conjugation** includes all verbs whose present infinitive ends in **-āre**. The present stem ends in **ā-**.

Each form of the **present indicative** is composed of the *present stem* plus the proper *personal ending*.

#### Present Indicative

por'tō, <i>I carry.</i>	portā'mus, <i>we carry.</i>
por'tās, <i>you carry.</i>	portā'tis, <i>you carry.</i>
por'tat, <i>he carries.</i>	por'tant, <i>they carry.</i>

(a) Notice that **ā** of the stem is dropped before **-ō** in the first person singular and that **ā** becomes short before **-t** and **-nt**.

## 68.

## VOCABULARY

dō, da're, de'dī, da'tus,<sup>1</sup> give.      cē'lō, cēlā're, cēlā'vī, cēlā'tus,  
 su'perō, superā're, superā'vī,      conceal.  
     superā'tus, surpass, conquer,      vul'nerō, vulnerā're, vulne-  
     defeat, overcome.      rā'vī, vulnerā'tus, wound.

(a) Conjugate each of these verbs in the present indicative.

69. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

conceal      vulnerable      donate      dative

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

## EXERCISES

70. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Puella bona fābulās nārrat. 2. Puerī equōs albōs nōn  
 rēlant. 3. Agricola multum frūmentum portāt. 4. Agrico-  
 lam superāmus. 5. Amīcum vulnerātis.

(b) 1. Puer dōna dat. 2. Fēminās vocās. 3. Pictūrae  
 magnae sunt. 4. Lēgātī agricolās superant. 5. Amīcum  
 virī laudāmus.

71. *Translate:*

(a) 1. We conquer Gaul. 2. The queen is the small boy's  
 friend. 3. The man wounds (his) friend's horse. 4. The  
 messenger is carrying a trumpet. 5. The girl gives small  
 gifts.

(b) 1. The woman carries a white rose. 2. The way is  
 not long. 3. We are concealing a small letter. 4. The  
 towns are large. 5. Many men love war.

## ORAL EXERCISE

72. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Superāsne? 2. Vulneratne amīcum? 3. Dantne  
 dōna? 4. Amātisne rosās? 5. Cēlāsne nūntium?

---

<sup>1</sup> This verb has short *a* in the present stem, except in the forms *dās*, the imperative *dā*, and the participle *dāns*.





A ROMAN STREET SCENE.





## LESSON XIII

### IMPERFECT AND FUTURE TENSES. INDIRECT OBJECT

---

*Da dextram misero. — Lend a hand.\**

---

73. The **imperfect**<sup>1</sup> **indicative** is formed by the *present stem* plus the *tense sign -ba-* plus the *personal endings*.

#### Imperfect Indicative

portā'bam, *I was carrying.*

portā'bās, *you were carrying.*

portā'bat, *he was carrying.*

portābā'mus, *we were carrying.*

portābā'tis, *you were carrying.*

portā'bant, *they were carrying.*

(a) The personal ending **-m** is always used for the first person singular of the imperfect tense in the active voice.

74. The **future indicative** is formed by the *present stem* plus the *tense sign -bi-* plus the *personal endings*. The **i** of the tense sign is dropped before the personal ending **-ō** in the first person singular, and appears as **u** before the ending **-nt** in the third person plural.

#### Future Indicative

portā'bō, *I shall carry.*

portā'bis, *you will carry.*

portā'bit, *he will carry.*

portā'bimus, *we shall carry.*

portā'bitis, *you will carry.*

portā'bunt, *they will carry.*

#### 75.

#### VOCABULARY

dīligen'tia, -ae, f., *ailigence, care.*

fos'sa, -ae, f., *ditch.*

Gal'Ii, -ō'rum, m., *Gauls.*

mū'rus, -ī, m., *wall.*

pī'lum, -ī, n., *javelin.*

ser'va, -ae, f., *female servant, slave.*

ser'vus, -ī, m., *male servant, slave.*

sig'num, -ī, n., *signal, standard.*

in, prep. with abl., *in, on.*

sed, conjunction, *but.*

(a) Compare **Gallia** and **Gallī**; **serva** and **servus**.

---

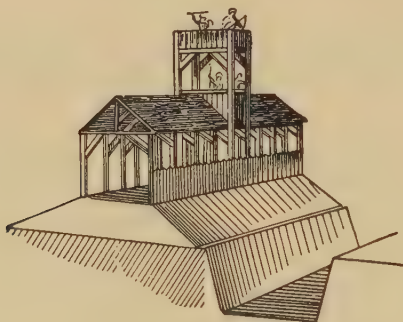
\* Virgil. Literally: *Give the right hand to the unfortunate.*

<sup>1</sup> The imperfect indicative represents an act as going on in past time or as repeated in past time.

76. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

diligent      sign      mural      servant

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.



MURUS FOSSAQVE.<sup>1</sup>

The Romans always fortified their camps with a wall and a ditch, although trench warfare in the modern sense was unknown to them.

#### DRILL ON VERB FORMS

77. *Analyze<sup>2</sup> each form and translate:*

(a) 1. Vulnerābam, vocābis, amātis.    2. Parat, portāmus, occupābunt.    3. Damus, laudābat, vocābunt.    4. Pugnābis, nārrābant, superāmus.    5. Vulnerābit, occupābimus, dabunt.

(b) 1. Parābās, laudābātis, celābimus.    2. Occupant, vulnerābit, dabit.    3. Portō, laudābit, amābunt.    4. Vulnerābāmus, vulnerābitis, dās.    5. Nārrābam, celābō, vulnerātis.

<sup>1</sup> The little word *-que*, and, is added to the second of two words that are closely linked together.

<sup>2</sup> To analyze a verb form divide it into *stem*, *tense sign*, and *personal ending*. Notice that the active verb is translated from right to left.

portā ba m } *I was carrying.*  
carrying was I }

*I* shows the person and number, *was* the tense, and *carrying* the meaning of the simple verb.

**78. Translate:**

(a) 1. They will fight, **I** was fighting, we shall fight.  
 2. We are calling, he will call, I am calling. 3. They are,  
 they are concealing, they were concealing. 4. You were prais-  
 ing, we shall praise, they praise. 5. I shall give, you (*plur.*)  
 are giving, they will give.

(b) 1. We are, we are carrying, they will carry. 2. You  
 (*sing.*) were telling, we shall tell, he tells. 3. We shall pre-  
 pare, you are preparing, we were preparing. 4. I am, I call,  
 I shall call. 5. We were seizing, they seize, he gives.

## RULE

**79. Indirect Object.** — The indirect object is expressed  
 by the dative case.<sup>1</sup>

*The farmer gives a horse to the boy.* **Agricola puerō equum dat.**

*The lieutenant is giving the messenger a signal.* **Lēgātus nūntiō  
 signum dat.**

## EXERCISES

**80. Translate:**

(a) 1. Lēgātō fābulās nārrātis. 2. Vir servō signa dabit.  
 3. Agricolae bonī equīs frūmentum dabunt. 4. Virī amīcīs  
 pīla dabant. 5. Fossae sunt altae.

(b) 1. Dīlīgēntia puerī est magna. 2. Sumus bonae servae.  
 3. Mūrus oppidī est altus. 4. Agricolae in silvīs equōs cēlā-  
 bant. 5. Gallī in Galliā pugnābant.

*Note.* — The indirect object is generally placed before the direct object.

**81. Translate:**

(a) 1. The friends of the Gauls are many. 2. The wall is  
 high, but the ditch is small. 3. The wars in Gaul are long.  
 4. The boy will give a present to (his) friend. 5. The girls  
 were telling stories to the boys.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare § 657, a.

(b) 1. We shall seize the towns in the province. 2. The queen will praise the diligence of the boys and girls. 3. We were wounding the Gauls. 4. The walls of many towns are high. 5. The slaves conceal the standard and the javelins.



THE PORTA SAN SEBASTIANO AT ROME.

This is the gate by which the Appian Way enters Rome.

#### ORAL EXERCISE

82. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Servusne equōs cēlābit? 2. Dabisne bonō puerō dōnum?
3. Puerīne in agrō magnō sunt? 4. Nūntiusne Gallis signum dabat?
5. Gallīne in multīs bellīs pugnābant?

## LESSON XIV

### ADJECTIVES (*Continued*). ABLATIVE OF MEANS

*Alis volat propriis. — She flies with her own wings.\**

#### 83. Miser, wretched. BASE, miser-

##### SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	mi'ser	mi'sera	mi'serum
<i>Gen.</i>	mi'serī	mi'serae	mi'serī
<i>Dat.</i>	mi'serō	mi'serae	mi'serō
<i>Acc.</i>	mi'serum	mi'seram	mi'serum
<i>Abl.</i>	mi'serō	mi'serā	mi'serō

##### PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	mi'serī	mi'serae	mi'sera
<i>Gen.</i>	miserō'rum	miserā'rum	miserō'rum
<i>Dat.</i>	mi'serīs	mi'serīs	mi'serīs
<i>Acc.</i>	mi'serōs	mi'serās	mi'sera
<i>Abl.</i>	mi'serīs	mi'serīs	mi'serīs

#### 84. Pulcher, beautiful. BASE, pulchr-

##### SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	pul'cher	pul'chra	pul'chrum
<i>Gen.</i>	pul'chrī	pul'chrae	pul'chrī
<i>Dat.</i>	pul'chrō	pul'chrae	pul'chrō
<i>Acc.</i>	pul'chrum	pul'chram	pul'chrum
<i>Abl.</i>	pul'chrō	pul'chrā	pul'chrō

##### PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	pul'chrī	pul'chrae	pul'chra
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrō'rum	pulchrā'rum	pulchrō'rum
<i>Dat.</i>	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	pul'chrōs	pul'chrās	pul'chra
<i>Abl.</i>	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs

---

\* The motto of Oregon. Used for to stand on one's own feet.

## 85.

## VOCABULARY

cā'rus, -a, -um, *dear*.mi'ser, -era, -erum, *wretched, unhappy*.fī'dus, -a, -um, *faithful*.nī'ger, -gra, -grum, *black*.lī'ber, -era, -erum, *free*.pul'cher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful*.ma'lus, -a, -um, *bad*.

(a) Note that **liber** and **miser** retain the **e**, like **puer**; **niger** and **pulcher** drop it, like **ager**.

86. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

liberty

miserable

fidelity

negro

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

## RULE

87. **Ablative of Means or Instrument.** — Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

*They fight with javelins.* **Pīlis pugnant.**

*The servant gives the signal with a trumpet.* **Servus tubā signum dat.**



ROMAN BOW, ARROW, AND JAVELIN.

88. *Translate, naming the case of each noun and giving the reason for the use of that case:*

(a) 1. Servī malī sunt. 2. Gallī tubīs signa dabant.  
3. Servae fidae in silvā sunt. 4. Puella bona est, sed puer est malus. 5. Lēgātīs multa dōna dabimus.

(b) 1. Servus virī liber nōn est. 2. Puellae rosam pulchram dabō. 3. Virī miserī pīlis pugnābant. 4. Cārās puellās laudābimus. 5. Virī liberī servōs nigrōs vulnerābant.



**89. Translate, always marking the long vowels:**

(a) 1. The men are on the high wall. 2. The messenger is faithful. 3. They will seize the small island. 4. They were giving letters to the messenger. 5. We shall give the letters to the little girls.

(b) 1. Bad boys were fighting. 2. The Gauls will wound the slaves with long javelins. 3. The girl's friend will give a reward to the messenger. 4. The lieutenant was giving a signal to (his) friend with a trumpet. 5. The black slaves will not conquer the free men.

## ORAL EXERCISE

**90. Answer these questions in Latin:**

1. Suntne puerī fidī? 2. Pugnābisne pīlis? 3. Puerīsne fābulās nārrābātis? 4. Dabuntne signum tubā? 5. Estne pīctūra pulchra?

## SERVUS MALUS

In oppidō erat (*was*) vir. Equus virī in agrō erat. Mārcus, puer<sup>1</sup> liber, amīcus virī erat. Mārcus equum amābat, sed servus virī equum nōn amābat.

In agrō fossa alta erat (*there was*). Servus pīlum longum in fossā cēlat. Factum malum in animō<sup>2</sup> est. Mārcus servum spectat, tum exclāmat, "Equumne pīlō vulnerābis? Equus nōn tuus sed virī<sup>3</sup> est." Mārcus virō signum dat et virum vocat. Vir servum gladiō<sup>4</sup> vulnerat. Servus pīlō equum nōn vulnerat.

Vir diligentiam Mārcī laudat et puerō ēgregiō magnum numerum librōrum pulchrōrum dat. Servi<sup>3</sup> malī supplicium nōn parvum est.

---

<sup>1</sup> Apposition.

<sup>3</sup> See § 36.

<sup>2</sup> Supply *his* in translating.

<sup>4</sup> See § 87.

## LESSON XV

### CONJUGATION OF *SUM* (Continued)

---

*Sum quod eris. — I am what you will be.\**

---

91. Conjugation of the irregular verb *sum*. For the present tense see § 40.

#### Imperfect Indicative

e'ram, <i>I was.</i>	erā'mus, <i>we were.</i>
e'rās, <i>you were.</i>	erā'tis, <i>you were.</i>
e'rat, <i>he was.</i>	e'rant, <i>they were.</i>

#### Future Indicative

e'rō, <i>I shall be.</i>	e'rimus, <i>we shall be.</i>
e'ris, <i>you will be.</i>	e'ritis, <i>you will be.</i>
e'rit, <i>he will be.</i>	e'runt, <i>they will be.</i>

## 92.

### VOCABULARY

do'mina, -ae, f., <i>mistress, lady.</i>	magis'ter, -trī, m., <i>teacher.</i>
do'minus, -ī, m., <i>master, lord.</i>	Mār'cus, -ī, m., <i>Marcus.</i>
gla'dius, gla'dī, m., <i>sword.</i>	nu'merus, -ī, m., <i>number.</i>
li'ber, li'brī, m., <i>book.</i>	sum, es'se, fuī, be.

nōnne, interrogative particle expecting the answer *yes*.

num, interrogative particle expecting the answer *no*.

(a) Compare **domina** and **dominus**; **liber** and **liber**. The words *library* and *liberate* will help you remember how the latter are declined.

## 93. What Latin words do the following suggest?

gladiator      library      dominant      numerous

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

\* Inscription sometimes seen on tombstones.



THE COLOSSEUM SEEN THROUGH THE ARCH OF TITUS.



## EXERCISES

**94.** *Translate, naming the case of each noun and giving the reason for the use of that case:*

(a) 1. Mārcus gladiō longō pugnābit. 2. Gallī tubā lēgātō signum dabunt. 3. Gladiō Mārcum vulnerābimus. 4. Līberī virī erāmus. 5. Servī pilīs et gladiīs pugnābant.

(b) 1. Malus dominus eris. 2. Equus niger virī in silvā est. 3. Librī magistrī erant pulchrī. 4. Servī miserī dominōs malōs nōn amant. 5. Servae fidae dominam cāram amābant.

**95.** *Translate, marking all long vowels:*

(a) 1. I shall be a faithful teacher. 2. Many Gauls are free. 3. The black slaves were wretched. 4. The bad master fights with a javelin. 5. With the trumpet we shall give the signals to the men.

(b) 1. I shall conceal the black horse in the forest. 2. The books were beautiful. 3. The teacher will give rewards to the faithful boys. 4. You (*plu.*) will tell the story to (your) friends. 5. (There) was a large number of boys and girls in the town.

**96. Interrogative Particles.** — When a negative answer is expected, the question is introduced by **num**; when an affirmative answer is expected, the question is introduced by **nōnne**. The **nōn** in **nōnne**, just as *not* in English, is used to show that an affirmative answer is expected.

*Are not the slaves faithful?* **Nōnne servī fidī sunt?**

## ORAL EXERCISE

**97.** *Answer these questions in Latin.*

1. Nōnne lēgātī pilīs pugnant? 2. Num servī miserī erant? 3. Eritne numerus Gallōrum in oppidō magnus? 4. Eratne pīlum virī longum? 5. Nōnne dominī gladiīs pugnābunt?

## LESSON XVI

### PERFECT TENSE<sup>1</sup>

---

*Laborare est orare. — To labor is to pray.\**

---

98. The perfect stem is found by dropping *ī* from the perfect indicative active — **portāvi**; stem, **portāv-**. (§ 65).

99. The perfect indicative active has the following characteristic personal endings.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
First Person	-ī	-imus
Second Person	-istī	-istis
Third Person	-it	-ērunt (-ēre)

100. Perfect tense = *perfect stem* + *the characteristic personal endings*.

#### Perfect Indicative Active

*I have carried, I carried, I did carry*

portā'vī	portā'vimus
portāvis'tī	portāvis'tis
portā'vit	portāvē'runt (-ē're)

(a) The perfect indicative represents an act as completed at the time of speaking (*have carried*), or merely as having occurred in past time (*carried*). *I have carried* is known as the perfect definite; *I carried* as the perfect indefinite or historical perfect.

The imperfect expresses an action as going on in past time: *I was carrying*.

(b) Following the same rules as for **portō**, conjugate **sum** through the perfect indicative, § 591.

(c) Conjugate in the perfect each of the verbs in the following vocabulary.

---

\* Motto of the Benedictine monks.

<sup>1</sup> Compare §§ 639 and 641.

101.

VOCABULARY

aedi'ficō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>build.</i>	mōn'strō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>show.</i>
con'vocō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>call together, call.</i>	nūn'tiō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, an- <i>nounce.</i>
hi'emō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>pass</i> <i>the winter, winter.</i>	ser'vō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>save,</i> <i>guard.</i>
lī'berō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>set</i> <i>free.</i>	vās'tō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>lay</i> <i>waste.</i>

102. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

convoke      conserve      edifice      devastate

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

103. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Hiemāvērunt. 2. Convocāvistis. 3. Mūrum aedificāvī. 4. Puerō librum mōnstrāvimus. 5. Agrōs vāstāvistis.

(b) 1. Bonī puerī fuistis. 2. Bona domina erō. 3. Mārcō gladium dedimus. 4. Magistrī miserī nōn fuērunt. 5. Gladiō virum vulnerāvistī.

104. *Translate:*

(a) 1. You (*plu.*) have announced. 2. The faithful messenger called together the boys and girls. 3. The bad men laid waste (their) native land. 4. We shall save the small town with swords and javelins. 5. The Gauls have passed the winter in Gaul.

(b) 1. The teachers have shown great diligence. 2. Marcus has given a book to (his) dear friend. 3. We have been good masters. 4. The number of small islands is great. 5. The men will build a high wall.

ORAL EXERCISE

105. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Vāstāvistīne patriam? 2. Fuistīne bonus puer? 3. Num virī servōs liberāvērunt? 4. Nōne oppidum servāvit? 5. Num in Galliā hiemāvistis?



## LESSON XVII

### PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES

---

*Dux femina facti. — A woman is the leader of the deed. \**

---

**106.** The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses indicative active are formed on the perfect stem.

**Pluperfect tense** = *perfect stem + tense sign era + regular personal endings.*

**Future perfect tense** = *perfect stem + tense sign eri + regular personal endings.*

#### **107. Pluperfect Indicative Active**

*I had carried*

(a)	portā'veram	portāverā'mus
	portā'verās	portāverā'tis
	portā'verat	portā'verant

#### **Future Perfect Indicative Active**

*I shall have carried*

(b)	portā'verō	portāve'rimus
	portā'veris	portāve'ritis
	portā'verit	portā'verint

(c) Following the same laws, conjugate **sum** through the pluperfect and future perfect indicative tenses, § 591.

**108.** A synopsis of a verb is a group of forms of any person and number of that verb throughout all the tenses.

The synopsis of **portō** in the first person singular indicative active is: **portō, portābam, portābō, portāvī, portāveram, portāverō.**

---

\* Virgil.

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

109. *Analyze each form:*

(a) 1. Pugnāverat, pugnābunt, pugnāvistī. 2. Aedificābat, convocāvērunt, nūntiat. 3. Occupāvī, occupābam, occupāverit. 4. Dedimus, dant, dederās. 5. Servābit, servāvistī, servāvērunt.

(b) 1. Vocābāmus, vocāveritis, vocāvistis. 2. Laudāverat, laudāmus, laudāverō. 3. Erāmus, fuerint, fuērunt. 4. Fuistī, fuerās, fuerit. 5. Līberābant, vāstāvērunt, mōnstrābō.

(c) Give the synopsis in the indicative active of the following forms: laudō, pugnās, occupat, sumus, datis, vulnerant.

110. *Translate:*

(a) 1. I have called, you were calling, you will call. 2. We shall have given, he gave, they had given. 3. You had wounded, they will have wounded, we are wounding. 4. They have seized, we shall seize, he seizes. 5. They will have prepared, I shall prepare, we prepare.

(b) 1. You have told, I had told, they told. 2. They have been, he was, you will have been. 3. They had been, we shall be, I have been. 4. You have been, he had been, we shall have been. 5. I shall build, they passed the winter, he had announced.

ORAL EXERCISE

111. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Pugnāvistīne? 2. Nōnne fuerās fidus? 3. Num puerō gladium dederat? 4. Nōnne in Galliā hiemābis? 5. Nārrāvistīne Mārcō fābulam?

## LESSON XVIII

### EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE

---

*Ad maiorem Dei gloriam. — To the greater glory of God.\**

---

**112. Place.** — In general, place is expressed as follows :

Place *in* or *on* which — **in** with the *ablative* case.

Place *from* which — **ā** or **ab** with the *ablative* case.

Place *out of* which — **ē** or **ex** with the *ablative* case.

Place *into* which — **in** with the *accusative* case.

Place *to* which — **ad** with the *accusative* case.

*Note.* — **Ab** and **ex** must be used before a vowel or *h* ; before consonants **ā** or **ab**, **ex** or **ē** may be used.

### EXERCISES ON PREPOSITIONS

**113. Translate :**

1. Ad mūrum.    2. In fossis.    3. In bellum.    4. Ex oppidō.  
5. In agris.    6. Ab nūtiō.    7. In patriam.  
8. Ad silvās.    9. In Galliā.    10. Ex prōvinciā.

**114. Translate, marking all long vowels :**

1. To the island.    2. In the towns.    3. To Gaul.  
4. From the town.    5. On land.    6. From the fields.  
7. Into the ditch.    8. Out of the woods.    9. From the walls.  
10. Into Gaul.

**115.**

### VOCABULARY

cas'tra, -ō'rum, n., *camp*.  
cō'pia, -ae, f., *abundance, plenty* ;  
    plural, *forces*.  
fī'lia, -ae, f., *daughter* (-ābus in  
    dat. and abl. plu.).  
fī'lius, fī'lī, m., *son*.

ā or ab, prep. with abl., *from*.  
ad, prep. with acc., *to, toward*.  
in, prep. with abl., *in, on* ; with  
    acc., *into, against*.  
ē or ex, prep. with abl., *out of*,  
    *from*.

---

\* Motto of the Jesuits.

116. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

filial

copious

insuperable

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.



POMPEII AND ITS DESTROYER.

In 79 A.D. Pompeii, near the Bay of Naples, was buried in ashes by an eruption of the volcano Vesuvius. It has now been excavated and much of our knowledge of Roman life, art, and customs comes from its remains. This picture shows the market-place or Forum, and Vesuvius.

EXERCISES

117. *Translate, giving the construction of each noun:*

(a) 1. Fuerant castra in Galliā. 2. Dominus servās ā prōvinciīs convocāverit. 3. In castrīs virōs servāverās. 4. Gallī ex oppidō in castra cōpiam frūmentī portāverant. 5. Vir filiīs et filiābus cōpiam librōrum dedit.

(b) 1. Cōpiās Gallōrum gladiīs superāverint. 2. In Galliā hiemāvimus. 3. In mūrō gladiōs et pila cēlāvistis. 4. Filia fēminae ad magistrum librōs multōs et magnōs portāvit. 5. Servus dominō cārō numerum magnum pilōrum dederat.

118. *Translate, marking all long vowels:*

(a) 1. The free men passed the winter on the island.  
 2. The faithful messenger calls the boys out of the field into the forest. 3. The Gauls gave beautiful presents to their sons and daughters. 4. The forces will have carried grain from the small town to the camp. 5. The black slave was concealing the grain in the forest.

(b) 1. Marcus had not been a friend of the Gauls. 2. The good farmer's sons and daughters had concealed (their) books. 3. The signal of the messenger saved the men. 4. You had wounded (your) friends with javelins. 5. You will give a book to (your) daughter, but a sword to (your) son.

## ORAL EXERCISE

119. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Puerīne<sup>1</sup> ex agrō equum vocāvērunt? 2. Nōne in Galliā hiemābātis? 3. Portāverāsne frūmentum ad castra? 4. Nōne servus est miser? 5. Num filia puella mala fuit?

CAROLUS ET PŌMA<sup>2</sup>

Carolus agricolae filius erat et bonus puer, sed malōs amīcōs habēbat. Agricola filiō calathum pōmōrum magnōrum plēnum dedit. In calathō erant multa et bona pōma, sed pauca vitiāta.

Puer pōma cēlāvit, sed vitiāta pōma maculāvērunt bona, et mox nūlla bona erant. Tum agricola filiū monuit: "Pauca vitiāta pōma maculant multa bona. Sic malī amīcī bonōs puerōs vitiābunt."

---

<sup>1</sup> Pronounce and think of the words in groups: Puerīne ex agrō equum vocāvērunt? <sup>2</sup> Refer to the general vocabulary for new words.

## LESSON XIX

### REVIEW

---

*Nihil dictum quod non dictum prius. — We can say nothing but what hath been said.\**

---

**120. Derivatives.** — Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following :

diligentia	servō	cōpia	filius
mūrus	signum	liber	liber
gladius	numerus	dominus	dō
convocō	vulnerō	aedificō	mōnstrō

**121. Word Drill.** — See how many seconds it takes you to give the nominative and genitive singular of the Latin words for the following:

master	sword	signal	book
number	diligence	ditch	teacher
slave	Marcus	javelin	daughter
son	abundance	reward	island

**122. Form Drill.** — 1. Name the principal parts of a verb. 2. Name the six indicative tenses in order. 3. Give the formula for making each. 4. Give the principal parts of **dō** and conjugate it through the indicative. 5. Give the principal parts of **sum** and conjugate it through the indicative. 6. Give a synopsis in the indicative active of the following forms: **sum, dās, liberat, mōnstrāmus, servātis, nūntiant.**

**123. Questions.** — 1. What case denotes possession? the direct object? the indirect object? What is the Eng-

---

\* Terence. Literally: *Nothing has been said which has not been said before.* The English is from Burton's *Anatomy of Melancholy*.

lish equivalent of each? 2. What case and what preposition are used to express place *in* which, *into* which, *to* which, *from* which, *out of* which? 3. How is the *present* stem of a verb found? the *perfect* stem? 4. What tenses are formed on the *present* stem? on the *perfect* stem? 5. What tenses have tense signs? Name the tense signs.



THE STREET OF THE TOMBS AT POMPEII.

These tombs were not so imposing as those on the Appian Way (page 24), but they were well preserved by being buried in ashes.

6. What tense has characteristic endings? Name them.
7. What English tense is equivalent to the pluperfect?

#### 124. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

1. Fēminae in īnsulīs erunt. 2. Puellae dōnum dabis.
3. Virī diligentiam servārum laudābunt. 4. Mūrī oppidi altī erunt et fossa longa erit. 5. Equus albus in agrum puerum portābat.
6. Diligentia servae fīdae magna erat.
7. Erimus bonī amīcī magistrī. 8. Numerus servōrum in Galliā magnus erat.
9. Vir malus in silvā equum dominī celābat. 10. Lēgātī ā mūrō cōpiās vocāvērunt.



## LESSON XX

### THIRD DECLENSION

*Ad astra per aspera.* — “*To the stars through bolts and bars.*” \*

**125. The third declension** consists of all words whose genitive singular ends in **-is**. They may be masculine, feminine, or neuter.

Many nouns of the third declension have their nominative just like the base, or differ only in the quantity of the last vowel. Note that masculines and feminines are declined alike.

Cōnsul, m., <i>consul</i> BASE, cōnsul-		Soror, f., <i>sister</i> BASE, sorōr-	
		SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	cōn'sul	<i>Nom.</i>	so'ror —
<i>Gen.</i>	cōn'sul <b>is</b>	<i>Gen.</i>	sorō'ri <b>s</b> <b>is</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	cōn'sul <b>ī</b>	<i>Dat.</i>	sorō'r <b>ī</b> <b>ī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	cōn'sul <b>em</b>	<i>Acc.</i>	sorō'r <b>em</b> <b>em</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	cōn'sul <b>e</b>	<i>Abl.</i>	sorō'r <b>e</b> <b>e</b>
		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	cōn'sul <b>ēs</b>	<i>Nom.</i>	sorō'r <b>ēs</b> <b>ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	cōn'sul <b>um</b>	<i>Gen.</i>	sorō'r <b>um</b> <b>um</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	cōnsu'lib <b>us</b>	<i>Dat.</i>	sorō'r <b>ibus</b> <b>ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	cōn'sul <b>ēs</b>	<i>Acc.</i>	sorō'r <b>ēs</b> <b>ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnsu'lib <b>us</b>	<i>Abl.</i>	sorō'r <b>ibus</b> <b>ibus</b>

*Note.* — Compare the following case endings :

Declension	I	II	III
Accusative singular :	- <b>am</b>	- <b>um</b>	- <b>em</b>
Genitive plural :	- <b>ārum</b>	- <b>ōrum</b>	- <b>um</b>
Accusative plural :	- <b>ās</b>	- <b>ōs</b>	- <b>ēs</b>

\* The motto of Kansas and an appropriate one for school classes.  
Literally ; *To the stars through difficulties.*

## 126.

## VOCABULARY

ar'bor, -oris, f., *tree*.cōn'sul, -ulis, m., *consul*.explōrā'tor, -ō'ris, m., *scout*.imperā'tor, -ō'ris, m., *commander-  
in-chief, general*.mercā'tor, -ō'ris, m., *merchant*.so'ror, -ō'ris, f., *sister*.ti'mor, -ō'ris, m., *fear, dread*.vic'tor, -ō'ris, m., *victor*.victō'ria, -ae, f., *victory*.lā'tus, -a, -um, *broad, wide*.ubi, *interrogative adverb, where?**relative adverb, where, when.*quis, *interrogative pronoun, who?*(a) Decline the above nouns in -or like **soror**.127. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

arbor

victor

explorer

timorous

sorority

latitude

liberate

victory

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

## RULE

128. **Parsing.** — To parse a noun give (1) declension, (2) nominative and genitive singular, (3) gender, (4) number, (5) case, (6) rule.

In 129, (a) 1, **mūrum** would be parsed as follows: **mūrum**: *second declension, mūrus, mūrī*; *masculine (gender); singular (number); accusative (case), direct object of the verb aedificābunt*.

## EXERCISES

129. *Translate, parsing the nouns and giving synopses of the verbs:*

(a) 1. Victōrēs mūrum altum aedificābunt. 2. Erat magnus timor. 3. Amīcī mercātōrum agrōs multōs et lātōs vās-tābant. 4. Magister sorōrī parvae pulchrum librum mōn-strāvit. 5. Fīlius imperātōris tubā cōsulī victōriam magnam nūntiat.

(b) 1. Es filia cāra. 2. Ad fēminam bonam dōna pulchra portāverāmus. 3. Dominus bonus servōs fidōs liberāverat. 4. Fuērunt in silvā multae et magnae arborēs. 5. Lēgātī ex oppidō in castra explōrātōrēs convocāverunt.

**130.** *Translate, marking long vowels:*

(a) 1. There will be a great reward. 2. The scout's sister had been in the victor's field. 3. The faithful consul has set free many slaves in (his) native land. 4. The woman will praise (her) son's victory. 5. The lieutenants have not conquered the Gauls.

(b) 1. The victors gave many large gifts to (their) sons, but will not give the boys swords. 2. You are a good man,



A ROMAN SWORD IN ITS SHEATH.

Notice the delicate ornamentation.

but you are not free. 3. The commander-in-chief will announce the victory to the faithful consul. 4. The man called (his) sons and daughters out of the forest into the town. 5. We had shown the beautiful trees to (our) friends.

**131. Questions.** — Questions which cannot be answered by *yes* or *no* are introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb. In such questions **ne** is not used.

*Where was the merchant?* **Ubi erat mercātor?**

*Who is the general?* **Quis est imperātor?**

### ORAL EXERCISE

**132.** *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Ubi soror puerī erat? 2. Quis es? 3. Nōne magna victōria fuit? 4. Esne amīcus imperātōris? 5. Aedificāvitne altum mūrum?

## LESSON XXI

### THIRD DECLENSION. ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

*Cum grano salis.* — *With a grain of salt.\**

**133.** In many nouns of the third declension the nominative differs a little from the base. Notice that the English derivative usually is formed from the base and not from the nominative. *Military* — **milit**; *judicial* — **iudic**.

**Miles**, m., *soldier*

BASE, **mī'lit-**

**Iūdex**, m., *judge*

BASE, **iū'dic-**

**Frāter**, m., *brother*

BASE, **frā'tr-**

#### SINGULAR

*Nom.* mī'les

iū'dex

frā'ter

*Gen.* mī'litis

iū'dicis

frā'tris

*Dat.* mī'litī

iū'dicī

frā'trī

*Acc.* mī'litem

iū'dicem

frā'trem

*Abl.* mī'lite

iū'dice

frā'tre

#### PLURAL

*Nom.* mī'litēs

iū'dicēs

frā'trēs

*Gen.* mī'litum

iū'dicum

frā'trum

*Dat.* mī'litibus

iū'dicibus

frā'tribus

*Acc.* mī'litēs

iū'dicēs

frā'trēs

*Abl.* mī'litibus

iū'dicibus

frā'tribus

### 134.

### VOCABULARY

**Cae'sar**, -aris, m., *Caesar*.

**le'giō**, -ō'nis, f., *legion*.

**dux**, du'cis, m., *leader*.

**lī'berī**, -ō'rum, m., *children*.

**frā'ter**, -tris, m., *brother*.

**mā'ter**, -tris, f., *mother*.

**iū'dex**, -icis, m., *judge*.

**mī'les**, -itis, m., *soldier*.

**la'pis**, -idis, m., *stone*.

**pa'ter**, -tris, m., *father*.

**de'cim**us, -a, -um, *tenth*.

**tē'lum**, -ī, n., *weapon*.

**oppug'nō**, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *attack, storm*.

**cir'cum**, preposition with accusative, *around*.

**cum**, preposition with ablative, *with*.

---

\* Taking a remark *cum grano salis* implies an exaggeration.

(a) Note carefully :

**liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,**

**liber, -era, -erum,**

**liberī, -ōrum,**

**liber, librī,**

*to set free.*

*free.*

*freeborn children.*

*book.*

{ Compare the  
English  
*liberate, liberty.*  
*library.*



THE LIBRARY OF HADRIAN'S VILLA.

Hadrian was one of the greatest Roman emperors (117-138 A.D.). Near Rome he built a magnificent villa, the library of which is shown here.

**135.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

fraternity

decimal

judicial

paternal

lapidary

maternal

legion

fraternal

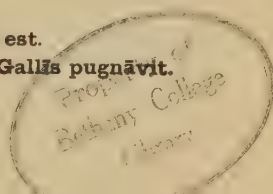
(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

#### RULE

**136. Ablative of Accompaniment.** — Accompaniment (in company with or in conflict with) is expressed by the ablative with **cum**.

*The boy is with his father. Puer cum patre est.*

*Caesar fought with the Gauls. Caesar cum Gallis pugnāvit.*



## EXERCISES

**137.** *Translate, and give construction of each noun:*

- (a) 1. Dux cum frātre erat. 2. Liberī cum iūdice erunt.  
 3. Gallī cum Caesare pugnābant. 4. Pater cum filiābus est.  
 5. Caesar cum decimā legiōne oppidum Gallōrum oppugnāvit.
- (b) 1. Miles tubā decimae legiōnī victōriam nūtiāvit.  
 2. Malus vir lapide militem vulnerāverit. 3. Lāta fossa circum mūrum fuerat. 4. Liberī iūdicis patrī tēla mōnstrābunt.  
 5. Ducēs cum multis militibus oppida magna oppugnāverant.

**138.** *Translate:*

(a) 1. The soldiers fought with the tenth legion. 2. The men saved the town of (their) fathers. 3. The leaders will storm the wall around the camp. 4. The girl was with (her) brother in the native land of the Gauls. 5. Caesar gives a signal to (his) faithful legions.

(b) 1. The general and (his) children are good friends. 2. The judge's mother and sister were unhappy. 3. The messenger carried a letter from the merchant to the farmer. 4. The lieutenants have announced the victories of the soldiers. 5. The leader's forces passed the winter in camp and (there) was great fear.

## ORAL EXERCISE

**139.** *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quis iūdex erit? 2. Pugnāvistīne tēlis? 3. Quis cum Gallīs pugnābat? 4. Militēsne oppidum oppugnāverunt? 5. Ubi erant bonī liberī?

## SERVUS FIDUS

Bellum erat. Cōsul magnās cōpiās convocāvit et castra in silvā locāvit. Cōsul dux militum erat et bellum amābat, sed liberī militum bellum nōn amābant.



Barbari castra oppugnant.<sup>1</sup> Cōsul decimam legiōnem ēvocat. Militēs pugnant et barbarōs superant. Tum cōsul,<sup>2</sup> “Nunc patriam servāvistis. In oppidō patrēs militum et mātres et frātres et sorōres et filiī et filiae fāmam dē victōriā exspectant. Quis nūntius erit et victōriam nūntiābit? Longa est via ā castris ad oppidum, et silvae nigrae sunt. In silvis



THE OLYMPEIUM AT ATHENS.

The temple to Olympian Zeus was the largest sacred building of antiquity. It was about 130 by 350 feet, while an idea of the height may be gained from the columns in the picture. This was another of Hadrian's works, although it had been begun by the Athenians many centuries before.

multī barbari sunt. Militēs defessi sunt. Ubi est servus nōn timidus?”

Tum servus parvus litterās ē castris in oppidum portāvit et victōriam nūntiāvit. Cōsul servum fidum liberāvit. Servus cōsuli ob iūdicium bonum grātiās ēgit.

Nōne servus libertātem amāvit?

<sup>1</sup> In narrative the present tense is often used instead of the perfect.

<sup>2</sup> Supply *said*.



## LESSON XXII

### SECOND CONJUGATION

*Auribus teneo lupum. — I've caught a Tartar.\**

**140. The Four Conjugations.** — There are four regular conjugations of verbs. They are distinguished by the vowel before **-re** in the present infinitive active. Their stems are all found in the same way as those of **portō**. See §§ 66 and 98.

	<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	<i>Stem Vowel</i>
1st	por'tō	portā're	portā'vī	portā'tus	ā
2d	mo'neō	monē're	mo'nuī	mo'nitus	ē
3d	dū'cō	dū'cere	dū'xī	duc'tus	e
4th	au'diō	audī're	audī'vī	audī'tus	ī

**141. The Second Conjugation.** — The same rules as to stem, tense sign, and personal ending are followed for forming the various indicative tenses in the second conjugation as in the first. The *present stem* is **monē-**; the *perfect stem*, **monu-**.

In the first person singular of the present tense **e** of the stem is retained before the personal ending **-ō**, **moneō**.

**142. Conjugation of mo'neō, I advise, warn.**

Indicative Active			
PRESENT		PERFECT	
<i>I advise, warn</i>		<i>I have advised, warned</i>	
mo'neō	monē'mus	mo'nuī	monu'imus
mo'nēs	monē'tis	monuis'tī	monuis'tis
mo'net <sup>1</sup>	mo'nent	mo'nuit	monuē'runt (-ē're)

\* Terence. Literally: *I hold a wolf by the ears.*

<sup>1</sup> Note that the quantity of **e** corresponds to that of **a** in the first conjugation. See § 67, a.

IMPERFECT

*I was advising, warning*

monē'bam	monēbā'mus
monē'bās	monēbā'tis
monē'bat	monē'bant

FUTURE

*I shall advise, warn*

monē'bō	monē'bimus
monē'bis	monē'bitis
monē'bit	monē'bunt

PLUPERFECT

*I had advised, warned*

monu'eram	monuerā'mus
monu'erās	monuerā'tis
monu'erat	monu'erant

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have advised, warned*

monu'erō	monue'rimus
monu'eris	monue'ritis
monu'erit	monu'erint

143.

VOCABULARY

ha'beō, -ē're, -uī, -itus, *have, hold, consider.*

mo'neō, -ē're, -uī, -itus, *advise, warn.*

te'neō, -ē're, -uī, —, *hold.*

mo'veō, -ē're, mō'vī, mō'tus, *move; (with castra) break up.*

ti'meō, -ē're, -uī, —, *fear, be afraid of.*

vi'deō, -ē're, vī'dī, vī'sus, *see.*

144. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

admonish

timid

tenacious

visible

movable

motion

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

145. *Analyze each form:*

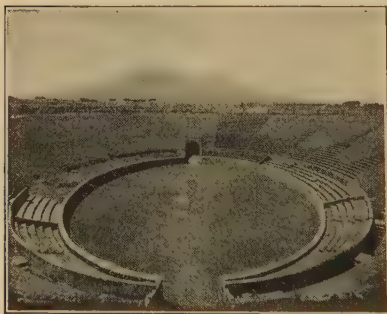
(a) 1. Habēbam, habuit, habēbunt, habuerātis. 2. Vidēmus,<sup>1</sup> vīdimus, videt, vīdit. 3. Timēbō, timuērunt, timuerint, timuit. 4. Movēbunt, mōvimus, movent, mōverātis. 5. Tenēbant, tenuistī, tenuit, tenuerint.

<sup>1</sup> Compare vidēmus, vīdimus; videt, vīdit.

(b) 1. Portat, laudāvī, timuī, nūntiāvit. 2. Parāvistis, vīdistis, dedistis, mōnstrābāmus. 3. Timēs, tenuerō, habēbat, vīderunt. 4. Vidēbant, vāstās, monet, mōvit. 5. Portāvit, monuit, dedit, fuit.

(c) Give synopses in the indicative active of: **habeō, tenēs, timet, movēmus, vidētis, movent.**

146. *Translate, marking long vowels:*



THE AMPHITHEATER AT POMPEII.

Compare this with the pictures on pages 12 and 236.

(a) 1. We were moving, they had moved, he will move. 2. I shall warn, you had warned. 3. We have feared, they have seen, I shall have. 4. You have stormed, we were having. 5. They gave, they had been, they were seeing.

(b) 1. He warned, he gave, he saw. 2. He will have seen, he had held, you (*plu.*) are fearing. 3. You (*sing.*) were seeing, I had moved, you will have held. 4. They warn, we seized, he carries. 5. They had called, I am seeing, you moved.

ORAL EXERCISE

147. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Movēbisne? 2. Num militem vīdistis? 3. Nōne frā-trem monuerās? 4. Habuistīne tēla? 5. Timetne cōnsul?



THE COLOSSEUM.



## LESSON XXIII

### THIRD DECLENSION (*Continued*)

*Mens sana in corpore sano. — A sound mind in a sound body.\**

148. The terminations of **neuters** of the third declension differ from masculines and feminines in the nominative and accusative, singular and plural. Compare § 45, *a*.

Caput, n., head BASE, capit-	Flūmen, n., river BASE, flūmin-	Corpus, n., body BASE, corpor-	TERMINA- TIONS
SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i> ca'put	flū'men	cor'pus	—
<i>Gen.</i> ca'pitis	flū'minis	cor'poris	<b>is</b>
<i>Dat.</i> ca'pitī	flū'minī	cor'porī	<b>ī</b>
<i>Acc.</i> ca'put	flū'men	cor'pus	—
<i>Abl.</i> ca'pite	flū'mine	cor'pore	<b>e</b>
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i> ca'pita	flū'mina	cor'pora	<b>a</b>
<i>Gen.</i> ca'pitum	flū'minum	cor'porum	<b>um</b>
<i>Dat.</i> capi'tibus	flūmi'nibus	corpo'ribus	<b>ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i> ca'pita	flū'mina	cor'pora	<b>a</b>
<i>Abl.</i> capi'tibus	flūmi'nibus	corpo'ribus	<b>ibus</b>

### 149. VOCABULARY

ca'put, ca'pitis, n., head.	flū'men, flū'minis, n., river.
clā'mor, clāmō'ris, m., shout, noise.	ho'mō, ho'minis, m. and f., man, human being.
co'mes, co'mitis, m. and f., companion.	pēs, pe'dis, m., foot.
cor'pus, cor'poris, n., body.	rēx, rē'gis, m., king.
	quid, interrog. pron., what?

150. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

capital	regal	pedestrian
pedestal	corporal	corpse

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

\* Juvenal.

## RULE

**151. Ablative of Manner.** — Manner is expressed by the ablative with **cum**. **Cum** may be omitted when the ablative is modified by an adjective.

*He works with care.* **Cum dīligentiā labōrat.**

*He works with great care.* **Magnā<sup>1</sup> cum dīligentiā labōrat.**  
**Magnā dīligentiā labōrat.**

## EXERCISES

**152. Translate, and give principal parts of each verb:**

(a) 1. Homō cum clāmōre comitem vocābat. 2. Milītēs cum dīligentiā oppidum servāvērunt. 3. Magistrī magnīs cum clāmōribus equōs vocāvērunt. 4. Caesar magnā cum dīligentiā decimam legiōnem in castrīs tenuerit. 5. Pedēs et corpus equī vidēmus.

(b) 1. Filius rēgis bonōs comitēs habēbit. 2. Hominēs decimam legiōnem timuerant. 3. Rēx magnum flūmen in silvā vīdit. 4. Hominēs castra mōverint. 5. Niger equus corpus magnum sed caput parvum habet.

**153. Translate, marking long vowels:**

(a) 1. The good teacher will advise the brother and sister. 2. With many shouts the soldiers seized the town. 3. The children feared the man's companion. 4. We fought with bad men, but were not victors. 5. The man's body was large, but (his) feet were small.

(b) 1. The men had wounded the horse's head with large stones. 2. We saw the judge and the king on the river. 3. Many men fear deep rivers. 4. The Gauls have walls around (their) towns. 5. With great fear the merchants had seen the soldiers.

---

<sup>1</sup> When the noun of a prepositional phrase is modified by an adjective, the adjective is often placed before the preposition.





THE ROMAN FORUM.

Probably no spot in the world is more interesting historically than the Forum, the center of life and political activity under the Republic and the Empire. Here the Romans gathered to discuss the topics of the day; here the populace thronged, clamoring for bread and games (*panem et circenses*); here the Gracchi and Cicero harangued the multitude.

In the picture the column at the extreme left is one of three remaining of the Temple of Vespasian; the arch at the left is that of Septimius Severus; in the center is the Temple of Saturn; while in the right center is the flat floor of the Basilica Julia. In front of this (to the left of it in the picture) ran the Sacred Way, which wound through the Forum and passed under the Arch of Titus (see cut on page 84) at the back of the picture to the right. To the left of the Arch of Titus is seen the Colosseum. In the right center of the Forum are two of the columns of the Temple of Castor. Compare this picture with those on pages 133, 190, and facing 129.

## ORAL EXERCISE

154. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quid vīdistī?    2. Suntne magnī lapidēs in flūmine?
3. Habēsne comitem?    4. Num ducēs castra mōvērunt?
5. Quis habet magnum caput?

## LESSON XXIV

### THIRD DECLENSION. I-STEMS

*Ars longa, vita brevis.* — “*Art is long and time is fleeting.*” \*

**155. Third declension nouns** which have **i** before, or in place of, the vowel of certain endings are called **i-stems**.

(a) In the first declension we noticed that **a** seemed the predominant vowel; in the second, **o**. So we speak of them as the **a-declension** and the **o-declension** and we say their *stems* end in **ā** and **o**. Similarly we speak of the third declension as the consonant or **i-declension**, because its stems end in a consonant or in **i**. In the consonant stems which we have been studying so far the *stem* is just like the *base*. We are now to study **i-stems**. Their *stem* is made by adding **i** to the *base*.

**156.** The following nouns regularly have **i-stems**:

1. Masculine and feminine nouns ending in **-ēs** and **-is**, not increasing<sup>1</sup> in the genitive; nouns ending in **-ns**, **-rs**, and monosyllables in **-s** or **-x** following a consonant.

These all end in **-ī** or **-e** in the ablative singular, **-ium** in the genitive plural, and **-īs** or **-ēs** in the accusative plural.<sup>2</sup>

2. Neuter nouns ending in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**.

These end in **-ī** in the ablative singular, **-ium** in the genitive plural, and in **-ia** in the nominative and accusative plural.

---

\* Literally: *Art is long, life short.*

<sup>1</sup> The expression “not increasing in the genitive” is used to distinguish nouns like **hostis**, whose genitive has the same number of syllables as the nominative, from nouns like **miles**, **militis**, whose genitive has more syllables than the nominative.

<sup>2</sup> Originally the accusative singular ended in **-im**, the ablative singular in **-ī**, and the accusative plural in **-īs**; but these endings have been largely displaced by **-em**, **-e**, and **-ēs**.

157.

**Hos'tis**, m., *enemy*.BASE, **host-**STEM, **hosti-****Ma're**, n., *sea*.BASE, **mar-**STEM, **mari-**

## SINGULAR

			TERMINATIONS	
			M. and F.	Neut.
<i>Nom.</i>	hos'tis	ma're	<b>is</b>	<b>e</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	hos'tis	ma'ris	<b>is</b>	<b>is</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	hos'tī	ma'rī	<b>ī</b>	<b>ī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	hos'tem	ma're	<b>em (im)</b>	<b>e</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	hos'te	ma'rī	<b>e (ī)</b>	<b>ī</b>

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	hos'tēs	ma'ria	<b>ēs</b>	<b>ia</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	hos'tium	ma'rium	<b>ium</b>	<b>ium</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	hos'tibus	ma'ribus	<b>ibus</b>	<b>ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	hos'tis, ēs	ma'ria	<b>is, ēs</b>	<b>ia</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	hos'tibus	ma'ribus	<b>ibus</b>	<b>ibus</b>

*Note.* — A few nouns like **ignis**, *fire*, have **ī** or **e** in the ablative singular.

158.

## VOCABULARY

✓ a'nimal, -ā'lis, (-ium <sup>1</sup> ), n., <i>animal</i> .	mōns, mon'tis, (-ium), m., <i>mountain</i> .
cae'dēs, -is, (-ium), f., <i>slaughter</i> .	nox, noc'tis, (-ium), f., <i>night</i> .
hos'tis, hos'tis, m., <i>an enemy</i> —	✓ pars, par'tis, (-ium), f., <i>part</i> .
hos'tēs, hos'tium, the <i>enemy</i> .	✓ por'ta, -ae, f., <i>gate</i> .
✓ ig'nis, -is, (-ium), m., <i>fire</i> .	rī'pa, -ae, f., <i>bank (of a river)</i> .
ma're, -is, (-ium <sup>2</sup> ), n., <i>sea</i> .	urbs, ur'bis, (-ium), f., <i>city</i> .
	sae'pe, <i>adverb, often</i> .

159. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

hostile	ignite	marine	nocturnal
partial	riparian	portal	urban

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

<sup>1</sup> Genitive plural.<sup>2</sup> The genitive plural is not used.

## EXERCISES

160. *Translate, and decline the nouns:*

- (a) 1. Multa animālia fuērunt in mari. 2. In Galliā noctēs sunt longae. 3. Agrōs hostium ignī vāstābimus. 4. Caput pars corporis est. 5. Caesar cum hostibus saepe pugnāvit et caedēs fuit magna.



CAESAR.

Caius Julius Caesar was the greatest Roman and one of the greatest men that ever lived, famous alike as general, statesman, and writer. Part of his *Gallic War*, referred to on page 5, will be found on pages 255–266.

- (b) 1. Rīpae flūminis altae erant. 2. Dux militēs in castris tenuit. 3. Agrōs ab urbe ad montem vāstāvit. 4. Militēs ā portīs urbis tēla portābunt. 5. Patrēs filiōs magnā cum dīligentiā monuerant.

161. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

- (a) 1. Caesar had been victor. 2. (There) have been many fires on the mountain. 3. The enemy will pass the winter in the city. 4. (There) was a great slaughter of the enemy on the bank of the river. 5. The general's brother and sister see the large rivers.

- (b) 1. There are often beautiful stones in the river. 2. They broke camp and stormed the gates of the enemy's town. 3. The lieutenants had seen the fires of the enemy's camp from the city. 4. The men announced (their) victory to Caesar with great shouts. 5. The little children had feared the large animals.

162. *State in Latin five facts.* One pupil may state a fact to another and he in turn tell it to the class in English.



RUINS OF THE SO-CALLED IMPERIAL PALACE AT TREVES.

Roman civilization spread not only through France and England but also into the valleys of the Moselle and Rhine. Treves was the Augusta Treverorum of the Romans and the chief city of the Treveri of whom Caesar writes in his *Gallie War*. It has more Roman remains than any other city of western Europe, including besides the palace above, an amphitheater, baths, and a great stone gateway.

### HELVĒTĪ

Gallia est omnis dīvisā<sup>1</sup> in partēs trēs. Ūnam partem incolunt<sup>2</sup> Belgae, aliam<sup>3</sup> Aquītānī. Tertiam partem incolunt Galli.

Helvētīi gēns<sup>4</sup> Gallōrum sunt. Cum Germānīs continenter bellum gerunt. Germānī trāns Rhēnum incolunt.<sup>2</sup> Flūmen Rhēnus agrōs Helvētīōrum ā Germānīs dīvidit. Agrī nōn lātī sunt. Helvētīi multum frūmentum nōn habent.

<sup>1</sup> Divided.      <sup>2</sup> Notice that *incolunt* means *inhabit* when it is transitive and *dwell* when it is intransitive.      <sup>3</sup> Supply *incolunt*.      <sup>4</sup> See § 41.

## LESSON XXV

### REVIEW

---

*Consensus facit legem. — General consent makes the law.*

---

**163. Derivatives.** — Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following :

arbor	lātus	victōria	fēmina
dux	frāter	pater	miles
decimus	caput	corpus	homō
pēs	moveō	teneō	videō
hostis	ignis	pars	urbs

**164. Word Drill.** — (*a*) Give the nominative and genitive singular and the gender of the Latin nouns for the following :

gate	(victory)	foot	mother
man	slaughter	head	river
body	tree	brother	father
mountain	soldier	(sister)	enemy
city	children	sea	legion
weapon	fire	night	king
judge	stone	bank	leader

(*b*) See how many seconds it takes you to give the principal parts of the Latin verbs for the following :

advise	lay waste	show	hold
set free	have	see	storm
build	announce	give	conquer
move	fear	seize	warn

(*c*) The following words of the third declension have the same form in English and Latin : **animal, apex, arbor, ardor, axis, bases, candor, censor, cognomen, color, competitor, consul, dictator, discolor, error, favor, finis, furor, genus, gladiator, honor, horror, interior, janitor, labor, languor,**



liquor, major, minor, multiplex, odor, omen, onus, opus, orator, pallor, pastor, posterior, prior, ratio, senator, senior, speculator, splendor, superior, tutor, ulterior, vapor, vertex, victor, vigor. Look up the meanings of those you do not know.

†165. **Form Drill.** — 1. Decline *iūdex*, *imperātor*, *flūmen*, *hostis*, *mare*. 2. Conjugate *videō* through the indicative active. 3. Give the genitive singular ending of nouns of the first, second, and third declensions; also the accusative singular, genitive plural, and accusative plural endings. 4. Make a statement in Latin containing an ablative of means and an ablative of accompaniment. 5. Make a statement in Latin containing an ablative of manner.

166. **Questions.** — 1. Of what gender are nouns of the first declension? of the second? of the third? 2. What are the nominative endings of masculine nouns of the second declension? of neuter nouns of the second declension? 3. How do *i*-stems differ from consonant stems in declension? 4. How are the conjugations of verbs distinguished? 5. How does the present stem of the first conjugation always end? the present stem of the second conjugation?

#### EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

167. 1. Puella fēminae librum dedit. 2. Multa aqua in agrō fuit. 3. Tēla explorātōris multa et magna erant. 4. Iūdex filiābus librōs pulchrōs dedit, sed filiīs pīla. 5. Multī ducēs magnam militum diligentiam laudant. 6. Virī malum cōsulem nōn amāverant. 7. Comes rēgis urbēs et flūmina vidēbit. 8. Hominēs decimam legiōnem timuerant. 9. Serva ā dominā ad mātrem dōna pulchra portābat. 10. Multī mercātōrēs montēs et mare vidēbunt.



## LESSON XXVI

### PASSIVE VOICE. ABLATIVE OF AGENT

*Tempora mutantur. — Times are changed.*

168. The Passive Voice<sup>1</sup> has the following personal endings:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st	-r	-mur
2d	-ris (re)	-minī
3d	-tur	-ntur

The rules for forming the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* indicative are the same as in the active voice, the passive personal endings taking the place of the active ones.

169.

### PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR

PLURAL

#### Present Indicative

por'tor, *I am carried.*

portā'mur, *we are carried.*

portā'ris (-re), *you are carried.*

portā'minī, *you are carried.*

portā'tur, *he is carried.*

portan'tur, *they are carried.*

#### Imperfect Indicative

portā'bar, *I was (being) carried.*

portābā'mur, *we were carried.*

portābā'ris (-re), *you were carried.*

portābā'minī, *you were carried.*

portābā'tur, *he was carried.*

portāban'tur, *they were carried.*

#### Future Indicative

portā'bor, *I shall be carried.*

portā'bimur, *we shall be carried.*

portā'beris (-re), *you will be carried.*

portābi'minī, *you will be carried.*

portā'bitur, *he will be carried.*

portābun'tur, *they will be carried.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare §§ 630 and 631.

(a) Note the change in the vowel of the tense sign in the first and second person singular and third person plural of the future passive.

(b) Compare carefully the English translation of the active and passive of each tense.

**170. Perfect Tenses.** — The perfect stem is not used in the passive voice. The participial stem is used instead. This is found by dropping **-us** from the perfect passive participle (the last one of the principal parts).

The *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* tenses in the passive are made by combining the participial stem, plus the endings seen in **magnus**, **-a**, **-um**, with forms of **sum**. The ending of the participial stem agrees with the subject and this form is conjugated with **sum** for the perfect, **eram** for the pluperfect, and **erō** for the future perfect.

### Perfect

*I have been (was) carried, etc.*

portā'tus,	{	sum	portā'tī	{	su'mus
(-a, -um)	{	es	(-ae, -a)	{	es'tis
	{	est		{	sunt

### Pluperfect

*I had been carried, etc.*

portā'tus,	{	e'ram	portā'tī	{	erā'mus
(-a, -um)	{	e'rās	(-ae, -a)	{	erā'tis
	{	e'rat		{	e'rant

### Future Perfect

*I shall have been carried, etc.*

portā'tus,	{	e'rō	portā'tī,	{	e'rimus
(-a, -um)	{	e'ris	(-ae, -a)	{	e'ritis
	{	e'rit		{	e'runt

(a) Conjugate **portō** in the feminine and neuter through the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses in the passive voice.

## EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

171. *Analyze each Latin form:*

(a) 1. Laudābantur, laudātī sumus, laudāvī. 2. Portāberis, portātum erat, portor. 3. Pugnāvimus, pugnābunt, pugnāverāmus. 4. Occupāta sunt, occupāta est, occupātur. 5. Amābiminī, amātī erimus, amātae erant.

(b) 1. Vulnerātus es, vulnerābāminī, vulnerāberis. 2. Dantur, dabuntur, dedimus. 3. Data erunt, cēlāberis, amābuntur. 4. Vocābāmur, vocāvistis, vocātum erat. 5. Aedificāvit, nūntiābitur, liberāta est.



PORTA A ROMANIS AEDIFICATA.

This is the Porta San Paolo at Rome, with the Pyramid of Cestius.

172. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

(a) 1. You will be wounded. 2. They had been concealed. 3. I shall be praised. 4. It will be announced. 5. They (*neut.*) have been seized.

(b) 1. It has been carried. 2. They were conquered. 3. They have passed the winter. 4. We have been called together. 5. It was saved.

✓ 173.

## VOCABULARY

centu'riō, -ō'nis, m., centurion.

Iū'lia, -ae, f., Julia.

proe'lium, proe'li, n., battle.

stel'la, -ae, f., star.

vī'cus, -ī, m., village.

sem'per, adv., always, ever.

 vir'tūs, -ū'tis, f., virtue, valor,  
courage.

dēfes'sus, -a, -um, tired, weary.

 cul'pō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, blame,  
censure.

nā'vigō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, sail.

(a) Compare **vīcus**, **oppidum**, **urbs**; **saepe** and **semper**; **bellum** and **proelium**.

174. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

virtue

culpable

navigate

constellation

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

## RULE

175. **Ablative of Agent.**—The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**.

*The good boy is praised by his father.* **Puer bonus ā patre laudātur.**

*The book was carried by the teacher.* **Liber ā magistrō portābātur.**

## EXERCISES

176. *Translate, and give the rule for each noun in the ablative case:*

(a) 1. **Puer bonus ā mātrem nōn saepe culpābitur.** 2. **Dominus in marī nāvigāvit.** 3. **Liberī ā Iuliā amantur.** 4. **Agri ā militibus vāstābuntur.** 5. **Vici parvī hostium ā cōpiis Caesaris occupāti sunt.**

(b) 1. **In Galliā proelia ā fidō centuriōne semper nūntiāta erant.** 2. **Lēgātī ā portis tubā ā dēfessō milite vocābuntur.** 3. **Corpus equī multis lapidibus vulnerābātur.** 4. **Agri Galliae ignī ab hostibūs vāstātī erunt.** 5. **Centuriōnēs urbēs magnās cum virtūte oppugnāverant.**

177. *Translate:*

CENTURIO.

The Roman centurion commanded a century or company of 100 men.

(a) 1. The number of stars is great. 2. The teacher has been blamed by the boy's friend. 3. The centurions sailed with the soldiers. 4. Julia and (her) companion will have been loved by many friends. 5. The signals had always been given with a trumpet by the soldier.

(b) 1. The valor of the faithful soldiers will always be praised by the leaders. 2. The sons and daughters of the king are in the city with (their) dear friends. 3. The leader breaks camp and the tired soldiers are called into the village. 4. We see a part of the battle from the bank of the river. 5. The soldiers attacked the city with great valor.

## ORAL EXERCISE

178. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Puerne ā mātē culpābātur? 2. Quis fidō militi tēlum dedit? 3. Lēgātusne mīlitēs vocābit? 4. Frūmentumne in oppidum portātum est? 5. Quis amīcus puerōrum erit?

## LESSON XXVII

### THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

---

*Iacta alea est. — The die is cast.\**

---

**179. Adjectives of the third declension** have the same endings as nouns of the third declension. Those ending in **-er** have a different form for each gender in the nominative singular and are called adjectives of *three endings*: **ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**. Learn the declension of **ācer**, § 570.

(a) Almost all adjectives of the third declension, except comparatives, follow the inflection of **i**-stems; that is, they have **-ī** in the ablative singular, **-ium** in the genitive plural, **-is** or **-ēs** in the accusative plural, masculine and feminine, and **-ia** in the nominative and accusative plural neuter.

#### 180.

#### VOCABULARY

**ae'stās**, **-tā'tis**, f., *summer*.

**an'nus**, **-ī**, m., *year*.

**celer'itās**, **-tā'tis**, f., *swiftness*.

**cī'vis**, **cī'vis**, (**-ium**), m. and f.,  
*citizen*.

**hō'ra**, **-ae**, f., *hour*.

**mēn'sa**, **-ae**, f., *table*.

**nau'ta**, **-ae**, m., *sailor*.

**nā'vis**, **nā'vis**, (**-ium**), f., *ship*.

**ā'cer**, **ā'cris**, **ā'cre**, *sharp, keen,*  
*active*.

**ce'ler**, **ce'leris**, **ce'lere**, *quick,*  
*swift*.

**ter'tius**, **-a**, **-um**, *third*.

**181. What Latin words do the following suggest?**

civic

nautical

navy

accelerate

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

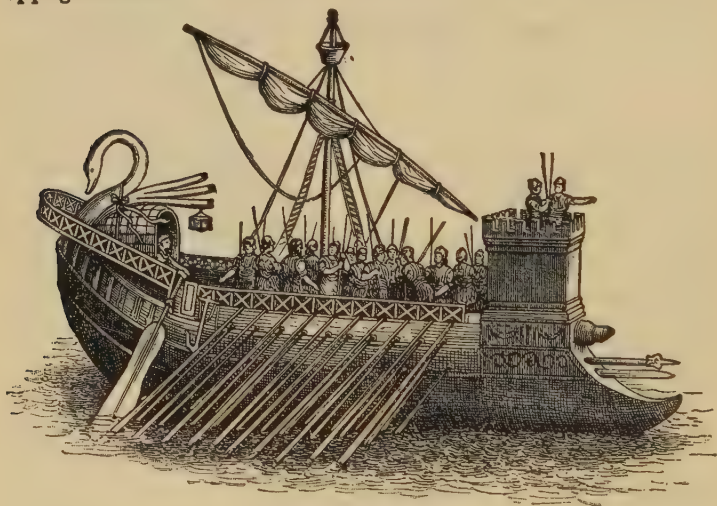
\* Said by Caesar when he crossed the Rubicon. Quoted by Suetonius.

## RULE

**182. Ablative of Time.** — Time when, or within which, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

*They were fighting at the tenth hour. Decimā hōrā pugnābant.*

*Many towns were stormed in one year. Multa oppida ūnō annō oppugnāta sunt.*



NAVIS ROMANA.

This is a *trireme* or ship with three banks of oars. These usually furnished the power for the ship. The sail was not constructed for tacking and was used only with a following or favorable wind. Note that one of the meanings of *secundus* (from *sequor*, to follow) is *favorable*.

## EXERCISES

**183.** *Translate, and give the construction of each noun:*

(a) 1. Aestāte militēs Caesaris saepe pugnābant. 2. Dux dēfessus nocte castra movet. 3. Tertiā hōrā frūmentum ex nāvibus in oppidum ab nautīs portātum erat. 4. Centuriō cum decimā legiōne annō tertiō oppidum magnā cum virtūte occupāvit. 5. Virtūs cīvium magna erat.



(b) 1. Nautae nāvibus nāvigant. 2. Hominēs magnā cum celeritāte in vīcum portātī sunt. 3. Nāvēs celerēs ad Iūliam litterās portāverant. 4. Librī in mēnsā magnā sunt. 5. Gladii ā filiīs iūdicis portātī erunt.

#### 184. *Translate:*

- (a) 1. The good king was loved by the faithful citizens. 2. In the third year of the war Caesar built many ships and he was not blamed by the citizens. 3. Good sailors see the stars and the sea and ships. 4. The man's companion was a swift messenger. 5. At nine o'clock<sup>1</sup> the tired soldiers were overcome with great swiftness by the enemy.
- ✓ (b) 1. A high wall has been built around the village. 2. (There) are always many battles in a long war. 3. Weapons will be shown to the active soldier by the good leader. 4. The consul's native land had broad fields. 5. Many villages had been laid waste with fire by the enemy.

**185. Composition.**—State in Latin three facts about the table or the things upon it. When one pupil has stated a fact, another should translate it.

#### PHRASES FROM CAESAR

#### 186. *Commit to memory with the translation:*

1. Aestāte. 2. Tertiā hōrā. 3. Magnā cum celeritāte. 4. Cum decimā legiōne. 5. Memoriā tenēre, *to remember*.

#### AUXILIUM AMICĪ

Est flūmen lātum et altum. Hominēs in flūmine nāvigant. Rīpās flūminis agricolae tenent. Frūmentum nāvigiīs in urbēs terrae ā nautīs portātur.

Nauta erat quī (*who*) nāvigium habuit. Saepe amīcus dē ventīs magnīs nautam admonuit, sed nauta ventōs nōn timē-

---

<sup>1</sup> The third hour.

bat. Cōpia frūmentī in nāvigium portāta est. Nauta sociōs pecūniā (*by means of money*) comparāvit et cum sociīs in flūmine nāvigāvit. Mox ventus magnus,<sup>1</sup> et nāvigium in periculō fuit.

Erat in flūmine insula parva et in insulā villa. Amīcus nautae, quī forte in villā fuit, periculum vīdit et multīs cum hominibus celeriter auxilium dedit; et<sup>2</sup> nauta et nautae<sup>3</sup> comitēs servantur.

Virtūtem et celeritātem virī ācris memoriā tenēbimus.



THE TEMPLE OF FORTUNA AT POMPEII.

This picture is interesting not so much for the ruins of the temple as for showing the ancient pavement and ruts worn by wagons, as well as the stepping stones on which the Pompeians crossed the street when it was wet.

---

<sup>1</sup> Supply fuit.    <sup>2</sup> et . . . et, both . . . and.    <sup>3</sup> See § 36.

## LESSON XXVIII

### THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

*Fortes fortuna iuvat. — Fortune favors the brave.\**

**187.** Adjectives of the third declension which end in **-is** have the masculine and feminine alike in the nominative singular and are called adjectives of *two endings*: **fortis**, **forte**. Learn the declension of **fortis**, § 571.

#### 188.

#### VOCABULARY

<b>perī'culum</b> , -ī, n., <i>danger</i> .	<b>le'vis</b> , -e, <i>light</i> (in weight).
<b>tem'pus</b> , <b>tem'poris</b> , n., <i>time</i> .	<b>om'nis</b> , -e, <i>all, every</i> .
<b>vigī'lia</b> , -ae, f., <i>watch</i> (part of the night).	<b>liben'ter</b> , adv., <i>gladly</i> .
<b>bre'vis</b> , -e, <i>short</i> .	<b>labō'rō</b> , -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>labor, work</i> .
<b>for'tis</b> , -e, <i>brave</i> .	<b>pro'perō</b> , -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>hurry, hasten</i> .
<b>gra'vis</b> , -e, <i>heavy, severe</i> .	

**189.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

temporary	brevity	grave	fortitude
levity	omnibus	peril	vigil

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

#### EXERCISES

**190.** *Translate:*

(a) 1. Brevī tempore servī rēgis liberābuntur. 2. Pars cīvium ā fortī nautā laudābātur. 3. Cīvēs gravibus lapidibus vulnerātī erant. 4. Omnēs nautae ex urbe in nāvēs properāvērunt et in marī nāvigābant. 5. Centuriō levī gladiō pugnāverit.

---

\* From the Roman dramatic poet, Terence.

(b) 1. Tertiā vigiliā noctis militēs in magnō periculō erant. 2. Virī in agrīs libenter laborāverant. 3. Militēs fortēs in castrīs saepe hiemāvērunt. 4. Decima legiō ā Gallīs nōn saepe superāta erat. 5. Pictūrās multās et magnās in mēnsā vidēbāmus.

191. *Translate:*



IMPERATOR.

(a) 1. The nights in the summer were short. 2. The book will be light, but the stone will be heavy. 3. The good citizens always love a good king and do not fear (him). 4. The brave citizen had always been praised by the consul. 5. In the third watch of the night part of the soldiers were in camp.

(b) 1. Good children are often glad to work (gladly work). 2. The tired citizens had often been censured by the brave leader. 3. In the summer all the sailors hastened to the ships with great swiftness. 4. A watch is a part of the night. 5. The boy had a heavy stone and wounded a large animal in (his) father's field.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

192. *Commit to memory with the translations*

1. Brevī tempore. 2. Tertiā vigiliā. 3. Cum militibus decimae legiōnis.

## LESSON XXIX

### SECOND CONJUGATION, PASSIVE

---

*Fas est et ab hoste doceri. — It is right to learn even from a foe.\**

---

**193.** The passive of the second conjugation is formed according to the same rules as that of the first conjugation. See Lesson XXVI.

(a) Conjugate **moneō** according to the rules before consulting the book. Compare with § 587.

**194.** Adjectives of the third declension not ending in **-er** or **-is** and not of the comparative degree have one ending. Learn the declension of **potēns**, § 572.

**195.**

#### VOCABULARY

**Rō'ma**, -ae, f., *Rome*.

**de'cem**, indeclinable adj., *ten*.

**po'tēns**, **poten'tis**, adj., *powerful*,  
*mighty*.

**vē'lōx**, **vēlō'cis**, adj., *swift*.

**prōmo'veō**, -ē're, -mō'vī, -mō'-  
**tus**, *move forward*.

**reti'neō**, -ē're, -uī, **reten'tus**,  
*restrain, detain, retain*.

**dē'leō**, -ē're, -ē'vī, -ē'tus, *destroy*.

(a) Give synopses of **dēleō** and **retinet** in the indicative active and passive.

**196.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

velocity

potential

promote

retain

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

\* Literally: *To be taught even by a foe.*

## EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

197. *Translate and analyze each form:*

(a) 1. Labōrat, monēmur, datur. 2. Vīsaē sunt, vidērunt, videntur. 3. Tenētur, tenēbātur, tenerant. 4. Mōvī, mōtus est, movēbitur. 5. Habēbit, vidēbāris, culpāberis.

(b) 1. Dēlēvit, properāvit, dedit. 2. Monuerāmus, vīsī erāmus, tenerint. 3. Dēlēbantur, datum est, monitī sumus. 4. Vulnerātī erātis, cēlābitur, vocāta eris. 5. Fuerant, erātis, fuimus.

198. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

(a) 1. We had, you were seen, they have been restrained. 2. He had been, he had been wounded, I am seen. 3. They will have been warned, it was given, we are. 4. They (*neut.*) had been destroyed, we have destroyed, it is destroyed. 5. It has been moved, they will be seen, I have seen.

(b) 1. He had held, he had been seen, he will be held. 2. You (*sing.*) will be warned, you will warn, he had been warned. 3. You (*plu.*) hasten, you (*plu.*) are seen, they had given. 4. We shall have been blamed, you had moved, they will be seen, it had been given. 5. We shall be destroyed, they have been destroyed, you (*sing.*) will be destroyed.

## EXERCISES

199. *Translate, and conjugate each passive verb through the tense in which it is used:*

(a) 1. Cīvēs malī ab imperātōre bonō culpātī sunt. 2. De celerēs nūntiī ab hostibus vidēbantur. 3. Urbs magna ā duce fortī dēlēta erat. 4. Rōma erat urbs potēns et virī Rōmae Gallōs multōs superāvērunt. 5. Lēgātus magnum numerum nāvium vėlōcium habuit.

(b) 1. Tertiā hōrā mīlitēs ex castrīs magnā cum celeritāte properābunt. 2. Decimā hōrā ab explōrātōre celerī monēbe-





A ROMAN TRIUMPH.





ris. 3. Dēfessae legiōnēs in castrīs retinēbantur. 4. Signa brevī tempore prēmōta erunt. 5. Filii agricolārum cum patribus in agrīs saepe libenter labōrāverant.

### 200. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Many are wounded in a short time. 2. The brave lieutenants have not been detained in camp. 3. Many large cities had been destroyed by the powerful general. 4. The tenth legion had been moved forward with great swiftmess. 5. Ten swift ships were destroyed by the brave sailors.

(b) 1. The signals were seen by the Gauls at the third watch. 2. The lieutenant had been warned by all the scouts. 3. The mountains are high and the rivers are deep. 4. The fires of the enemy's camp were seen at night by the tired soldiers. 5. (There) had been a great slaughter.

### ORAL EXERCISE

#### 201. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Ubi castra Caesaris erant? 2. Pugnābisne libenter?
3. Nōne cīvēs erunt potentēs? 4. Num noctēs brevēs sunt?
5. Quid in mēnsā est?

### DUX MĪLITIBUS

“Tertiā vigiliā noctis hostēs urbem oppugnābunt. Ūnō annō multōs hostēs superāvistis. Aestāte et hieme ad portās urbis properāvistis. Antēā fortēs erātis, nunc etiam fortēs eritis. Perīculum nōn leve est, sed fortūna erit bona. Patrēs et liberī mīlitum proelium spectābunt. Libenter labōrābimus et brevī tempore nūntius vērus omnibus fīnitimīs victōriam nūntiābit.”

Tum dux castra mōvit et mīlitēs ad portās dūxit.

## LESSON XXX

### REVIEW

---

*Esse quam videri. — To be rather than to seem.\**

---

**202. Derivatives.** — Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following :

culpō	vēlōx	annus	cīvis
hōra	nauta	celer	tempus
brevis	fortis	gravis	omnis

**203. Form Drill.** — 1. Name the passive personal endings. 2. Give the formula for making each tense in the indicative mood, passive voice. 3. Conjugate *ad* and *dēleō* through the indicative mood, active and passive voices. See how rapidly you can do it.<sup>1</sup> 4. Decline *celer*, *brevis*, *vēlōx*.

*Teach* **204. Syntax Drill.** — 1. Name two uses for the ablative without a preposition. 2. Name two uses for the ablative with *ā* or *ab*. 3. How is an ablative of means distinguished from an ablative of agent? 4. Into what three classes are adjectives of the third declension divided? 5. How do we determine to which one of these classes an adjective belongs?

**205. Composition.** — Write in Latin five or more connected sentences, telling something about the general and

---

\* The motto of North Carolina.

<sup>1</sup> For form drill in declensions and conjugations it is often interesting to *keep score*. See how many seconds it takes each member to recite a certain declension or conjugation. Add five seconds for each mistake. Post on the blackboard the holders of "records" in the different "events," and give volunteers chances to lower these records from time to time.

his soldiers. (The best papers may be written on the board and read at sight by the class.)

## 206. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

1. Erat magna caedēs hostium. 2. Tēlum fidō mīlitī ā duce dabātur. 3. Aqua ad equōs albōs ā servīs portāta est.



THE COLOSSEUM.

This is a different view from the one on page 20. This huge amphitheater which seated nearly 100,000 was the scene of the gladiatorial combats of which the Romans were so fond. Here, too, early Christian martyrs were thrown to the lions to delight the depraved populace. Although the Colosseum was used as a quarry for building stone during the Middle Ages, it was so vast that it was but partly ruined.

4. Hominēs sunt miserī, sed nōn malī. 5. Multī et bonī cīvēs ā Caesare amātī erant. 6. Lēgātī magnā virtūte pugnābunt. 7. Pulchrī librī liberīs ā mātribus datī sunt. 8. Perīculum semper timuimus. 9. Imperātor bonus cīvēs malōs culpāvit. 10. Tertiā vigiliā dux oppidum hostium dēlēvit.

## LESSON XXXI

### POSSUM. COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

*Possunt quia posse videntur. — They can because they think they can.\**

**207. Conjugation of *possum*, I am able or I can (= *potis*, able + *sum*, I am).** Principal parts : *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*. It has no passive voice.

(a) **Possum** = **pot** + **sum** ; the **t** becomes **s** before those forms of the verb **sum** which begin with **s**. The perfect stem tenses are formed according to the formula given for those tenses. See §§ 100 and 106.

Conjugate the indicative mood of **possum**, according to the above. Compare with § 591.

### 208.

#### VOCABULARY

**moe'nia**, -ium, n., *fortifications*  
(walls of a city).

**pa'lūs**, -ū'dis, f., *swamp, marsh*.

**po'pulus**, -ī, m., *people, nation*.

**cotīdiā'nus**,<sup>1</sup> -a, -um, *daily*.

**Rōmā'nus**, -ī, m., *a Roman*.

**Rōmā'nus**, -a, -um, *Roman*.

**dē'beō**, -ē're, -uī, -itus, *owe* ;

*ought, must* (used with infinitive).

**pos'sum**, **pos'se**, **po'tuī**, *can, be able* (used with infinitive).

**com'pleō**, -ē're, -ē'vī, -ē'tus, *fill, cover*.

**fe'rē**, adv., *almost*.

**cotī'diē**,<sup>1</sup> adv., *daily, every day*.

**209. What Latin words do the following suggest?**

possible                  complementary                  debit                  population

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

#### RULE

**210. Complementary Infinitive.** — **Possum** and some other verbs take an infinitive to complete their meaning ; this is called a *complementary infinitive*.

*Caesar could fight.* **Caesar pugnāre potuit.**

*We ought to love our country.* **Patriam amāre dēbēmus.**

---

\*Virgil. Literally : *Because they seem to be able*.

<sup>1</sup> Spelled also with two t's.

## EXERCISES

211. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Urbēs dēlēre potuerant. 2. Potuistīne monēre libērōs? 3. Omnēs hostēs superāre potuimus. 4. In proeliō periculum timēre nōn dēbēmus. 5. Ā palūde ad rīpam flūminis castra movēre possumus.

(b) 1. Cum populō Rōmānō labōrāre nōn potuērunt. 2. Omnia moenia ab hostibus cotīdiē vidēbantur. 3. Mōns cōpiīs hostium complētus erat. 4. Tertiā vigiliā noctis imperātor magnō cum clāmōre mīlitibus signum dedit. 5. Rōmānī cum hostibus ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs pugnāvērunt.

212. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Caesar ought not to fear danger. 2. The Romans cannot defeat all (their) enemies in the swamp. 3. We could not overcome the Roman forces with swords and javelins. 4. The good soldiers were able to fight daily with great courage. 5. The Roman people could not love the enemies of (their) native land.

(b) 1. The banks of the broad river were high. 2. The swords had been retained with care. 3. Ten powerful cities have been seized by the enemy and filled with soldiers. 4. The boy's books are heavy, (his) sister's light. 5. Almost all the fortifications of the enemy were attacked in the third year of the war.

213. **Composition.** — Make five statements in Latin about things that are or have been possible.

## POPULUS RŌMĀNUS

Populus Rōmānus ōlim potēns erat. Ferē omnēs gentēs orbis terrārum<sup>1</sup> pācāverat. In omnibus terrīs verba "Civis

---

<sup>1</sup> orbis terrārum, world; literally the circle of the lands, i.e. the lands lying around the Mediterranean.

Rōmānus sum!" hominem ex iniuriā servāre poterant. Itaque cīvitas Rōmāna praesidium in periculis dabat et magnum praemium virtūtis erat.

Poenae<sup>1</sup> nōn tardae ā barbarīs dabantur quī cīvem Rōmānum inimicō modō (*in a hostile manner*) appellāre audēbant. In barbarōs iūdicia saepe inīqua fuērunt. Salūs cīvium suprēma lēx erat. Exempla multa et nōta in librīs scrīpta sunt.



THE ARCH OF TITUS.

In the background is the Palatine Hill, one of the "seven hills of Rome." This view looks toward the Forum, away from the Colosseum. The inscription reads: "The senate and the Roman people to divine Titus (son) of divine Vespasian and to Vespasian the August."

Titus was famous as the conqueror of Jerusalem. It was he who made the remark "I have lost a day," when on a certain evening he was unable to recall any good deed that he had done that day.

---

<sup>1</sup> For the meaning of *poena* with *do*, see general vocabulary.



## LESSON XXXII

### THIRD CONJUGATION

---

*Montani semper liberi. — Mountaineers are always free.\**

---

**214. Third conjugation verbs** end in **-ere** in the present infinitive. Principal parts of **dūcō**, *I lead*: **dū'cō**, **dū'cere**, **dū'xī**, **duc'tus**. Present stem, **dūce-**; perfect stem, **dūx-**; participial stem, **duct-**.

(a) **Present tense** = *present stem* (with **e** changed to **i**) + *personal endings*. The vowel of the ending in the first person singular is simply **ō**, in the third person plural **u**.

**Imperfect tense** = *present stem* (with **e** lengthened) + *tense sign ba* + *personal endings*.

**Future tense** = *present stem* (with **e** lengthened) + *personal endings*. The vowel of the ending in the first person singular is **a** instead of **e**, in the third person singular and plural it is short **e**.

**215.**

#### Indicative Active

SINGULAR	PRESENT	PLURAL
dū'cō	<i>I lead</i>	dū'cim <b>us</b>
dū'cis		dū'cit <b>is</b>
dū'cit		dū'cunt
IMPERFECT		
dūcē'bam	<i>I was leading</i>	dūcēbā'm <b>us</b>
dūcē'bās		dūcēbā't <b>is</b>
dūcē'bat		dūcē'bant
FUTURE		
dū'cam	<i>I shall lead</i>	dūcē'm <b>us</b>
dū'cēs		dūcē't <b>is</b>
dū'cet		dū'cent

---

\* The motto of West Virginia.

## 216.

## VOCABULARY

<b>dū'cō, -ere, dū'xī, duc'tus, lead.</b>	<b>āmit'tō, -ere, āmī'sī, āmis'sus,</b>
<b>ēdū'cō, -ere, ēdū'xī, ēduc'tus,</b>	<i>send away, lose.</i>
<i>lead out.</i>	<b>remit'tō, -ere, remī'sī, remis'-</b>
<b>redū'cō, -ere, redū'xī, reduc'-</b>	<b>sus, send back.</b>
<i>tus, lead back, withdraw.</i>	<b>pō'nō, -ere, po'suī, po'situs, put,</b>
<b>mit'tō, -ere, mī'sī, mis'sus, send.</b>	<i>place ; (with castra) pitch.</i>

217. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

position                  mission                  reduce                  remit

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

## EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

218. *Analyze each Latin form:*

(a) 1. *Ēdūcent, ēdūcēbat, redūcimus.* 2. *Mittēs, mittētis, mittunt.* 3. *Pōnēbant, pōnimus, castra pōnent.* 4. *Āmittis, āmittitis, āmittō.* 5. *Amat, timet, dūcam.*

(b) 1. *Mittēbās, pōnēbāmus, remittō.* 2. *Redūcam, mittit, āmittent.* 3. *Dūcet, dūcit, dūcēs.* 4. *Prōmovet, ēdūcēbātis, pōnēmus.* 5. *Redūcēs, redūcimus, redūcunt.*

219. *Translate:*

(a) 1. They were losing, you lose, you will lose. 2. You will send back, you are sending back, you send back. 3. I shall lead out, they will lead out, you will lead out. 4. We shall fight, we shall move, we shall send. 5. We are leading, they were pitching camp.

(b) 1. He will lead out, we were placing, you are sending. 2. I lose, we shall place, we were leading. 3. They will lead, we shall lose, I am sending. 4. He is sending away, we place, they lead. 5. We were sending, I shall send, you were leading.

## ORAL EXERCISE

220. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Mittēsne liberōs? 2. Dūcēbāsne? 3. Num castra pōnit? 4. Nōnne milītēs remittēmus? 5. Dūcisne populum Rōmānum?



THE SO-CALLED TEMPLE OF VESTA AT ROME.

Perhaps no building in Rome has been the subject of more controversy than this. Because the temple of Vesta in the Forum was round, this was wrongly called the temple of Vesta, and although it has been called by ten different names, no one knows for certain what it was. It is now the church of Saint Mary of the Sun.

## LESSON XXXIII

### APPOSITION. PARSING

---

*Ignis aurum probat, miseria fortes viros. — Calamity is man's true touchstone.\**

---

**221. Apposition.** — A noun in apposition with another noun or with a pronoun agrees with it in case.

*We saw the city (of) Rome. Vīdimus urbem Rōmam.*

*The boy loves his sister Julia. Puer sorōrem Iūliam amat.*

**222. Parsing.** — To parse a verb, give :

(1) Conjugation, (2) principal parts, (3) voice, (4) mood, (5) tense, (6) person, (7) number, (8) rule.

In § 223, *a*, 1, **remittit** would be parsed as follows : **remittit**: *third conjugation; principal parts, remittō, remittere, remisī, remissus; active voice; indicative mood; present tense; third person; singular number; agreeing with the subject nauta. Rule: A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

### EXERCISES

**223. Translate,<sup>1</sup> and parse each indicative verb form :**

(*a*) 1. Nauta, potēns vir, nāvēs remittit. 2. Caesar, bonus dux, castra pōnet. 3. Pater bonus ad filiam Iūliam multa dōna mittit. 4. Virī omnia tēla āmittent. 5. Caesar, imperātor magnus, ad proelium milītēs Rōmānōs saepe ēdūcit.

(*b*) 1. Animālia in vīcum redūcere nōn potuērunt. 2. Virī frūmentō decem vēlōcēs nāvēs complēverant. 3. Tertiā vigiliā fidus cīvis ad oppidum nūntium mittet. 4. Dux circum mūrū virōs ferē cotīdiē dūcet et portās urbis vidēbit. 5. Virī semper fortēs fuērunt et patriam amāvērunt.

---

\* Seneca. Literally: *Fire tests gold, misfortune brave men.* The English is from Beaumont and Fletcher's *Cupid's Revenge*.

<sup>1</sup> Pronounce the Latin words in groups, and translate in groups.

✓224. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Boys often lose (their) books. 2. The citizens will place heavy stones on the wall. 3. The children are leading the horses to the river, and will give the animals water. 4. We had not been able to destroy the cities of the enemy. 5. In the summer of the third year of the war Caesar will break camp, and will send the soldiers back into the city of Rome.

(b) 1. Many (persons) have been wounded with swords by (their) companions. 2. We could not pitch the camp in a swamp. 3. We were glad to send (gladly sent) the women and children back to the fortifications. 4. The Gauls ought to send (their) weapons with great care. 5. The large ships will have been seized by Caesar.



ROMAN BALANCES.

These are some of the many utensils found at Pompeii, and show how far the Romans were advanced in a practical, material way.

## ORAL EXERCISE

225. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quid nauta videt? 2. Estne nauta in mari? 3. Ubi Caesar castra pōnet? 4. Duxne virōs ēdūcit? 5. Labōrāsne cum diligentia cōtidie?

## LESSON XXXIV

### THIRD CONJUGATION. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

*Lux et veritas. — Light and truth.\**

**226. Third Conjugation, Perfect Tenses.** — Following the rules in §§ 100 and 106 conjugate *dūcō* through the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect active. Compare with § 588.

#### 227.

#### VOCABULARY

*auxi'lium, auxi'li, n., aid, help;*  
pl., *auxiliary forces, troops.*

*fi'nis, -is, (-ium), m., end;* pl.,  
*territory.*

*l'ter, iti'neris, n., journey, road,*  
*march.*

*lūx, lū'cis, f., light.*

*prīn'ceps, -cipis, m., chief.*

*prī'mus, -a, -um, first;* *prī'mā*  
*lū'ce, at daybreak.*

*scri'bō, scri'bere, scrip'sī,*  
*scrip'tus, write.*

*cōnscri'bō, -ere, -p'sī, -p'tus,*  
*enroll, enlist, levy.*

*cur'rō, cur'rere, cucur'rī, cur'-*  
*sus, run.*

*relin'quō, relin'quere, reli'quī,*  
*relic'tus, leave.*

*trāns, prep. with acc., across.*

*cūr, interrog. adv., why?*

**228. What Latin words do the following suggest?**

scripture      current      primary      relinquish      itinerary

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

#### RULE

**229. Ablative of Cause.** — Cause may be expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition.

*The man ran from fear. Vir timōre cucurrit.*

*Caesar praised the soldiers on account of their victories. Caesar victōriis militēs laudāvit.*

---

\* The motto of Yale University.



EXERCISES

**230.** *Translate, and explain the use of each ablative and accusative:*

(a) 1. Dux diligentīā fidum militem laudāvit. 2. Liberī periculō cucurrērunt. 3. Princeps victoriā magnā virōs laudābit. 4. Caesar auxilia trāns flūmen dūxerit. 5. Rēx multās et longās litterās ad centuriōnem scripsit.



THE CLAUDIAN AQUEDUCT.

This most magnificent of Roman aqueducts was finished by the Emperor Claudius in 52 A.D. It brought water from springs in the Sabine Hills east of Rome. It is shown also in the picture on page 26.

(b) 1. Iter nōn longum erat. 2. Ad castra auxilia remittere debēmus. 3. In finibus Gallōrum multōs milites cōscripserit. 4. Ex finibus hostium in urbem rēgis cucurristi. 5. Primā lūce princeps in castris auxilia reliquit.

✓ **231.** *Translate:*

(a) 1. The end of the journey will be in a swamp. 2. The soldiers ran because of (their) great fear. 3. The Romans cannot send back aid to the town because of the great danger. 4. The journey into the territory of the enemy was



short. ~~5.~~ The mothers will praise the children for (their) diligence.

(b) 1. I shall write letters and send (them) to (my) friends.  
 2. In war the men leave the women and children in the town.  
 3. The horse ran with great swiftness. 4. At daybreak we had led the soldiers out of the camp. ~~5.~~ Ten weary men left the battle and were blamed by the chief.

### ORAL EXERCISE

**232.** *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Cūr dux laudābitur? 2. Ubi prīma legiō fuerat?
3. Cūr potentēs hostēs superābantur? 4. Cūr virī currunt?
5. Quid rēx scrīpsit?

### PUER ET PŌMA

Erat in agrō arbor, in quā (*on which*) pōma multa erant. Puer pōma vīdit. Primā lūce in arborem ascendit et decem pōma ab arbore remōvit. Iam ex arbore dēscendere oportuit<sup>1</sup> et ab agrō discēdere; sed agricola, quī puerum vīderat, magnum canem in agrum dūxit.

Tum puer perterritus (*thoroughly frightened*) magnō clāmōre locum complēvit; sed auxilium āfuit.<sup>2</sup> Agricola appropinquāvit et puerum ita monuit: “Pōma nōn tua<sup>3</sup> sunt. Cūr pōma aliēna ab arbore removēbās? Nōn aequum erat. Fūr es, et canis fūrēs mordēbit. Bonus puer esse dēbēs.” Tum puer exclāmat: “Numquam iterum fūr erō. Nunc canem ex agrō ēdūc (*lead out*).”

Agricola risit,<sup>4</sup> canem abdūxit. Puer incolumis relictus est, sed pōma āmiserat. Bonum cōsiliū agricolae postea memoriā tenuit.

<sup>1</sup> *It was fitting or necessary*; **oportet** is an impersonal verb, *i.e.*, a verb used only in the third person singular, without a personal subject. Here the infinitives **dēscendere** and **discēdere** form the subject of **oportuit**.

<sup>2</sup> From **absum**.

<sup>3</sup> From **tuus**, -a, -um.

<sup>4</sup> From **rideō**.

## LESSON XXXV

### THIRD CONJUGATION, PASSIVE

*Nec pluribus impar. — A match for many.\**

**233.** Following the rules in Lesson XXVI, conjugate *dūcō* through the *indicative passive*. Compare with § 588. Note the only peculiarity in the passive.

#### 234.

#### VOCABULARY

*cī'vitās, -tā'tis, f., state.*

*co'hors, cohor'tis, f., cohort (the tenth part of a legion).*

*e'ques, e'quitis, m., horseman ;  
pl., cavalry.*

*lēx, lē'gis, f., law.*

*nō'men, -inis, n., name.*

*ōrā'tiō, -ō'nis, f., speech, oration.*

*pe'des, pe'ditis, m., foot soldier,  
pl., infantry.*

*vul'nus, vul'neris, n., wound.*

*pār, (gen.) pa'ris, adj., equal.*

**235.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

legal                      equestrian                      nominate                      pedestrian

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

#### EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

**236.** *Analyze each form:*

1. *Ductī erant, mīsīt, curram, cōscriptī sumus.*
2. *Videt, dūcet, vīsae erimus, ēdūxit.*
3. *Positum erat, relinquer, scrībētur, missa est.*
4. *Dūceris, dūcēris, amittēbantur, dabitur.*
5. *Habēbit, amāberis, remittentur, ēdūciminī.*

**237.** *Translate:*

1. They have led out, we shall be sent.
2. The letter will be written, had been written.
3. They had run, you (*plu.*)

---

\* The motto of Louis XIV. Literally: *And not unequal to more.*

will run, I run. 4. We had been led back, it was placed, I led. 5. It has been moved, we shall move, I was seeing.

### RULE

**238. Ablative of Specification.** — The ablative of specification is used without a preposition to define the application of a noun, adjective, or verb. It answers the question "In what respect?"

*He was king in name. Rēx nōmine erat.*

*The boy was small in body. Puer corpore parvus erat.*

*He was not surpassed in courage. Virtūte nōn superābātur.*

### EXERCISES

**239. Translate, and parse all the nouns in the ablative case:**

(a) 1. Principēs virtūte ā militibus superātī sunt. 2. Equī ducum celeritāte parēs erunt. 3. Lēgēs cīvitātis bonae erant. 4. Equus celeritāte superābātur. 5. Auxilia virtūte equitēs superāvērunt.

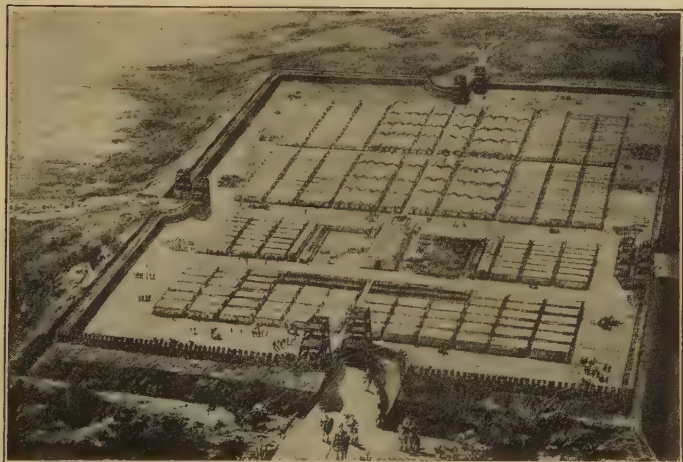
(b) 1. Ōrātiō longa scribētur. 2. Centuriō decimae legiōnis in castrīs relictus erat. 3. Nōmina centuriōnum in librō scribuntur. 4. Pār numerus peditum et auxiliōrum ā Caesare cōscribētur. 5. Dux fortis magnā celeritāte cucurrit, et tertiam cohortem legiōnis reliquit.

**240. Translate:**

(a) 1. (There) was a city, Rome by name. 2. The cavalry and infantry will be equal in courage. 3. The state was destroyed by bad citizens. 4. At daybreak the horseman was sent into the city. 5. The chief's friend has written many orations.

(b) 1. They blamed the king because of the severe laws. 2. Many cohorts had been enlisted across the river, and Caesar

pitched his camp in the territory of the enemy. 3. The town has many gates, and in war many soldiers are left on the wall. 4. They sent the horseman into camp because of his wounds. 5. In the first watch we can see the camp of the Gauls.



A ROMAN CAMP.

Roman camps were always surrounded by a wall, *vallum*, and a ditch, *fossa*, which are plainly seen in this picture. Caesar's troops fortified a camp each night. The camps for winter quarters were more elaborate and often had towers along the walls with covered spaces between them.

## ORAL EXERCISE

241. Answer these questions in Latin, using the passive voice in 1, 3, and 4:

- |                           |                            |        |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|--------|
| 1. Quis litterās scribet? | 2. Ubi castra pōnēbās?     | 3. Ubi |
| tēla relinquēbantur?      | 4. Quis ōratiōnēs scribit? | 5. Cūr |
| pedes cucurrit?           |                            |        |

## LESSON XXXVI

### REVIEW

---

*Iustitia omnibus. — Justice for all.\**

---

**242. Derivatives.** — Write all the English words you can which seem to be derived from the following :

populus	dēbeō	possum	compleō
dūcō	mittō	pōnō	auxilium
finis	iter	lūx	prīnceps
prīmus	scrībō	currō	relinquō
lēx	nōmen	ōrātiō	pedes

**243. Form Drill.** — 1. Name each of the three stems of *laudō*, *moveō*, *mittō*. 2. In the third conjugation, of what tenses are the following the signs: *e*, *i*, *ba*, *era*, *eri*? 3. Conjugate *possum* through the indicative mood.

**244. Syntax Drill.** — 1. What is a *complementary infinitive*? 2. Give the rule for *apposition*, *cause*, *specification*, and illustrate each with a Latin sentence. 3. Give the principal parts and the stems of the following verbs: *dūcō*, *pōnō*, *scrībō*, *currō*, *relinquō*.

### 245. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

1. Agricola bonus in agrīs equōs multōs et vėlōcēs habēbit. 2. Multōs peditēs cōscribere potuerāmus. 3. Cōpiae Rōmānae in rīpā castra pōnēbant. 4. Hostēs ex oppidō mittere nōn possumus. 5. Equī trāns agrum in silvās cucurrērunt. 6. Prīmā lūce militēs castra relīquērunt. 7. In Galliā imperātor militēs fortēs cōscripserat. 8. Victōria ducis cīvī-tātī nūntiābitur. 9. Līberī in vīcum parvum remittentur.

---

\* The motto of the District of Columbia.

10. Litterae multae ā rēge scriptae sunt et trāns flūmen in finēs hostium missae sunt.

### RĒX GALLIAE

In Galliā, quae (*which*) trāns mare est, fuit rēx, quī (*who*) magnam auctōritātem habuit. Magnās cōpiās et<sup>1</sup> equestrēs et pedestrēs cōscripserat. Saepe rēx milītēs ex castrīs ēdūcēbat. Ita gentēs finitimās terrēbat.



ANCIENT GALLIC MONUMENTS.

These rude stones, called *menhirs*, were used by the ancient Gauls as monuments to their dead.

Bellum ā gente barbarā concitātum est. Rēx milītēs prōdūxit et magnā vōce dīxit: “Pācem iam (*longer*) nōn habēmus. Nunc est tempus cum barbarīs bellum gerere. Negōtium est difficile, sed, sī fortēs eritis,<sup>2</sup> patriam dēfendētis et hominēs malōs in servitūtem redigētis.” Tum ad extrēmum finem Galliae prōcessit et cōpiās instrūxit.

Sed iter longum fuerat, et milītēs dēfessī erant. Barbarī nōn aderant. Rēx principēs cōnsuluit. Breve tempus<sup>3</sup> militibus ad quiētem dedit; tum sine proeliō omnēs cōpiās in castra remīsīt et castrīs continuit.

<sup>1</sup> Et . . . et, both . . . and.

<sup>2</sup> are.

<sup>3</sup> Accusative case.



## LESSON XXXVII

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

*Magna est vis consuetudinis. — Great is the force of habit.*

**246. Comparison of Adjectives.** — Adjectives expressing quality are compared,<sup>1</sup> in Latin as in English, in three ways: *regularly, irregularly, and by the use of the Latin words for “more” and “most.”*

**247. Regular Comparisons.** — The nominative of the comparative is formed by adding *-ior, mas. and fem., -ius, neut.,* and of the superlative by adding *-issimus, -a, -um* to the base of the positive.

*Long, longus; longer, longior; longest, longissimus.*

*Swift, vĕlōx; swifter, vĕlōcior; swiftest, vĕlōcissimus.*

(a) The comparative may be translated *swifter, more swift, too swift, or rather swift*; the superlative, *swiftest, most swift, or very swift*.

(b) Compare the following: **brevis, fortis, altus, potēns.**

**248.** The *comparative* is declined like adjectives of the third declension, two endings, the neuter ending in *-ius*. They are *not i-stems*.

**Longior, longer. BASE, longiōr-**

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Mas. and Fem.	NEUTER	Mas. and Fem.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> lon'gior	lon'gius	longiō'rēs	longiō'ra
<i>Gen.</i> longiō'ris	longiō'ris	longiō'rum	longiō'rum
<i>Dat.</i> longiō'rī	longiō'rī	longiō'ribus	longiō'ribus
<i>Acc.</i> longiō'rem	lon'gius	longiō'rēs (is)	longiō'ra
<i>Abl.</i> longiō're	longiō're	longiō'ribus	longiō'ribus

(a) The *superlative* is declined like **magnus, -a, -um.**

<sup>1</sup> Compare §§ 620 and 621.



## 249.

## VOCABULARY

**altitū'dō, altitū'dinis, f.,** height;  
depth.

**Germā'nia, -ae, f.,** Germany.

**Germā'nus, -ī, m.,** a German.

**Germā'nus, -a, -um,** German.

**magnitū'dō, magnitū'dinis, f.,**  
greatness, size.

**multitū'dō, multitū'dinis, f.,**  
great number, multitude.

**pāx, pā'cis, f.,** peace.

**pōns, pon'tis, m.,** bridge.

**vīs, vīs, vī, vim, vī, f.,** force; pl.,

**vī'rēs, vī'rium, etc.,** strength  
(usually bodily strength).

**vōx, vō'cis, f.,** voice, word, ex-  
pression.

**quam, adv.,** than.

**aut, conj.,** or.



PONS ROMANUS.

This ancient bridge has been often restored. It was erected on the spot where the plebeians in 494 B.C. crossed the river, the Anio, in what was called the first "secession of the plebs." This was a huge strike, and it resulted in a revision of the debtor laws and the establishment of *tribunes of the people*, who had power to forbid, or veto, any unjust act of a magistrate. Thus the first big Roman strike brought about the first Roman "veto." (Veto means *I forbid*.)

**250. What Latin words do the following suggest?**

multitude      vim      vocal      magnitude      pacify

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

**EXERCISES****251. Translate, and decline each adjective:**

(a) 1. Germānī fortiōrēs fuērunt.    2. Iter brevius erit.  
3. Rēgēs Germānī quam civēs potentiōrēs semper erant.  
4. Virī vīribus fēminās superant.    5. Hominēs in pāce saepe  
fortiōrēs sunt quam in bellō.

(b) 1. Multitūdō tēlōrum gravissimōrum in ponte relieta  
est.    2. Cohors in finibus Germānōrum cotīdiē cōscripta  
erat.    3. Imperātor vōce cōsulis vocābātur.    4. Altitūdō  
mūrī est magna.    5. Patrēs magnitūdine corporum filiōs  
superant.

**252. Translate:**

(a) 1. Seas are deeper and wider than rivers.    2. Nights  
are very short in summer.    3. The infantry are often braver  
than the cavalry.    4. The consul's speeches are longer than  
(those) of the citizens.    5. Caesar with his powerful cavalry  
excelled the Germans in strength.

(b) 1. He was king of the Germans in name.    2. The  
mountain surpassed the wall in height.    3. The bravest men  
love peace.    4. The weary infantry could not pitch camp in  
Germany.    5. The Roman cohorts surpassed the Gauls in  
the great number of their men.

**ORAL EXERCISE****253. Answer these questions in Latin:**

1. Eratne Caesar fortior quam Mārcus?    2. Ubi hominēs  
fortissimī sunt?    3. Estne iter breve?    4. Cūr liberī lau-  
dābantur?    5. Nōne decem cohortēs in legiōne sunt?

## LESSON XXXVIII

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN *-ER* AND *-LIS*

*Similia similibus curantur. — Like cures like.\**

**254.** Adjectives ending in *-er* form their superlatives by adding *-rimus*, *-a*, *-um*, to the nominative singular masculine of the positive. The comparative is formed regularly.

mi'ser, mi'sera, mi'serum	mise'rior, -ius	miser'rimus, -a, -um
ā'cer, ā'cris, ā'cre	ā'crior, -ius	ācer'rimus, -a, -um

**255.** The following adjectives in *-lis* form their superlatives by adding *-limus*, *-a*, *-um* to the base of the positive. The comparative is formed regularly.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
fa'cilis, -e, <i>easy</i>	faci'lior, -ius	facil'limus, -a, -um
diffi'cilis, -e, <i>difficult</i>	diffici'lior, -ius	difficil'limus, -a, -um
si'milis, -e, <i>like</i>	simi'lior, -ius	simil'limus, -a, -um
dis'si'milis, -e, <i>unlike</i>	dissimi'lior, -ius	dissimil'limus, -a, -um

(a) Compare the following : *celer*, *pulcher*, *liber*, *facilis*.

### 256.

#### VOCABULARY

disci'pulus, -ī, m., <i>pupil</i> .	dis'si'milis, -e, <i>unlike, dissimilar</i> .
diffi'cilis, -e, <i>difficult</i> .	ni'hil (or nīl), n., <i>indeclinable</i>
fa'cilis, -e, <i>easy</i> .	noun, <i>nothing</i> .
si'milis, -e, <i>like, similar</i> .	prīvā'tus, -a, -um, <i>private</i> .

**257.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*  
disciple                  similar                  difficult                  facility

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

\* Literally: *Like things are cured by like*.

## RULE

**258. Dative with Adjectives.** — The dative is used to complete the meaning of adjectives meaning *like, unlike, equal, unequal, and near*.



SACRIFICING A BULL.

This Roman altar was found at Pompeii; it illustrates one phase of Roman religion, which is a fascinating subject. The Romans were very business-like about their religion, driving bargains with their gods and looking for omens till they found the one they wanted.

*vīsa sunt.* 5. Caesar in flūmine Galliae pontem aedificāvit.

*A sword is not like a javelin.*  
**Gladus pilō nōn similis est.**

*The boys are not equal to their fathers in courage.* **Puerī virtūte patribus nōn parēs sunt.**

## EXERCISES

**259. Translate:**

(a) 1. Iter facillimum erit.  
2. Bellum pācī dissimillimum semper fuit. 3. Oppidum urbī simile nōn erat. 4. Nihil bonīs amīcīs pār esse potest. 5. Itinera difficiliōra fuērunt.

(b) 1. Prīvātus cīvis pār vīribus equitī erat. 2. Oppidum pulcherrimum vīsum erat. 3. Dux multa tēla ad milītēs mīsīt. 4. Multa et pulcherrima animālia in marī

**260. Translate:**

(a) 1. The soldiers were very active. 2. The book is not difficult, but very easy. 3. Javelins are unlike swords. 4. Nothing had been more difficult than a journey on the sea. 5. The laws of the Romans were very unlike (those) of the Germans.

(b) 1. The soldiers had been led out of the camp at day-break. 2. Marcus had been more active than his brother. 3. The ditch around the wall was very deep and wide. 4. The river is rather long and very deep. 5. Many bridges have been built across<sup>1</sup> very wide rivers.



RELIEF UNDER THE ARCH OF TITUS.

This shows the spoils from the temple at Jerusalem, taken by Titus (see page 84) and carried in his triumph. These include the famous seven-branched candle-stick and the silver trumpets.

#### ORAL EXERCISE

261. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Estne liber difficilior? 2. Nōne puer discipulus bonus est? 3. Erantne servī parēs dominīs? 4. Quid potest pulchrius esse quam rosa? 5. Estne urbs similis oppidō?

---

<sup>1</sup> *Across* (over, as in this sentence), *in* with the ablative; *across* (on the other side of) *trāns* with the accusative.

## LESSON XXXIX

### IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

*Salus populi suprema lex esto. — Let the safety of the people be the highest law.\**

**262. Irregular Comparison.** — The following adjectives are irregularly compared:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<b>bo'nus</b> , <i>good</i>	<b>me'lior</b> , <i>better</i>	<b>op'timus</b> , <i>best</i>
<b>ma'lus</b> , <i>bad</i>	<b>pe'ior</b> , <i>worse</i>	<b>pes'simus</b> , <i>worst</i>
<b>mag'nus</b> , <i>great</i>	<b>ma'ior</b> , <i>greater</i>	<b>max'imus</b> , <i>greatest</i>
<b>par'vus</b> , <i>small</i>	<b>mi'nor</b> (mi'nus), <i>smaller</i>	<b>mi'nimus</b> , <i>smallest</i>
<b>mul'tus</b> , <i>much</i>		<b>plū'rimus</b> , <i>most</i>
<b>mul'tum</b> (neut.)	<b>plūs</b> , <i>more</i>	<b>plū'rimum</b> , <i>most</i>
<b>mul'tī</b> , <i>many</i>	<b>plū'rēs</b> , <i>more</i>	<b>plū'rimī</b> , <i>most</i>
<b>se'nex</b> , <i>old</i>	<b>se'nior</b> (ma'ior nā'tū <sup>1</sup> ), <i>older, elder</i>	<b>max'imus nā'tū</b> , <i>oldest, eldest</i>
<b>iu'venis</b> , <i>young</i>	<b>iū'nior</b> (mi'nor nā'tū), <i>younger</i>	<b>mi'nimus nā'tū</b> , <i>youngest</i>

(a) Four adjectives with regular comparatives have two irregular superlatives:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<b>ex'terus</b> , <i>outside</i>	<b>exte'rior</b> , <i>outer</i>	<b>extrē'mus</b> or <b>ex'timus</b> , <i>outermost, last</i>
<b>īn'ferus</b> , <i>below</i>	<b>īnfe'rior</b> , <i>lower</i>	<b>īn'fimus</b> or <b>ī'mus</b> , <i>lowest</i>
<b>pos'terus</b> , <i>following, next</i>	<b>poste'rior</b> , <i>later</i>	<b>postrē'mus</b> or <b>pos'tumus</b> , <i>last</i>
<b>su'perus</b> , <i>above</i>	<b>supe'rior</b> , <i>higher</i>	<b>suprē'mus</b> or <b>sum'mus</b> , <i>highest, last</i>

\* The motto of Missouri.

<sup>1</sup> Nātū, *in age*, is ablative of specification and does not change its form as do **maior**, **maximus**, **minor**, and **minimus** to agree with their nouns.



(b) The following have no positive, but are formed from prepositions :

PREP.	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
(cis, citrā)	—	cite'rior, <i>hither</i>	ci'timus, <i>hithermost</i>
(in, intrā)	—	inte'rior, <i>inner</i>	in'timus, <i>innermost</i>
(prae, prō)	—	pri'or, <i>former</i>	prī'mus, <i>first</i>
(prope)	—	pro'pior, <i>nearer</i>	prox'imus, <i>nearest, next</i>
(ultrā)	—	ulte'rior, <i>farther</i>	ul'timus, <i>last</i>

(c) Adjectives which have a vowel before the ending **-us** usually form the comparative and superlative by the use of the adverbs **magis**, *more*, and **maximē**, *most*; **idō'neus**, **magis idō'neus**, **maximē idō'neus**.

## 263.

## VOCABULARY

cite'rior, cite'rius, <i>hither</i> .	pos'terus, -a, -um, <i>following</i> .
ex'terus, -a, -um, <i>outside</i> .	pro'pior, pro'pius, <i>nearer, next</i> .
in'ferus, -a, -um, <i>below</i> .	se'nex, gen., se'nis, <i>old</i> ; as noun,
iu'venis, -e, <i>young</i> ; as noun, m.,	m., <i>old man</i> .
<i>young man, youth</i> .	su'perus, -a, -um, <i>above</i> .
idō'neus, -a, -um, <i>fit, suitable</i> .	ulte'rior, -ius, <i>farther</i> .
pri'or, pri'us, <i>former</i> .	Helvē'tiī, -ō'rum, m., <i>Helvetians</i> .

## 264. What Latin words do the following suggest?

exterior      priority      juvenile      senior      superior

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

## EXERCISES

## 265. Translate, and compare all the adjectives:

(a) 1. Virtūs Helvētiōrum maxima erat. 2. Vidimus minus oppidum. 3. Puer maior nātū est quam soror. 4. Summus<sup>1</sup> mōns ab hostibus vīsus est. 5. Sumus<sup>2</sup> in inferiōre parte flūminis.

(b) 1. Nihil melius est quam pāx. 2. Caesar in citeriōre Galliā peditēs retinuit. 3. Propiōrēs Rōmae quam castrīs fuerāmus. 4. Proximā nocte in ulteriōrem Galliam cōpiās mīsimus. 5. Prīma pars librī faciliior quam extrēma habita est.

<sup>1</sup> Top of the mountain.

<sup>2</sup> Compare **summus** and **sumus**.



**266. Translate:**

(a) 1. Small animals are often rather beautiful. 2. The boy's companion can be very good. 3. Very many wars were very long. 4. The youngest soldiers are often the most active. 5. The citizens are very bad.

(b) 1. Hither Gaul is nearer to Rome than farther Gaul. 2. The centurion's wounds had been very severe. 3. (There) are forests on the top of the mountain. 4. The smaller ships were better than the larger (ones). 5. We are hastening into the territory of the enemy and shall destroy the smaller towns.

**PHRASES FROM CAESAR****267. Commit to memory, with the translations:**

1. In citeriōre Galliā. 2. In ulteriōre Galliā. 3. Proximā nocte. 4. Castra mōvit. 5. Castra posuit.

**A PRACTICAL JOKE**

Erat in Britannīā rēx quī quattuor filiōs habuit. Dolor saepe in animō patris erat, quod<sup>1</sup> frāter cum frātre pugnābat. Robertus, quī maximus nātū fuit, ferōx iuvenis erat, sed saepe ā frātribus pācem petere coāctus est.<sup>2</sup>

Forte Robertus ante aedēs stābat. Frātrēs, quī<sup>3</sup> vidērunt, vās aquae<sup>4</sup> plēnum in caput Roberti per fenestram effūdērunt. Robertus irā permōtus (*roused*) gladiō puerōs pressit, et ūnum leviter vulnerāvit. Tum rēx, quī iūniōrēs habēbat cāriōrēs<sup>5</sup> quam filium maximum nātū, Robertum ex urbe in exsilium relēgāvit.

<sup>1</sup> Because.<sup>2</sup> From *cogō*.<sup>3</sup> Supply *him*.<sup>4</sup> Plēnum governs the genitive.<sup>5</sup> habēbat cāriōrēs, *held dearer, i.e., loved more*.

## LESSON XL

### FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

*Cedant arma togae. — Peace hath her victories no less renowned  
than war.\**

**268. Adverbs**<sup>1</sup> are derived from adjectives. They are formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding *-ē* to the base of the positive: *wide, lātus*; *widely, lātē*. From adjectives of the third declension they are formed by adding *-iter*<sup>2</sup> to the base: *sharp, ācer*; *sharply, ācriter*.

**269. The comparison of adverbs** is like that of the adjectives from which they are derived, except that the comparative ends in *-ius* and the superlative in *-ē*.

Adj. <i>lātus, wide</i>	<i>lātior, wider</i>	<i>lātissimus, widest</i>
Adv. <i>lātē, widely</i>	<i>lātius, more widely</i>	<i>lātissimē, most widely</i>
Adj. <i>ācer, sharp</i>	<i>ācrior, sharper</i>	<i>ācerrimus, sharpest</i>
Adv. <i>ācriter, sharply</i>	<i>ācrius, more sharply</i>	<i>ācerrimē, most sharply</i>

### 270.

### VOCABULARY

*Ci'cerō, -ō'nis, m., Cicero.*  
*col'lis, -is, m., hill.*  
*ge'rō, ge'rere, ges'sī, ges'tus,*  
*carry on; with bel'lum, wage*  
*war.*  
*ā'criter, sharply, fiercely.*  
*cele'riter, quickly.*  
*di'ū, diū'tius, diū'tis'simē, long,*  
*for a long time.*

*dīligen'ter, carefully, diligently.*  
*fa'cile,<sup>3</sup> easily.*  
*for'titer, bravely.*  
*pa'rum, adv., (too) little.*  
*quam, followed by the superla-*  
*tive, as . . . as possible.*  
*quōmo'dō, interrog. adv., how?*  
*at'que, conj., and also, and.*  
*sex, indeclinable adj., six.*

\* Cicero. The motto of Wyoming. Literally: *Let arms give way to the toga.*

<sup>1</sup> Compare §§ 646–649.

<sup>2</sup> Present participles and some adjectives of one ending add *-ter* to the base to form the adverb: *careful, dīligēns*; *carefully, dīligenter*.

<sup>3</sup> An exception to the rule for formation of adverbs.

**271. What Latin words do the following suggest?**

facile

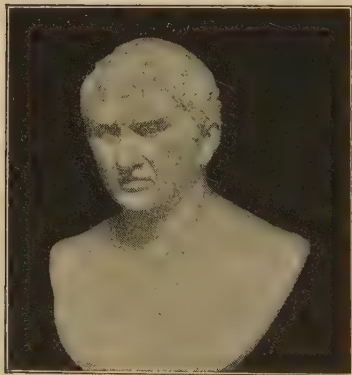
celerity

sextette

acrid

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

## RULE



CICERO.

Marcus Tullius Cicero (106–43 B.C.) was one of the greatest orators of all time. As consul he laid bare the conspiracy of Catiline against the state. His famous orations against Catiline have been preserved, and are usually read in the third year of Latin study.

gentissimē laborāverant. 4. Mōns plūrimis pedibus altior quam collis erat. 5. Cicerō sex annis maior nātū quam Caesar fuit.

(b) 1. Bella in extrēmīs finibus Helvētiōrum gesta sunt. 2. Fēmina minus facile atque minus celeriter cucurrit quam filia. 3. Rōmānī cum Germānis bellum saepissimē gerēbant. 4. Rōma citeriōrī Galliae quam ulteriōrī propior est. 5. Militēs fortēs magna oppida hostium facillimē dēlēre possunt.

**272. Ablative of Degree of Difference.** — Degree of difference is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

*Six feet higher. Sex pedibus altior.*

*The boy is a year older than his sister. Puer annō senior est quam soror.*

(a) The ablative **annō** denotes the degree of difference in age.

## EXERCISES

**273. Translate; compare each adjective and adverb:**

(a) 1. Diū atque ācriter pugnāverunt. 2. Pater multis annis senior quam filius est. 3. Lēgātī quam dīli-

**274.** *Translate, putting each adverb before the word it modifies:*<sup>1</sup>

(a) 1. Peace is better than war. 2. The trees were six feet higher than the wall. 3. The tired men could not fight longer. 4. The farmer labored more diligently than the sailor. 5. The enemy led out their forces as quickly as possible.

(b) 1. They will hasten by forced (very great) marches into the farthest territory of the Gauls. 2. The ships were very small. 3. The commander-in-chief will wage war as fiercely as possible. 4. On the following night we seized the top of the mountain. 5. The old man fought more fiercely than his son.

#### PHRASES FROM CAESAR

**275.** *Commit to memory with the translations:*

1. Minus facile. 2. Diū atque ācriter. 3. Quam fortissimē. 4. Primā lūce. 5. Primā aestāte.

#### HORĀTIUS COCLĒS

Porsena, rēx Etruscōrum, cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbat. Castra trāns flūmen Tiberim posuerat, et urbem Rōmam multīs militibus obsidēbat.

Erat apud Rōmānōs vir fortissimus, Horātius nōmine, quod<sup>2</sup> oculum āmiserat Coclēs appellātus (*called*). In flūmine pōns erat, quī ad Etruscōs pertinēbat. Horātius ad extrēmam partem pontis prōcessit atque ibi cōstitit. Sōlus multōs hostēs exspectāvit.

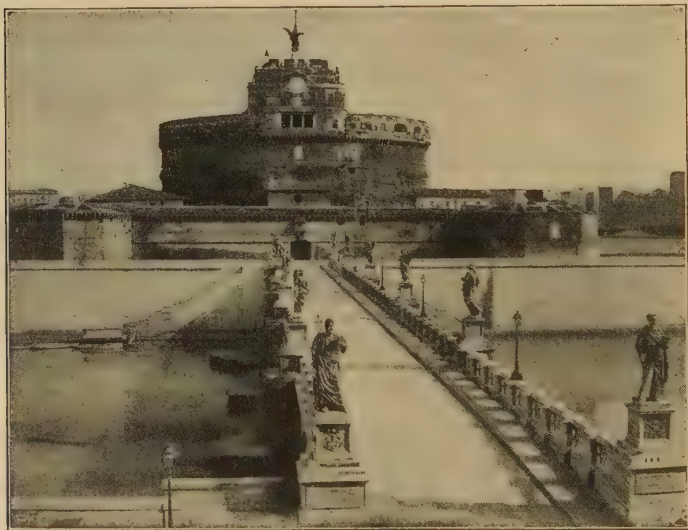
Etruscī magnā vī in Horātium pugnant. Frūstrā pugnant. Minās adhibent. Sed neque minīs nec<sup>3</sup> telīs hominem terrent. E proeliō excēdere coāctī sunt. Interim ā tergō<sup>4</sup> pōns inter-

<sup>1</sup> An adverb generally stands before the word which it modifies.

<sup>2</sup> Because. <sup>3</sup> Neque . . . nec, neither . . . nor. <sup>4</sup> I.e., behind Horatius.

scissus est. Tum Horātius armātus, ut erat, ad Rōmānōs incolumis trānāvit.

Horātiō pars agrī pūblicī satis<sup>1</sup> ampla ā Rōmānīs lēge data est, quod per virtūtem ac nātūram ēgregiam virī dignitās populī Rōmānī servāta erat, nec in servitūtem cīvēs abdūcēbantur.



THE TIBER AND HADRIAN'S TOMB.

The precise spot where Horatius swam the Tiber is not known, but it was not far from here. Across the river is the mausoleum of Hadrian, begun by this enthusiastic builder, but not finished till the next century. About 400 A.D. it was built into the fortifications of Rome and from then until recently was the main fortress of the city.

In 590 A.D. during a plague Pope Gregory the Great is said to have seen a vision of the Archangel Michael sheathing his sword above the fortress. When the plague subsided Gregory erected a statue to the archangel on the castle, which has since been known as the Castle of Sant' Angelo.

---

<sup>1</sup> An adverb modifying the adjective *ampla*.

## LESSON XLI

### REVIEW

*Nil sine numine. — Nothing without divine guidance.\**

**276. Derivatives.** — Write all the English words you can, that seem to be derived from the following :

pāx	vīs	vōx	facilis
similis	maior	senex	iuvenis
prior	superus	diligenter	celeriter

**277. Form and Word Drill.** — 1. How are adjectives regularly compared? 2. How are adjectives ending in **-er** compared? 3. Give list of four adjectives in **-lis** having peculiar superlatives. 4. How are comparatives declined? Decline **melior**. 5. How are superlatives declined? Decline **optimus**. 6. Compare **prior**, **facilis**, **propior**, **senex**, **citerior**, **nōbilis**, **superus**, **idōneus**, **inferus**. 7. Compare the Latin adjectives for the following, and form and compare the adverbs made from these adjectives :

✓sharp	✓short	✓good <sup>1</sup>	quick	✓dear
difficult	faithful	brave	heavy	wide
free	bad	beautiful	small <sup>2</sup>	swift

Time the class on this work. See footnote to page 80.

**278. Syntax Drill.** — Review all the rules learned thus far.

---

\* The motto of Colorado. Literally : *Nothing without divinity*.

<sup>1</sup> Adv. **bene**.

<sup>2</sup> Adv. **parum**.



## EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

279. 1. Lēgēs cīvitātis ā cīvibus bonīs laudātae sunt. 2. Nūntiī multī ad Caesarem ā Germānīs missī sunt. 3. Fīlius magnitūdine corporis patrem superat. 4. Gallī et Germānī dissimillimī erant. 5. Prīmā lūce discipulī trāns agrum



THE RIVER RHINE.

The Rhine separated the Germans from the Gauls and Romans. When Caesar invaded Germany he built a famous bridge across the river. Piles from a Roman bridge have been found in the Rhine near Mayence.

cucurrerunt. 6. Militēs Germānī brevissimō itinere magnā cum celeritāte ad urbem properāverant et mūrōs dēlēverant. 7. Cōsulēs saepe meliōrēs quam rēgēs sunt. 8. Frūmentum trāns mare nāvibus portātum erat. 9. Iūlia iūnior est quam frāter Mārcus. 10. Germānī fortius pugnāverunt quam pugnābunt.



## LESSON XLII

### FOURTH DECLENSION. GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE

*Quorum magna pars fui. — In which I was a chief actor.\**

**280.** The fourth declension consists of those nouns whose genitive singular ends in *-ūs*. Those ending in *-us* in the nominative singular are masculine, with a few exceptions. Those whose nominative ends in *-ū* are neuter.

**Exer'citus, m., army. BASE, exercit-**

SINGULAR	TERMINA- TIONS	PLURAL	TERMINA- TIONS
<i>Nom.</i> exer'citus	us	exer'citūs	ūs
<i>Gen.</i> exer'citūs	ūs	exerci'tuum	uum
<i>Dat.</i> exerci'tuī	uī	exerci'tibus	ibus
<i>Acc.</i> exer'citum	um	exer'citūs	ūs
<i>Abl.</i> exer'citū	ū	exerci'tibus	ibus

**Cornū, n., horn. BASE, corn-**

<i>Nom.</i> cor'nū	ū	cor'nua	ua
<i>Gen.</i> cor'nūs	ūs	cor'num	uum
<i>Dat.</i> cor'nū	ū	cor'nibus	ibus
<i>Acc.</i> cor'nū	ū	cor'nua	ua
<i>Abl.</i> cor'nū	ū	cor'nibus	ibus

### 281.

### VOCABULARY

cor'nū, -ūs, n., horn, wing (of an army).	dex'ter, -tra, -trum, right, right-hand.
do'mus, -ūs, f., house, home.	sinis'ter, -tra, -trum, left-hand.
exer'citus, -ūs, m., army.	susti'neō, -ē're, -uī, -ten'tus, check, withstand.
im'petus, -ūs, m., attack.	bene, adv., well.
ma'nus, -ūs, f., hand, band (of soldiers).	vēlō'citer, adv., swiftly.
occā'sus, -ūs, m., setting.	in'ter, prep. with acc., between, among.
sōl, sō'lis, m., sun.	

---

\* Virgil. Literally: *Of which I was a large part.*

(a) **Domus**, f., *house, home*, sometimes has the endings of the second declension in the genitive, dative, and ablative singular, and in the genitive and accusative plural. Learn the declension of **domus**, § 568.

**282.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

cornucopia      manual      solar      domestic

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

**283. Genitive of the Whole.** — The genitive denoting the whole of which a part is taken, is called the Genitive of the Whole.<sup>1</sup>

*Part of the soldiers.* **Pars militum.**

*The bravest of the men were in the army.* **Fortissimī virōrum in exercitū erant.**

*Note.* — **Virōrum** denotes the whole of which **fortissimī** is a part. The ablative with **dē** or **ex** is sometimes used instead of the genitive of the whole, especially after cardinal numbers. *One of the boys.* **Ūnus ex puerīs.** *Ten of the horses were seen in the field.* **Decem ex equīs in agrō vidēbantur.**

EXERCISES

**284.** *Translate, and parse all the verbs:*

(a) 1. **Fortissimus omnium Rōmānōrum erat Caesar.** 2. **Decem ex militibus quam fortissimī fuerant.** 3. **Multi Helvētiōrum vulnerātī erant.** 4. **Pars manūs ā dextrō cornū<sup>2</sup> vidēbātur.** 5. **Sōlis occāsū Caesar summō in colle castra posuit.**

(b) 1. **Domus Caesaris pulcherrima erat.** 2. **Imperātor sinistrō cornū exercitūs propior quam dextrō erat.** 3. **Militēs vėlōcissimē cucurrerunt et bellum bene gesserunt.** 4. **Impetūs dextrī cornūs facile sustinēbimus.** 5. **Multae et maximae arborēs inter domum et flūmen vidēbantur.**

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes called the Partitive Genitive.

<sup>2</sup> *On the right wing.*

**285. Translate:**

(a) 1. We saw the houses of the enemy on the top of the hill. 2. Nothing could be equal to Caesar's armies. 3. Six of the attacks have been withstood very bravely. 4. War was waged long and fiercely in the territory of the Gauls. 5. Part of the bands of the enemy withstood the Roman army as well as possible.

(b) 1. At sunset the soldiers fought less easily. 2. Very many attacks of the enemy have been withstood by Caesar's forces. 3. Good laws are praised by the best citizens, but not by bad men. 4. The left wing of Caesar's army was not like the right (wing). 5. The soldiers on the left wing fought six hours longer than (those) on the right (wing).

## PHRASES FROM CAESAR

**286. Commit to memory, with the translations:**

1. Sōlis occāsū. 2. Ā dextrō cornū. 3. Ā sinistrō cornū. 4. Ab summō colle. 5. Ab superiōre parte.

## THE MOUSE-TOWER. I

Erat ōlim in Germāniā famēs. Omnēs quī cibum male prōvīderant dēspērābant. Officia mīlitāria intermittēbant. Aut morbum aut mortem exspectābant. Multī ā prīncipe cibum petēbant, quī cōpiam frūmentī in horreīs habuit. Sed animum prīncipis crūdēlis ad misericordiam indūcere nōn poterant.

Quod crūdēlissimus erat, magnam multitūdinem in horreum perdūxit ubi frūmentum erat, et paulō post horreum incendit. Clāmōrēs miserrimī fuērunt, at prīnceps rīsit et exclāmāvit, "Strīdor mūrium est!" Tum in auribus prīncipis magna vōx: "Corpus tuum, miser,<sup>1</sup> mūrēs dēvorābunt." Graviter animō (*in mind*) commōtus est.

---

<sup>1</sup> Vocative.

## LESSON XLIII

### FIFTH DECLENSION. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

*Carpe diem. — Seize the opportunity.\**

**287. The fifth declension** consists of nouns whose genitive singular ends in **-ēī**.<sup>1</sup> They are feminine, with a few exceptions.

di'ēs, m., day. BASE, di-		rēs, f., thing. BASE, r-
SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS
Nom. di'ēs	rēs	ēs
Gen. diē'ī	re'ī	ēī
Dat. diē'ī	re'ī	ēī
Acc. di'em	rem	em
Abl. di'ē	rē	ē
PLURAL		
Nom. di'ēs	rēs	ēs
Gen. diē'rum	rē'rum	ērum
Dat. diē'bus	rē'bus	ēbus
Acc. di'ēs	rēs	ēs
Abl. diē'bus	rē'bus	ēbus

(a) **Rēs pūb'lica** and **iūs iūran'dum** are compound nouns.

**Rēs pūb'lica** = **rēs** + fem. adj. **pūblica**, meaning the *public affair*; that is, the *state*. Both parts of the word are declined.

**Iūs iūran'dum** = **iūs** + neuter gerundive **iūrandum**. **Iūs** is a neuter noun of the third declension, and **iūrandum** is declined like the neuter of **magnus**. Both parts of the word are declined, but the plural has only the form **iura iuranda** (nom. and acc.).

---

\* Horace. Literally: *Grasp the day*.

<sup>1</sup> Genitive and dative singular end in **-ēī** when a vowel precedes, in **-eī** when a consonant precedes.

288.

VOCABULARY

a'ciēs, aciē'ī, f., line of battle.

amī'cus, -a, -um, friendly.

inimī'cus, -a, -um, unfriendly.

inimī'cus, -ī, m., a personal enemy.

(Compare hos'tis, a public enemy.)

dī'ēs, diē'ī, m., day.

iūs iūran'dum, iū'ris iūran'dī,

n., oath.

iūs, iū'ris, n., right, law.

lo'cus, -ī, m. (pl., lo'ca, n.), place, location.

rēs, re'ī, f., thing, affair.

rēs pūb'lica, re'ī pūb'licae, f., state, republic.

pau'cī, -ae, -a, few.

ū'tilis, -e, useful.

inū'tilis, -e, useless.

289. What Latin words do the following suggest?

location

utility

republic

paucity

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

290. Dative with Adjectives.—

Adjectives meaning *dear, faithful, friendly, suitable, useful*, and their opposites take the dative.

*The place is suitable for a camp. Locus castris idōneus est.*

*The slaves are faithful to their masters. Servi dominis fidī sunt.*

EXERCISES

291. Translate, and compare the adjectives and adverbs:

- (a) 1. Liberī mātī cārissimī erant.  
2. Bonī civēs reī pūblicae semper fidī fuērunt. 3. Rōmānī locum idōneum castris vīdērunt. 4. Tēla militibus sunt ūtilissima. 5. Iūs iūrandum ducī ā militibus datum est.

- (b) 1. Aestāte diēs longiōrēs quam noctēs sunt. 2. Paucī



ROMAN SOLDIER WITH  
SPEAR AND SHIELD.

amicōrum militum ad collem missi erunt. 3. Hostēs cum primā aciē fortiter pugnābant. 4. Iūre bellī tēla victōri dabuntur. 5. Locus castris idōneus fuit, sed aciēi inūtilis.

**292. Translate:**

(a) 1. Part of the army was unfriendly to the general. 2. A faithful son can be useful to his old father. 3. We are friendly to our friends and faithful to our chief. 4. The slaves will be held by an oath. 5. A few places suitable for a line of battle have been seen.

(b) 1. The attack of the enemy was useless. 2. At the lower part of the river (there) had been a bridge. 3. The day



THE BRIDGE OF AUGUSTUS AT RIMINI.

This was built by Augustus and is still in use.

was a few hours longer than the night. 4. The house had been on the right bank of the river. 5. The line of battle was very long and had been seen on the top of the hill.

ORAL EXERCISE

**293. Answer these questions in Latin:**

1. Quis rem publicam amāvit?
2. Quis cārus mātī est?
3. Esne magistrō amīcus?
4. Ubi est parva palūs?
5. Quid est in superiōre parte mūrī?

## THE MOUSE-TOWER. II

Erat in mediō Rhēnō turris sacra. Ad turrim princeps fugit. "Hic certē salvus sum, dum turris integra manet. Turrim diū obtinēre possum. Sex annīs etiam mūrēs flūmen trānāre nōn poterunt." Mox autem portentum videt. Rīpae flūminis in-crēdibilī multitudine mūrīum complentur.



THE MOUSE-TOWER ON THE RHINE.

This is the famous tower of which is told the story in this and the preceding lesson. It is near the city of Bingen.

Iam mūrēs in aquā sunt et turrim petunt. Princeps deōs ōrat, sed dī nōn sunt amīcī; amīcitiam deōrum crūdēlitate āmisit. Hostēs idōneam poenam<sup>1</sup> sūmunt, principī miserō longiōrem vītam nōn permittunt. Mūrēs, ut dictum erat, corpus dēvorant.

---

<sup>1</sup> See Vocabulary for the meaning with sūmere.



## LESSON XLIV

### FOURTH CONJUGATION

*Veni, vidi, vici. — I came, saw, conquered.\**

**294.** Fourth conjugation verbs end in *-īre* in the present infinitive: *au'diō, audī're, audī'vī, audī'tus, hear.* The present stem is *audī-*, perfect stem *audīv-*, participial stem *audīt-*.

(a) Learn the indicative active of *audiō*, § 589, noting the peculiarity of the imperfect and the future.

**295.**

#### VOCABULARY

<i>au'diō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -ī'tus, hear,</i> <i>hear of.</i>	<i>oc'tō, eight.</i>
<i>mū'niō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -ī'tus, fortify.</i>	<i>mul'tō di'ē, late in the day.</i>
<i>ve'niō, -ī're, vē'nī, ven'tus, come.</i>	<i>pos'terō di'ē, on the day follow- ing.</i>
<i>incrēdi'bilis, -e, incredible.</i>	<i>plūs pos'se, to be more powerful.</i>

**296.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

audience      incredible      convene      octave

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

#### EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

**297.** *Analyze each form:*

1. *Audīs, audīvimus, audīverat, audiēmus.* 2. *Veniēbat, venit, vēnit, vēnerimus, veniunt.* 3. *Mūniēbāmus, mūnīvērunt, mūnīvī, mūniam.* 4. *Mittet, mūniet, dabit, laudāberis, vīsa est.* 5. *Potuerat, fuerat, vēnerat, dederat, mīserat.*

**298.** *Translate, marking long vowels:*

1. We shall have heard, they will hear, we hear, I heard.  
2. He comes, we shall come, they had come, you came.

---

\* Caesar's famous message to the Roman Senate. Quoted by Suetonius.

3. They will fortify, he has fortified, I shall fortify. 4. We shall seize, we shall destroy, we shall send, we shall come. 5. They saw, we lead, he can, it had been stormed.

## RULE

**299. Place Constructions. Locative Case.** — With names of cities and towns, with **domus**, *home*, and with **rūs**, *country*, the preposition is not used in *expressions of place*.

(a) These words express *place at which* by a case called the *Locative*. Its form is like the genitive in the singular of nouns of the first and second declensions, otherwise like the ablative.

	ORDINARY NOUNS	TOWNS, <i>domus</i> , <i>rūs</i>
PLACE FROM WHICH	<b>Ab, dē, ex</b> with Ablative	Ablative
<i>He comes</i>	<i>from the city, ab urbe venit.</i>	<i>from Rome, Rōmā venit.</i> <i>from home, domō venit.</i>
PLACE TO WHICH	<b>Ad</b> with Accusative	Accusative
<i>He runs</i>	<i>to the city, ad urbem currit.</i>	<i>to Rome, Rōmam currit.</i> <i>home, domum currit.</i>
PLACE IN WHICH	<b>In</b> with Ablative	Locative
<i>He is</i>	<i>in the city, in urbe est.</i>	<i>at Rome, Rōmae est.</i> <i>at home, domī est.</i>

## EXERCISES

**300. Translate:**

(a) 1. Fēminae domī<sup>1</sup> erant. 2. Multō diē lēgātus Rōmam vēnit. 3. Rēgēs plūs possunt quam cīvēs. 4. Liberī domum quam celerrimē vēnerant. 5. Posterō diē equitēs Rōmā in castra quam vēlōcissimē venient.

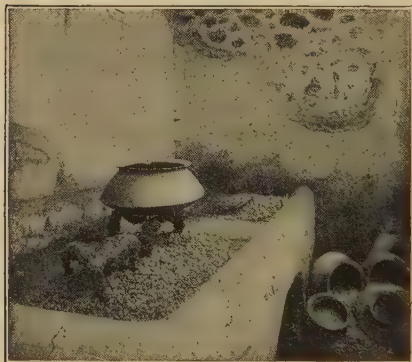
(b) 1. Bonī cīvēs senibus inimīcī nōn erunt. 2. Amīcus explōrātōris multās rēs audiet. 3. Octō ex oppidis ā legiōnibus fortibus oppugnāta erant. 4. Nautae ex nāvibus vēnērunt

<sup>1</sup> Locative.

sed in rīpā tēla reliquērunt. 5. Castra ex omnibus partibus<sup>1</sup> lātissimā fossā et altissimō mūrō mūnīvimus.

### 301. *Translate:*

- (a) 1. On the next day we heard the signal at Rome.  
2. We shall fortify the camp on all sides. 3. At sunset the children came home.  
4. Cicero was very friendly to the republic.  
5. The infantry came to Rome with incredible swiftness.



A POMPEIAN KITCHEN.

From the House of the Vettii. See the picture on page 170.

- (b) 1. Courage is often more useful to a man than weapons. 2. The place was more suitable in all respects for a line of battle than for a camp.  
3. Eight of the legions could not come to Rome in the early part of summer. 4. Late in the day Caesar led his forces back into camp. 5. The soldiers of the first legion carried on war less bravely than (those) of the tenth.

### PHRASES FROM CAESAR

#### 302. *Commit to memory, with the translations:*

1. Domī. 2. Magnā cum celeritātē. 3. Multō diē.  
4. Posterō diē. 5. Omnibus rēbus.

---

<sup>1</sup> On all sides.



A ROMAN CHARIOT RACE.



## LESSON XLV

### FOURTH CONJUGATION, PASSIVE

---

*Dum spiro, spero. — While there is life there is hope.\**

---

**303.** According to the rules in Lesson XXVI, conjugate **audiō** in the indicative passive. Compare § 589.

**304.** **Mille**, *a thousand*, is an indeclinable adjective. When referring to several thousand, **mīlia** is used. It is a neuter noun declined like the plural of **mare**, and is followed by the genitive of the objects enumerated. *A thousand men*, **mille hominēs**; but *eight thousand(s of) men*, **mīlia hominum octō**.

(a) There is no single word in Latin for *mile*. A mile was one thousand paces, **mille passūs**. Plural, **mīlia passuum**. A Roman *pace* was the distance from where one foot touched the ground to where the same foot touched again, that is, two of our paces or about five feet.

### 305.

#### VOCABULARY

<b>lātītū'dō</b> , -inis, f., <i>width</i> .	<b>pa'teō</b> , -ē're, -uī, —, <i>lie open,</i>
<b>longitū'dō</b> , -inis, f., <i>length</i> .	<i>extend</i> .
<b>mī'lia</b> , mī'lium, n., <i>thousands</i> .	<b>lon'gē</b> , adv., <i>far</i> .
<b>mīl'le</b> , adj., <i>a thousand</i> .	<b>quam lon'gē</b> , <i>how far?</i>
<b>pas'sus</b> , -ūs, m., <i>pace</i> .	<b>quam dī'ū</b> , <i>how long?</i>
<b>ma'neō</b> , -ē're, mān'sī, mān'sus, <i>remain</i> .	<b>quīn'que</b> , num. adj., indeclinable, <i>five</i> .

**306.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

latitude                  millennium                  remain                  quintette

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

\* Part of the motto of South Carolina. Literally: *While I breathe, I hope*.

## RULE

**307. Duration of Time. Extent of Space.** — Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

*They came six miles. Mīlia passuum sex vēnērunt.*  
*They fought five hours. Quīnque hōrās pugnāvērunt.*

## EXERCISES

**308. Translate; parse all the nouns:**

(a) 1. Quīnque diēs Rōmae mānsit. 2. Octō hōrās quam fortissimē pugnāverant. 3. Flūmen in lātitudinem mille passūs patuit. 4. Multōs annōs bellum gessērunt. 5. Equī mīlia passuum quīnque incrēdibilī celeritāte cucurrērunt.

(b) 1. Mūrum decem pedēs altum aedificābit. 2. Multae rēs ā prīncipe et ā paucīs mīlitum audiēbantur. 3. Aestāte ad urbem Rōmam veniētis. 4. Agrī Helvētiōrum in longitūdinem mīlia passuum multa patēbant. 5. Clāmor Rōmānōrum quīnque hōrās audītus erat.

✓ **309. Translate:**

(a) 1. We shall remain in the city eight days. 2. They ran a few miles and came home late in the day. 3. The bank of the river was ten feet high. 4. The territory of the Gauls extended many miles. 5. The attack was checked by a thousand soldiers on the left wing.

(b) 1. The line of battle will be many feet long. 2. At daybreak the general pitched camp at the top of the hill. 3. The tenth legion was faithful to Caesar in all respects. 4. The town had been fortified on all sides as carefully as possible. 5. The chief was faithful to the army, and he was loved by the brave soldiers.



## ORAL EXERCISE

310. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quam diū domī manēbitis? 2. Quam longē oppidum patēbat? 3. Quam diū discipulī labōrant? 4. Ubi domus Caesaris erat?  
5. Quis domī est?

CORNĒLIAE ŌRNĀ-  
MENTA

Cornēlia fēmina Rōmāna erat et optima māter. Filiōs habēbat Tiberium et Gaium Gracchum. Māter et filiū Rōmam, maximam urbem, incolēbant.

Diligentiā Cornēliae māt̄ris Gracchī Graecās litterās atque bonōs mōrēs docēbantur.

Campāna fēmina Cornēliae sua ōrnāmenta, quae (*which*) pulcherrima erant, mōnstrābat et laudābat. Cornēliae dixit, “Habēsne nūlla ōrnāmenta?”

Cornēlia respondit, “Meī puerī ōrnāmenta sunt mea.”



CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS.

## LESSON XLVI

### ADJECTIVES OF PECULIAR DECLENSION

*Audiat et altera pars.* — *Let the other side also be heard.\**

**311.** The following adjectives of the first and second declensions are regular in the plural, but have *-ius*<sup>1</sup> in the genitive and *-i* in the dative singular of all genders:

*a'lius, a'lia, a'liud, other.*

*al'ter, al'tera, al'terum, the other*

(of two).

*ūl'lus, -a, -um, any.*

*nūl'lus, -a, -um, no, none.*

*ū'nus, -a, -um, one.*

*u'ter, u'tra, u'trum, which (of two).*

*neu'ter, neu'tra, neu'trum, neither (of two).*

*sō'lus, -a, -um, alone, only.*

*tō'tus, -a, -um, whole*

(a) Learn the declension of *alius*, *ūnus*, § 574 ; of *deus*, § 568.

### 312.

### VOCABULARY

*capti'vus, -ī, m., captive.*

*de'a, -ae, f., goddess (-ā'bus in dat. and abl. pl.).*

*de'us, -ī, m., god.*

*ōr'dō, ōr'dinis, m., rank, order, row.*

*vī'ta, -ae, f., life.*

*vin'cō, -ere, vī'cī, vic'tus, conquer.*

*vī'vō, -ere, vī'xī, vic'tus,<sup>2</sup> live, be alive (not reside).*

*a'lius . . . a'lius, one . . . another.*

*a'liī . . . a'liī, some . . . others.*

*quot, indecl. adj., how many?*

**313.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

neuter

invincible

deity

alternate

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

### EXERCISES

**314.** *Translate:*

(a) 1. *Rōmānī deīs et deābus fidissimī erant.* 2. *Alia animālia in marī, alia in silvā vivunt.* 3. *Soror neutrī*

\* Seneca. <sup>1</sup> *Alter* has *ius* in the genitive.

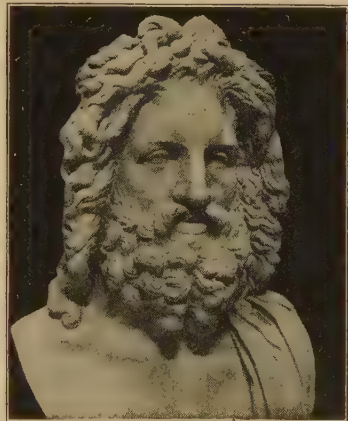
<sup>2</sup> Compare principal parts of *videō, vincō, vivō, veniō.*

frātrum cāra fuit. 4. Utra puellārum maior nātū est?  
5. Deī ūnī ex hominibus longam vītam dedērunt.

(b) 1. Alia puella aliī fābulam nārrābit. 2. Tōtū diem captivī quam optimē labōrāverunt. 3. Cicerōnis ōratiōnēs quam Caesaris meliōrēs sunt. 4. Flūmen mīlia passuum quīnque patēbat. 5. Rōmānī ab hostibus nōn saepe victi sunt.

✓ **315. Translate:**

(a) 1. One captive is a friend, another an enemy. 2. The father of neither boy was at home. 3. We shall tell the story to Marcus only. 4. The faithful Romans were loved by the gods and goddesses. 5. The gods have given longer life to some than to others.



JUPITER.

(b) 1. Many friends are better than a few. 2. The whole army had been conquered and the soldiers were living in fear every day. 3. To which of the boys did the man give a beautiful gift? 4. The soldiers live in camp in the summer. 5. The centurions of the first rank remained all day in line of battle.

Jupiter, or Jove, was the chief of the Roman gods, corresponding to the Greek Zeus.

**ORAL EXERCISE**

**316. Answer these questions in Latin:**

1. Quot hōrās hominēs labōrābunt? 2. Quam longē vēnistī? 3. Quam diū vīxit? 4. Labōrābāsne tōtū diem? 5. Utra puella melior est?

## LESSON XLVII

### REVIEW

*Vox populi vox dei. — The voice of the people is the voice of God.*

**317. Derivatives.** — Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following :

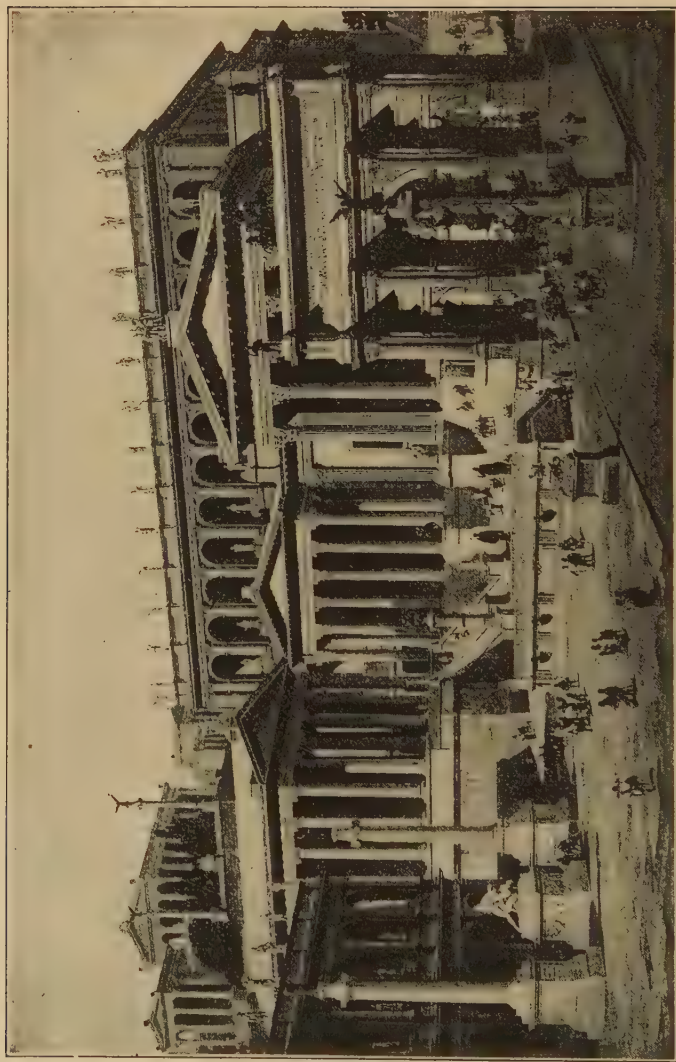
cornū	domus	manus	impetus
sōl	dexter	bene	deus
ūtilis	audiō	veniō	octō
mīlle	alter	sōlus	captīvus
ōrdō	vita	vincō	vīvō

**318. Form Drill.** — 1. Of what genders are the nouns of the first, second, third, fourth, and fifth declensions? Decline one noun of each declension. 2. In masculine and feminine nouns what is always the last letter in the accusative singular? the accusative plural? Give the terminations of these cases for each declension. 3. What are always the last two letters of the genitive plural? Give the terminations for each declension. 4. What cases are always alike in neuters? How do these cases always end in the plural? 5. What is peculiar about the declension of **domus**?

(a) The following words of the fourth and fifth declensions have the same form in English and Latin: **consensus, conspectus, hiatus, impetus, status, series, species.**

**319. Syntax Drill.** — 1. Write one Latin sentence illustrating the genitive of the whole and degree of difference. 2. What adjectives take the dative? 3. Give the rules you have learned for expressing place in Latin. 4. How is duration of time expressed in Latin? 5. What is a compound noun? Decline one. 6. How do verbs of the fourth conjugation differ from others in the imperfect indicative? 7. How does the future indicative





THE ROMAN FORUM (RESTORED).

of the third and fourth conjugations differ from that of the first and second? 8. Name the nine adjectives of peculiar declension.

✓ **320. Phrase Drill.** — Give the following phrases in Latin :

1. How long? 2. The first part of the summer. 3. Long and fiercely. 4. Less easily. 5. As bravely as possible. 6. How far? 7. On the top of the hill. 8. On the left wing. 9. At home. 10. The next day. 11. At sunset. 12. Late in the day. 13. In all respects.

✓ **321. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING**

1. Omnis impetus hostium ā militibus sustinēbātur.  
2. Nihil exercitibus Caesaris pār esse potuit. 3. Palūs erat nōn magna inter Caesaris atque hostium exercitūs. 4. Iter ad flūmen facillimum est. 5. Militēs ad urbem incredibili celeritāte current. 6. Oppidum altissimō mūrō mūniēmus. 7. Primā aestāte principēs Gallōrum domī in Galliā fuerant. 8. Sōlis occāsū nūntius audiēbātur. 9. Alia oppida mūnientur, alia dēlēbuntur. 10. Equī milia passuum quīnque cucurrerunt.

### FORUM RŌMĀNUM

✓ Forum Rŏmānum erat inter Capitŏlium et Palātium. Primŏ parvae tabernae utrimque erant. Post multŏs annŏs cŏsulēs et imperātŏrēs templa in Forŏ aedificāvērunt.

In templum Concordiae senātŏrēs conveniēbant. In rŏstrīs Cicerŏ et aliī ōrātŏrēs ad populum ōrātiŏnēs habēbant. Ubique erant altae columnae et simulācra deŏrum atque statuae virŏrum.

Togātī Rŏmānī in Forum saepe conveniēbant. Hinc Viā Sacrā legiŏnēs Rŏmānae ad bellum ēdūcēbantur. Viā Sacrā legiŏnēs victŏrēs magnīs cum clāmŏribus in Forum veniēbant. Nunc in Forŏ ruīnae undique videntur. Nihil manet nisi pauca vēstīgia antiquae glŏriae Rŏmānae.



## LESSON XLVIII

### INFINITIVES. INDIRECT DISCOURSE

---

*Vita sine litteris mors est. — Life without letters is death.*

---

**322. The formation of infinitives** for all conjugations is shown by the table below.

#### ACTIVE INFINITIVES

**Present infinitive** = *Present stem* + **-re** : **portāre**.

**Perfect infinitive** = *Perfect stem* + **-isse** : **portāvisse**.

**Future infinitive** = *Participial stem* + **-ūr** + *endings of magnus* + **esse** : **portātūrus esse**. **Esse** is often omitted.

#### PASSIVE INFINITIVES

**Present infinitive** = *Present stem* + **-rī** : **portārī** (except in the third conjugation, which makes its Present infinitive = *Present stem* with **e** changed to **ī** : **dūcī**).

**Perfect infinitive** = *Participial stem* + *endings of magnus* + **esse** : **portātus esse**. **Esse** is often omitted.

**Future infinitive** = *Participial stem* + **-um** + **īrī** : **portātum īrī**.

(a) Following the above rules write all the infinitives of **dō**, **moneō**, **dūcō**, **audiō**, **sum**, **possum**. Compare §§ 586, 587, 588, 589, 591.

**323. Indirect Quotation.** — The words or thoughts of a speaker may be stated directly or indirectly. A *direct quotation*, giving the exact words of the speaker, is stated thus: *He said, "The soldiers will fight."*

An *indirect quotation*, giving the thought but not the exact words of the speaker, is expressed thus: *He said that the soldiers would fight.*

In an indirect quotation in Latin the word *that* is not expressed and the statement is rendered by an infinitive with its subject in the accusative case: **Dixit milites pugnātūrōs esse**.

**324. Tenses in Indirect Quotation.** — Indirect quotation or *indirect discourse* occurs most frequently after verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing*, and the like.

(1) The *same* time as that of the principal verb is denoted by the *present* infinitive.<sup>1</sup>

(2) Time *before* that of the principal verb is denoted by the *perfect* infinitive.<sup>2</sup>

(3) Time *after* that of the principal verb is denoted by the *future* infinitive.

(1) *He says that the soldiers are fighting.* **Dīcit mīlitēs pugnāre.**

(2) *He says that the soldiers have fought.* **Dīcit mīlitēs pugnāvisse.**

(3) *He says that the soldiers will fight.* **Dīcit mīlitēs pugnātūrōs esse.**

(1) *He said that the soldiers were being led.* **Dixit mīlitēs dūcī.**

(2) *He said that the soldiers had been led.* **Dixit mīlitēs ductōs esse.**

(3) *He said that the soldiers would be led.* **Dixit mīlitēs ductum irī.**

### 325.

### VOCABULARY

**mors, mor'tis, (-ium), f., death.**

**mūnī'tiō, -ō'nis, f., fortification.**

**intel'legō, intelle'gere, intel-**

**lē'xī, intellēc'tus, under-**  
**stand.**

**dī'cō, -ere, dī'xī, dic'tus, say.**

**pu'tō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, think,**  
**believe.**

**sci'ō, sci're, sci'vī, sci'tus,**  
**know.**

**326. What Latin words do the following suggest?**

mortal      science      diction      intelligence

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

### RULE

**327. Accusative and Infinitive.** — The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative case.<sup>3</sup>

*I know that the boy will come.* **Sciō puerum ventūrum esse.**

*He thought that the children had remained.* **Putāvit liberōs mānsisse.**

<sup>1</sup> Compare § 636, c.

<sup>2</sup> Compare § 636, d.

<sup>3</sup> Compare § 658.

## EXERCISES ON FORMS

**328.** *Translate, giving the reason for the mood, tense, and ending of each infinitive:*

1. Scīvērunt legiōnem ventūram esse. 2. Dixit hostēs victōs esse. 3. Dīcet librum missum esse. 4. Putō imperātōrem victum esse. 5. Sciō virum victūrum esse, victum irī, vincī. 6. Intelligunt Germānōs pugnāre. 7. Intellēxērunt Germānōs pugnāre.



MINERVA.

Minerva, the Greek Athene, is said to have sprung fully armed from the brain of Jove. She was the goddess of wisdom and the patroness of all the arts and sciences.

**329.** *Translate:*

1. We think that the ambassador has been sent, is being sent. 2. I knew that the shout had been heard, would be heard, was being heard. 3. I understood that the children were writing, would write, had written. 4. They said that the goddesses had been loved, would be loved. 5. The Romans thought that the gods heard, would hear.

## EXERCISES

**330.** *Translate:*

- (a) 1. Putāmus aliōs fortēs fuisse, aliōs mortem timuisse. 2. Intellēxit Gallōs sōlōs bellum nōn gestūrōs esse. 3. Dīcit exercitum Rōmānum in finēs Gallōrum dūcī posse. 4. Scīvī liberōs domum mittī. 5. Lēgātus captīvīs nūntiat neutrum diū vīvere posse.

(b) 1. Caesar cum tōtō exercitū brevissimō tempore milia passuum quīque venīre potuit. 2. Mūnitiō maxima erat. 3. Paucī hominēs timōre vincuntur. 4. Rōmānī virtūte Gallōs superāvērunt. 5. Militēs omnibus rēbus ducī fidī nōn erant.



THE ROMAN FORUM.

This view is taken from near the arch of Titus. It shows from the mass of ruins what a magnificent place this must have been. Compare it with the pictures on pages 59 and 190 and facing page 129.

✓ 331. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Caesar knew that the Roman soldiers were not inferior. 2. He says that many things will often be heard at Rome. 3. All announced that the army was being led into one place. 4. We understood that Caesar was coming to the fortification at daybreak. 5. We heard that the women and children had been sent into the town.

(b) 1. Late in the day the camp was easily fortified.

2. He will announce that the soldiers have been seen on the top of the hill by the forces of the enemy. 3. The lieutenants thought that Caesar had enlisted five legions in hither Gaul. 4. We know that death is feared by many. 5. We understand that Caesar was the friend of the tenth legion.

## ORAL EXERCISE

**332.** *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quid Caesar dixit?
2. Scivistine Caesarem hostēs vīcisse?
3. Quam diū dux dixit milītēs pugnātūrōs esse?
4. Cūr Rōmam vēnistī?
5. Quot cohortēs legiō habet?



THE TEMPLE OF APOLLO AT POMPEII.

Notice the altar in front and compare this picture with the view of the temple on page 177 and with the altar on page 179.

## LESSON XLIX

### DUO AND TRĒS

*Facta non verba. — Deeds not words.*

**333.** Learn the declension of *duo* and *trēs*, § 575.

**334.**

#### VOCABULARY

*Bel'gae*, -ā'rum, m., *Belgians*.

*spēs*, *spe'ī*, f., *hope*.

*cōnfir'mō*, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus,

*assert, strengthen, establish.*

*du'o*, *du'ae*, *du'o*, adj., *two*.

*trēs*, *trēs*, *tri'a*, adj., *three*.

*dīmit'tō*, -ere, -mī'sī, -mis'sus,

*send in different directions,*

*dismiss.*

*exīs'timō*, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus,

*think, reckon.*

*un'dique*, adv., *from all sides.*

**335.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

dual

trinity

confirm

dismiss

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

#### RULE

**336. Ablative of Separation.** — Separation is expressed by the ablative either with or without a preposition.

*The men are freed from danger.* **Virī periculō liberantur.**

*You will free me from great fear.* **Magnō mē metū liberābis.**

#### EXERCISES

**337. Translate:**

(a) 1. *Homō timōre magnō liberārī potest.* 2. *Alium morte liberābō, alium periculō.* 3. *Scīmus equum brevissimō tempore milia passuum duo currere potuisse.* 4. *Nāvēs hostium velōcissimē nāvigāre nōn poterant.* 5. *Dux centuriōnibus nūntiābat Rōmānōs duo oppida paucīs diēbus<sup>1</sup> oppugnātūrōs esse.*

<sup>1</sup> § 182.



(b) 1. Alii magnās rēs scribere possunt, alii multa dīcunt, sed nihil scribunt. 2. Putāmus ducem dēfessōs militēs dīmīsūrum esse. 3. Prīncipēs cōfirmāvērunt altōs montēs undique vidēri posse. 4. Belgae existimāvērunt spem maximam esse. 5. Caesar vidit omnēs Belgās in ūnum locum vēnisse.

**338. Translate:**

(a) 1. The lieutenant was freed from all fear. 2. The Belgians knew that the soldiers could very easily come three miles in one hour. 3. The hope of the two leaders was very great. 4. Caesar had enlisted two legions, and thought that the Germans could be conquered. 5. The centurion asserted that the auxiliary troops were not good soldiers.

(b) 1. Men are always very near to the gods. 2. The ships were detained for a few hours. 3. A private soldier of the Roman army was not very easily conquered. 4. They reckoned that a thousand men [soldiers] had been dismissed from the army. 5. The messenger ran many miles as swiftly as possible and announced the danger to a centurion of the first rank.

**ORAL EXERCISE**

**339. Answer these questions in Latin:**

1. Uter puer in agrō erat? 2. Vicēruntne Gallōs aestāte? 3. Victōriaene ūnūs lēgātī multae sunt? 4. Num militēs ā dextrō cornū pugnābunt? 5. Ubi Caesar castra pōnet?

**THE WEATHER-WISE DONKEY**

Ludovīcus, rēx Gallōrum, generī hominum quī astrologī vocantur maximē cōfidēbat.<sup>1</sup> Astrologī stellārum mōtū imbrēs ventōsque praedicunt. Aliquandō rēx, dum in silvīs est, celerī equō longē ante omnēs sociōs praetervectus est.

---

<sup>1</sup> Cōfīdō takes regularly the dative of persons and the ablative or dative of things.



Interim caelum nūbibus complētur, gravisque imber in terram cadit. Rēx igitur, quī parvam casam inter arborēs vidit, tempestātis (*from the storm*) perfugium petīvit.

Tum ubi rēx graviter astrologōs incūsābat, agricola, cuius (*whose*) casa erat, dīxit: "Nūlla tempestās mē<sup>1</sup> incautum excipit; semper enim meus asinus vōce raucā imbrem prae-dīcit." Rēx rīsīt et respondit: "Sī tuus asinus tam bonus astrologus est, meōs astrologōs semper in numerō asinōrum habēbō."



RUINS OF A ROMAN HOUSE AT POMPEII.

This shows the central court with its fountain, around which the house was built. At the rear and sides may be seen the doors opening into various rooms.

---

<sup>1</sup> Accusative of the first personal pronoun.

## LESSON L

### THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS IN *-iō*

*Populus vult decipi. — The people like to be deceived.\**

**340.** A few verbs of the third conjugation end in *-iō*. They have the forms of the fourth conjugation wherever the fourth has *i* followed by a vowel.

(a) According to the above rule conjugate **capiō** in the indicative and infinitive, active and passive. Compare § 590.

#### 341.

#### VOCABULARY

<b>ca'piō, -ere, cē'pī, cap'tus, take,</b> <i>seize, capture.</i>	<b>cōnfī'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus,<sup>1</sup></b> <i>do thoroughly, accomplish.</i>
<b>inci'piō, -ere, -cē'pī, -cep'tus,<sup>1</sup></b> <i>begin, undertake.</i>	<b>interfī'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus,<sup>1</sup></b> <i>kill.</i>
<b>reci'piō, -ere, -cē'pī, -cep'tus,<sup>1</sup></b> <i>take back, receive; (with sē)</i> <i>retreat.</i>	<b>ia'ciō, -ere, iē'cī, iac'tus, throw.</b> <b>rei'ciō, -ere, -iē'cī, -iec'tus,<sup>1</sup></b> <i>throw back, repulse.</i>
<b>fa'ciō, -ere, fē'cī, fac'tus, make,</b> <i>do; (with iter) march.</i>	<b>dē, prep. with abl., about, con-</b> <i>cerning, from.</i>

**342.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

incipient                  reject                  reception                  factory

(a) Define, and use each of these nouns in an English sentence.

#### EXERCISES

**343.** *Translate:*

(a) 1. Mīles ab hostibus tēla capiēbat. 2. Multī et fortēs virī in bellō interfectī sunt. 3. Cōpiaē Caesaris celeriter sē recipient. 4. Militēs ē superiōre locō pīla iēcērunt. 5. Dextrum cornū exercitūs ad mūnitiōnem incrēdibilī celeritātē iter facit.

---

\* Attributed to Cardinal Carafa. <sup>1</sup> Note the change in the present and participial stems when the simple verb is compounded.

(b) 1. Rēgis frāter et ūnus ē filiīs capientur. 2. Cōnfirmābāmus oppidum facile capī posse. 3. Dē deīs et deābus multa audīvimus. 4. Diēbus decem exercitus in urbem sē recēpit. 5. Rōmānī intellēxērunt Caesarem bellum incēpisse et cōfectūrum esse.

### 344. *Translate:*

(a) 1. The enemy marched all day. 2. We think that the forces will retreat late in the day. 3. The enemy will be repulsed in a few hours.

4. The Belgae had great hope concerning the battle but many were killed.

5. The general began the attack but was captured at daybreak.

(b) 1. The Germans were greater than the Romans in size. 2. Many very beautiful things had been made by hand.

3. The citizens thought that the cavalry could not be freed from the danger.

4. The Romans surpassed the Gauls in courage.

5. The leader had said that the legions would conquer.



ROMAN TEMPLE AT NÎMES.

The best preserved Roman temple in the world.

### ORAL EXERCISE

#### 345. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quid manibus facere potes? 2. Quot discipulī in primō ordine sunt? 3. Puellaene lapidēs bene iaciunt? 4. Nōne multī virī in proeliō interfectī sunt? 5. Liberīne amīcī amīcīs sunt?

# LESSON LI

## NUMERALS

*Post nubila Phoebus.* — “*Every cloud has a silver lining.*” \*

### 346. The Numerals up to *twenty-one* are : <sup>1</sup>

#### CARDINALS

1. ū'nus, ū'na, ū'num
2. du'o, du'ae, du'o
3. trēs, tri'a
4. quat'tuor
5. quīn'que
6. sex
7. sep'tem
8. oc'tō
9. no'vem
10. de'cem
11. ūn'decim
12. duo'decim
13. tre'decim
14. quattuor'decim
15. quīn'decim
16. sē'decim
17. septen'decim
18. duodēvīgin'tī
19. ūndēvīgin'tī
20. vīgin'tī
21. vīgin'tī ū'nus (ū'nus et vīgin'tī)
30. trīgin'tā

#### ORDINALS

- prī'mus, *first*
- secun'dus, *second*
- ter'tius, *third*
- quār'tus
- quīn'tus
- sex'tus
- sep'timus
- octā'vus
- nō'nus
- de'cimus
- ūnde'cimus
- duode'cimus
- ter'tius de'cimus
- quār'tus de'cimus
- quīn'tus de'cimus
- sex'tus de'cimus
- sep'timus de'cimus
- duodēvīcē'simus
- ūndēvīcē'simus
- vīcē'simus
- vīcē'simus prī'mus
- trīcē'simus

\* Literally : *After clouds, Phoebus* (the sun-god). Compare Longfellow's

“ Be still, sad heart, and cease repining,  
Behind the clouds is the sun still shining.”

<sup>1</sup> Compare § 619. For a more complete list of numerals, see § 579.

(a) The declension of **ūnus**, **duo**, and **trēs** has been given. The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum**, *one hundred*, inclusive, are indeclinable. The hundreds (except **centum**) are declined like the plural of **magnus**. The ordinals are declined like **magnus**.

## 347.

## VOCABULARY

**ag'men**,<sup>1</sup> **-minis**, n., *army* (on the march), *line of march*; **no-vis'simum ag'men**, *rear*; **prī'mum ag'men**, *van*.

**cer'tus**, -a, -um, *certain*; **cer-tiō'rem** (or **certiō'rēs**) **fa'-cere**, *inform*.<sup>2</sup>

**quār'tus**, -a, -um, *fourth*.

**quīn'tus**, -a, -um, *fifth*.

**no'vus**, -a, -um, *new*; **no'vus mī'les**, *recruit*.

**sep'tem**, num. adj., indecl., *seven*.

**cen'tum**, num. adj., indecl., *one hundred*.

**me'dius**, -a, -um, *middle*; **me'diā**

**noc'te**, *at midnight*; **in**

**me'diō col'le**, *halfway up the hill*.

348. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

November      quarter      medium      novelty

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

## EXERCISES

349. *Translate:*

- (a) 1. Mediā nocte Caesaris castra oppugnābantur.
2. Quārtā hōrā diēi impetus in novissimum agmen factus est.
3. Scīvit nautās dē altitudine flūminis certiōrēs factōs esse.
4. Novī milītēs mīlia passuum septem iter facient.
5. Caesar dē agmine certior factus erat.

(b) 1. Prīmum agmen sē nōn recipiet sed impetum incipiet. 2. Dē victōriā nautārum Caesarem certiōrem fēcerant. 3. Quīntō annō bellī audiēbāmus urbem ā decimā legiōne capī. 4. Novissimum agmen in mediō colle vīsum erat. 5. Tertiā proelī hōrā multī et magnī lapidēs dē mūrō ā fortibus milītibz iaciēbantur.

<sup>1</sup> **aciēs**, *army* (in battle array); **exercitus**, *army* (a body of trained soldiers). <sup>2</sup> Usually followed by **dē** with the ablative.

**350. *Translate:***

(a) 1. The recruits marched seven miles. 2. We have been informed about the death of the leader. 3. At sunset the rear will be attacked by the enemy. 4. We know that the four legions will come home. 5. Late in the day we heard that the whole army had been informed concerning the death of the general.



THE DYING GAUL.

This statue, often wrongly called the Dying Gladiator, represents a Gallic warrior sitting on his shield and gazing at his broken sword while he bleeds to death from a wound in his right side. It is one of the finest examples of ancient sculpture.

(b) 1. They are building a wall one hundred feet long and eight feet high. 2. We heard that the lieutenant had lived six years in camp. 3. We assert that the soldiers on the left wing fought as bravely as possible, but were killed. 4. The children were faithful to their father and informed (him) con-



cerning the danger. 5. At midnight we heard that the march had been accomplished very quickly.

### PHRASES FROM CAESAR

**351.** *Commit to memory, with the translations:*

1. Iter facere. 2. Sē recipere. 3. Mediā nocte. 4. In mediō colle. 5. Certiōrem facere.

### A BREACH OF DISCIPLINE

Frederīcus, Germānōrum rēx, quod ab hostibus premēbātur, saevissimā disciplinā militēs in officiō continēbat. Saepe nocte sōlus per castra ambulābat. Aliquandō, dum castra, ut cōsuētūdō erat, perlūstrat lūcem in tabernāculō finitimō vīdit. Rēx igitur, quī irā concitābātur, quod ignem in castrīs militēs habēre vetuerat, silenter tabernāculum intrāvit.

Miles litterās ad uxōrem scribēbat. Dum multīs verbīs perīcula bellī, suam salūtem, amōremque magnum nārrat, subitō rēgem videt. Tum rēx, "Litterās ad finem perscribere licet.<sup>1</sup> In fine tamen haec (*these*) verba pōnēs: 'Valē,<sup>2</sup> Ō cārissima, crās enim, quod imperātōris praecepta male servāvī, vīvus nōn erō.'"



A ROMAN CANDELABRUM.

<sup>1</sup> An impersonal verb; **perscribere** is its subject.

<sup>2</sup> *farewell*, imperative of **valeō**.



## LESSON LI

### PREPOSITIONS

*Pro aris et focis. — For home and fireside.\**

**352.** The ablative is used with

*ā* or *ab*, *dē*,  
*cum*, *ex* or *ē*,  
*sine*, *prō*, *prae*.

**353.** The accusative is used with about thirty prepositions; the most common are *ad*, *ante*, *apud*, *circum*, *contrā*, *inter*, *per*, *trāns*.

(a) Two prepositions, *in* and *sub*, govern both accusative and ablative; with the accusative they denote motion *toward* a place, and with the ablative, rest *in* a place.

**354.**

#### VOCABULARY

*adulēs'cēns*, *-en'tis*, m., *youth*, *young man*.

*iu'gum*, *-ī*, n., *yoke*; *ridge* (of a hill).

*stō*, *stā're*, *ste'tī*, *stā'tus*, *stand*.

*prō*, prep. (with abl.), *in front of*, *for*,

*sine*, prep. (with abl.), *without*.

*sub*, { (with acc. after verbs of motion), *under*.

{ (with abl. to denote place), *at the foot of*, *under*.

**355.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

subjugate      station      conjugate      adolescent

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

#### EXERCISES

**356.** *Translate:*

(a) 1. *Multī adulēscētēs prō patriā vīvunt.* 2. *Animālia pulchra sub arbore saepissimē stetērunt.* 3. *Cohortēs milia passuum tria Rōmā iter fēcērunt.* 4. *Multō diē lēgātī ad*

---

\* Literally: *For altars and hearths.*

Caesarem vērunt. 5. Prīmā lūce primum agmen sub iugum missum erat.

(b) 1. Caesar dē adulēscēte certior factus est. 2. Castra hostium sine periculō capī nōn possunt. 3. Posterō diē Caesaris equitēs cum Helvētiis pugnāvērunt et victi sunt. 4. Equi equitum sub arboribus steterant. 5. Urbs diū et ācritē oppugnāta est sed capī nōn potuit.

### 357. *Translate:*

(a) 1. The enemy will kill a few of the youths. 2. At midnight the leader stood in the van. 3. Fathers always work for their sons and daughters. 4. The man stood at the foot of the mountain and received a very severe wound. 5. Some were sent under the yoke, others were killed.

(b) 1. We think that the letters have been sent to Rome. 2. The swift horseman had been informed of the danger by the voice of his leader. 3. In the summer the days are long and the nights very short. 4. Stones were hurled from the fortification by the bravest men. 5. We knew that the teacher would lead the children home.



AUGUSTUS CAESAR.

Julius Caesar's nephew, Octavian (63 B.C.—14 A.D.), after many struggles succeeded to his uncle's power. He founded the Roman Empire, taking the title *imperator*. His time was the most brilliant period in Roman literature, the "Augustan Age."

### PHRASES FROM CAESAR

#### 358. *Commit to memory, with the translations:*

1. Sub monte. 2. Sub iugum. 3. Primum agmen.
4. Novissimum agmen. 5. Novī militēs.

## ORGETORĪX

Dux apud Helvētiōs fuit Orgetorīx. Helvētiōs dē fīnibus suīs<sup>1</sup> cum omnibus cōpiis inter montēs, trāns flūmen, per prōvinciam dūcēbat. Puer Rōmānus sub monte stābat et Helvētiōs vīdit. Sine morā in oppidum properāvit et factum nārrāvit.

In oppidō virī omnēs prō patriā pugnant. Exercitum parāvērunt et multis cum cōpiis ex oppidō in hostēs properāvērunt. Exercitus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs pugnavit et hostēs superāvit. Helvētiī in suis fīnibus manēbant.



THE SWIMMING-POOL AT HADRIAN'S VILLA.

This villa, the library of which was shown on page 51, covered over 150 acres. In it Hadrian built imitations of buildings and places that had interested him in his travels. It was all on so magnificent a scale that it is hard to-day to realize its grandeur unless one sees the extent of the ruins.

---

<sup>1</sup> See *suus*, *-a*, *-um* in the Vocabulary.

## LESSON LIII

### REVIEW

---

*Nemo me impune lacessit. — No one molests me unhurt.\**

---

**359. Derivatives.**— Write all the English words you can which seem to be derived from the following :

stō	iaciō	capiō	ūnus
centum	certus	mors	faciō
duo	quārtus	dīcō	novus

**360. Form Drill.**— 1. Give the rules for the formation of active infinitives. Of passive infinitives. 2. Give the infinitives, active and passive, of **dō**, **moveō**, **mittō**, **capiō**, **veniō**. 3. Which infinitive of the third conjugation is peculiar in its form? 4. How are **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation conjugated? 5. How can you tell whether an **-iō** verb is of the third or of the fourth conjugation? 6. Count to **trīgintā** in Latin. 7. Decline **ūnus**, **duo**, **trēs**, **deus**, **dea**, **alius**.

**361. Word Drill.**— 1. Distinguish between the meanings of **exercitus**, **agmen**, and **aciēs**. 2. Give the nominative, the genitive, and the gender of the Latin words for the following :

death	god	hope
fortification	youth	length
goddess	width	line of march

**362. Syntax Drill.**— 1. Name two uses for the infinitive and illustrate each by a Latin sentence. 2. Name the prepositions that always govern the ablative case. 3. Name three prepositions that govern the accusative

---

\* The motto of Scotland, referring to the thistle.

case. 4. What two prepositions govern both accusative and ablative? 5. Illustrate by an English sentence the ablative of separation. 6. Illustrate by an English sentence the ablative of specification.

**363. Composition.** — State in Latin ten facts that you have heard to-day. (Have the class translate each fact as stated.)

#### EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

**364.** 1. Gladiīs in hostēs impetum incipiēmus. 2. Scripsistī pulchrās rēs ā liberīs factās esse. 3. Tōtam noctem exercitus iter fēcit. 4. Existimāvit bellum duodecim annōs gestum esse. 5. Caesar novōs militēs in novissimō agmine posuit. 6. Mille virī Rōmā missī erant. 7. Captīvus prō adulēscēte stetit. 8. Putāvimus militēs mediā nocte in oppidum mittī. 9. Longās litterās comitibus scribunt. 10. Vēnerunt Rōmam difficilī viā.

#### NĀSĪCA ET ENNIUS

Nāsīca Ennī poētae amīcus erat. Nāsīca ad Ennium vēnit et ā portā eum (*him*) quaesīvit. Serva dīxit, “Ennius domī nōn est.” Ennius domī erat et id (*it*) Nāsīca sciēbat, nihil tamen dīxit, sed domum revertit.

Paucīs post diēbus ad Nāsīcam vēnit Ennius. Huic (*to him*) ipse<sup>1</sup> Nāsīca dīxit, “Nōn sum domī.” Tum Ennius dīxit, “Nōnne cognōscō vōcem tuam?”<sup>2</sup> Nāsīca respondit, “Homō es impudens; ego servae tuae crēdidī: tū nōn crēdis mihi.”<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Himself*, nominative.

<sup>2</sup> *Your*.

<sup>3</sup> *Me*, dative of **ego**.

## LESSON LIV

### SUBJUNCTIVE. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

---

*Crescat scientia. — May knowledge increase! \**

---

#### 365. First Conjugation.

*Present Subjunctive* = *present stem* (with *ā* changed to *e*)  
+ *personal endings*, **porte m.**

#### Second and Fourth Conjugations.

*Present Subjunctive* = *present stem* (with the vowel shortened) + *a* + *personal endings*, **mone a m, audi a m.**

#### Third Conjugation.

*Present Subjunctive* = *present stem* (with *e* changed to *a*)  
+ *personal endings*, **dūca m.**

(a) Learn the present subjunctive, active and passive, of **portō, moneō, dūcō, audiō, and capiō**, §§ 586, 587, 588, 589, 590. Also present subjunctive of **sum, possum**, § 591.

(b) The indicative mood is used to indicate facts. The most common uses of the subjunctive are to represent something as willed, desired, possible, doubtful, or even contrary to fact. No translation is given for the subjunctive in the paradigms, as the meaning of a subjunctive varies with its use.

**366. Subjunctive of Purpose.** — In English, purpose is often expressed by the infinitive: *we fight to conquer*. But in Latin prose, purpose is expressed *not* by the infinitive but *by the subjunctive*. It is introduced by **ut**, *that*, *in order that*, if the purpose is positive, by **nē**, *that not*, *lest*, if it is negative.

*We fight to overcome.* **Pugnāmus ut superēmus.**

*We fight that we may not be overcome.* **Pugnāmus nē superēmur.**

(a) Always remember to put the English phrase of purpose into a clause with (*in order*) *that* before beginning to translate.

---

\* The motto of Chicago University.

## 367.

## VOCABULARY

le'gō, -ere, lē'gī, lēc'tus, *read,*  
*choose.*

dē'ligō,<sup>1</sup> -ere, -lē'gī, -lēc'tus,  
*choose (from), gather, select.*

prohi'beō, -ē're, -uī, -itus, *keep*  
*off, hinder.*

ut, conj., *that.*

nē, conj., *that not, lest.*

per, prep. (with acc.), *through.*

rēg'num, -ī, n., *royal power, king-*  
*dom.*

crē'ber, -bra, -brum, *frequent.*

368. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

interregnum    prohibit    itinerary    submarine

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.



A ROMAN URN.

It is beautifully carved of white marble and represents Neptune, god of the sea, with his trident, looking at a sea monster. At his side is his gift to mankind, the horse.

tius mittitur ut cīvēs moneantur. 5. Crēbrī nūntiī ad Caesarem missī erant.

## EXERCISES

369. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Pugnāmus fortiter ut ā duce laudēmur. 2. Nūntiōs mittit ut itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant. 3. Militēs celerrimē currunt nē hostēs novissimum agmen videant. 4. Vir mittētur ut rēgnum in cīvitate occupet. 5. Veniēmus celeriter ut dē periculō adulēscēntem certiōrem faciāmus.

(b) 1. Cohortēs Rōmānae pugnant nē in viā vincantur. 2. Cīvitatibus quam plūrimīs Caesarem amicum esse dixit. 3. Caesar memoriā tenet dōna multa recepta esse. 4. Nūntius

<sup>1</sup> Compare with legō.



**370.** *Translate, remembering § 366 (a):*

(a) 1. We come to make peace. 2. We have marched through the territory of the Gauls. 3. The enemy comes to seize the royal power at Rome. 4. We shall send back the soldiers to pitch camp late in the day. 5. The children read many books that they may understand all things about Rome and the Roman people.

(b) 1. Caesar said that the Roman people would make peace with the Gauls. 2. A man is selected to warn the captive. 3. We shall seize the top of the mountain very easily. 4. All think that Marcus will kill the young man. 5. The faithful father will advise his son more often.

## ORAL EXERCISE

**371.** *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Dixistine puerum cum diligentiā labōrāvisse? 2. Scribitisne libenter litterās? 3. Quid dicis? 4. Venisne ut matrem videās? 5. Nōne Caesar cum Gallīs saepe pugnāvit?



NAPLES AND VESUVIUS.

This picture is taken from the so-called Tomb of Virgil. Pompeii is farther to the right and does not show in the picture.

## LESSON LV

### SEQUENCE OF TENSES

---

*Caveat emptor. — Let the buyer beware.\**

---

**372. Imperfect Subjunctive Active of All Conjugations** = *present stem + re + personal endings*; or *present infinitive active + personal endings*.

**Perfect Subjunctive Active of All Conjugations** = *perfect stem + erī + personal endings*.

**Pluperfect Subjunctive Active of All Conjugations** = *perfect stem + isse + personal endings*; or *perfect infinitive active + personal endings*.

(a) According to above rules conjugate the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect subjunctive active of **portō**, **moneō**, **dūcō**, **audiō**, **capiō**, also **sum** and **possum**. Conjugate all but **sum** and **possum** in the passive, following the same general plan as that used in the passive indicative. Compare §§ 586, 587, 588, 589, 590, 591.

### 373.

#### VOCABULARY

**impe'rium**, **impe'rī**, n., *command, control, military authority*.

**senā'tor**, **-ō'ris**, m., *senator*.

**persuā'deō**, **-ē're**, **persuā'sī**, **persuā'sus**, *persuade*. It governs the dative and is followed by **ut** or **nē** with the subjunctive.

**ne'gō**, **-ā're**, **-ā'vī**, **-ā'tus**, *deny, say not*.

**im'perō**, **-ā're**, **-ā'vī**, **-ā'tus**, *order, levy*. It governs the dative, and is followed by **ut** or **nē** with the subjunctive.

### 374. What Latin words do the following suggest?

imperial      imperative      legible      negative      senatorial

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

\* We say: *Buyer's risk*.

## RULES

**375. Classes of Tenses.** — Tenses are divided into two classes, *principal* and *historical*.

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Principal Tenses</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Present} \\ \text{Future} \\ \text{Future perfect} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Present} \\ \text{Perfect} \end{array} \right.$
<i>Historical Tenses</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Imperfect} \\ \text{Perfect} \\ \text{Pluperfect} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Imperfect} \\ \text{Pluperfect} \end{array} \right.$

**376. Sequence of Tenses.**<sup>1</sup> — Principal tenses in the indicative are generally followed by principal tenses in the subjunctive, and historical tenses by historical tenses.

The present and imperfect subjunctive are used to denote action incomplete at the time of the main verb, and the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive denote action complete at the time of the main verb.

## EXERCISES ON SUBJUNCTIVES

**377. (a)** 1. Venīmus ut videāmus. 2. Persuādent virīs ut pugnent, capiant, moneant. 3. Persuādēbat senātōrī nē pugnāret, caperet, monēret. 4. Militem mittet ut currat, videat, laudet. 5. Lēgātōs mīsit ut monērent, persuādērent, vincerent.

(b) 1. We come to attack, to conquer. 2. We came to attack, to conquer. 3. We persuaded the soldiers not to give, attack, kill. 4. The man is sent to hear, know, fight. 5. Caesar persuades the lieutenant to think, to say, to know.

---

<sup>1</sup> Notice that the first part of this rule shows whether to use a *principal* or *historical* tense; the second part shows *which one* of the principal or historical tenses to use.

## EXERCISES

378. *Translate, explaining the mood and tense of each subjunctive and infinitive:*

(a) 1. Trēs senātōrēs delēctī erant. 2. Veniam ut dē bellō amicum certiōrem faciam. 3. Fēminās et liberōs nōn



INTERIOR OF THE PANTHEON.

The Pantheon is the only ancient building in Rome which is not more or less in ruins. It was built by Hadrian and is an inverted bowl nearly 150 feet high and of the same diameter. It is lighted by an opening almost 30 feet across in the center of the dome. In it are the tombs of the first two kings of modern Italy and of the painter Raphael.

interficiēmus. 4. Fortissimē pugnāvērunt ut ā duce laudārentur. 5. Imperātor lēgātō persuāsit ut in citeriōre Galliā novōs milītēs cōscriberet.

(b) 1. Multa dē imperiō Rōmānōrum lēgit. 2. Lēgātō imperāverāmus ut itinere hostēs prohibēret. 3. Negāvērunt

equitēs quam peditēs fortius pugnāvisse. 4. Dīcit Germānōs bellum cum Gallīs plūrimōs annōs gestūrōs esse. 5. Scīvimus puerum decem annīs<sup>1</sup> maiōrem nātū esse quam puellam.

### 379. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Five legions were levied in hither Gaul. 2. The German leader did not kill the consul. 3. We ordered the senators to send ambassadors and make peace. 4. We shall send the boy home to read the book. 5. We send the lieutenant to persuade the soldiers not to leave the camp.

(b) 1. We have been informed that the soldiers were able to withstand all the attacks of the Germans. 2. The messenger informed Caesar of the victory. 3. The leader denied that the rear was being conquered. 4. Caesar fought long and fiercely to conquer the enemies of Rome. 5. The Helvetians said that their fields had been laid waste.

### OPAL EXERCISE

### 380. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Cūr vēnerat? 2. Quam diū lēgistī? 3. Quis discipulīs persuāsit ut legerent? 4. Cūr nūntium mīsistī? 5. Mittēbārisne ut pugnārēs?

### TARPĒIA

Sabīnī cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbant et agrōs Rōmānōrum vāstābant. Rōmam exercitum dūcēbant et urbem intrāvērunt sed Capitōlium capere nōn poterant. Ubi ab Capitōliō nōn longē aberant, puellam Tarpēiam, filiam ducis Rōmānī, portantem (*carrying*) aquam extrā moenia vīdērunt.

Dux Sabīnōrum putāvit puellam in Capitōlium exercitum dūcere posse, et dīxit sē (*he*) Tarpēiae praemium datūrum esse.

---

<sup>1</sup> See § 272.

Puella dīxit sē (*she*) habitūram esse rēs quās (*which*) in sinistrīs manibus gererent.

Sabīnī aureōs ānulōs et armillās in sinistrīs manibus gerēbant. Brevī tempore Sabīnī in Capitōliō stant et Tarpēiae praeium dare parant. In puellam scūta iaciunt; nam scūta Sabīnōrum erant in sinistrīs manibus. Tarpēia interfecitur; Sabīnī Capitōlium occupant.



THE TARPEIAN ROCK.

At the foot of which Tarpeia was said to be buried, and from which traitors were cast to their death.



## LESSON LVI

### REVIEW

*Ab ovo usque ad mala.* — “*From soup to nuts.*” \*

**381. Derivatives.** — Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following :

persuādeō  
senātor

prohibeō  
legō

negō  
dēligō

**382. Form Drill.** — 1. Give the formula for making each subjunctive tense, active and passive, in each of the four regular conjugations. 2. Conjugate **possum** and **capiō** through the subjunctive.



A GERMAN BODYGUARD.

**383. Syntax Drill.** — 1. Name the *principal* tenses in the indicative and in the subjunctive. 2. Name the *historical* tenses in the indicative and in the subjunctive. 3. Give the rule for the sequence of tenses. 4. How do we express purpose? 5. What case and mood follow **imperō**? 6. Complete this English sentence to express a

\* Horace. Literally: *from the egg as far as to the apples*, in allusion to the Roman custom of beginning a meal with egg and ending with apples.



purpose: *He used weapons.* When the sentence is written in Latin, with what word will the clause be introduced? What subjunctive tense must be used and why?

#### EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

**384.** 1. Rēs publica ab omnibus bonīs cīvibus laudābitur. 2. Manibus puer parvus multās et pulchrās rēs fēcīt. 3. Tertiae legiōnī imperant, nē novissimum agmen hostium oppugnet. 4. Scīmus Germānōs vīribus Gallōs superāvisse. 5. Helvētiī mīlia passuum centum iter fēcērunt. 6. Iter longum fuerat, et mīlītēs dēfessī erant. 7. Posterō diē cōpiae hostium urbem reliquērunt et ad oppidum vērērunt. 8. Omnēs cōpiās in castra remīsīt nē ab hostibus interficerentur. 9. Imperātor mīlitibus imperāvit ut diū atque ācriter pugnārent. 10. Mitam adulēscētem ad mare.

#### ROBERT, KING OF SCOTS. I

Robertus, Scōtōrum rēx, bellum cum Britannīs nōn prōsperē primō gerēbat. Erant enim in castrīs hostium multī Scōtī, quī ob prīvātā invidiam Britannīs auxilium dabant; ex quibus ūnus (*one of whom*) cōstituit Robertum capere per canem quem (*which*) ā rēge accēperat. Robertus forte, quem (*whom*) hostēs maiōribus cōpiīs circumveniēbant, mīlītēs fugā (*in flight*) in omnēs partēs discēdere iusserat.

Cum ūnō comite sē in silvīs abdidit.<sup>1</sup> At hostēs cane ductī (*led*) rēgis perfugium facile invēnērunt. Rēx autem lātrātū canis admonitus (*warned*) per alveum flūminis duo mīlia passuum ambulāvit; quō cōsiliō (*by this plan*) servātus est. Nam canis, quī vēstīgia dominī terrā cognōscere poterat, aquā falsus est.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> sē abdidit, *hid (himself)*.

<sup>2</sup> From fallō.

## LESSON LVII

### DEPONENT VERBS

*Iucundius est carere quam frui. — It is more blessed to give than to receive.\**

**385. Deponent<sup>1</sup> Verbs** have passive forms with active meanings. These verbs are found in each of the four regular conjugations and are distinguished by the ending of the present infinitive: **-ārī, -ērī, -ī, -irī.**

(a) A deponent verb has a few *active forms*; the future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund, and supines. The gerundive always has a *passive meaning*; the perfect passive participle, sometimes.

### 386.

#### VOCABULARY

<b>cō'nor, -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum,</b> (with infin.) <i>try, attempt.</i>	<b>po'tior, -ī'rī, -ī'tus sum,</b> <i>get possession of.</i>
<b>fru'or, fru'ī, frūc'tus sum,</b> <i>enjoy.</i>	<b>proficīs'cor, proficīs'cī, profec'tus sum,</b> <i>set out.</i>
<b>mo'ror,<sup>2</sup> -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum,</b> <i>delay.</i>	<b>se'quor, se'quī, secū'tus sum,</b> <i>follow.</i>
<b>pa'tior, pa'tī, pas'sus sum,</b> (with infin.) <i>suffer, permit, allow.</i>	<b>ū'tor, ū'tī, ū'sus sum,</b> <i>use.</i>
<b>polli'ceor, -ē'rī, -itus sum,</b> (with fut. infin.) <i>promise.</i>	<b>ve'reor, -ē'rī, -itus sum,</b> <i>fear, be afraid.</i>

**387. What Latin words do the following suggest?**

patient                  sequel                  use                  revere

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

#### EXERCISES ON FORMS

**388. Translate:**

(a) 1. Verēbimur, potiēmur, ūtiminī, morābimur, pollicēberis. 2. Sequeris, sequēris, verētur, potiētur. 3. Patiē-

\* Cicero. Literally: *It is more pleasant to lack than to enjoy.*

<sup>1</sup> Deponent verbs are so named because they *lay aside* the active forms.

<sup>2</sup> Do not confuse this with **morior, morī, mortuus sum,** *to die.*

bar, morātus est, potīrī, sequī. 4. Proficīscar, proficīscētur, ūtitur, ūtī, fruī. 5. Frūctus sum, cōnātus eram, patiebātur.

(b) 1. To fear, he will have set out, I shall use, we promise. 2. He was getting possession of, they will follow, I use. 3. We shall follow, they had enjoyed, you were trying. 4. To follow, we set out, he will follow, I shall permit. 5. They will use, to delay, they allowed, we had read.

#### RULE

**389. Deponents with the Ablative.** — The verbs *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and their compounds, regularly govern the ablative case.

*We enjoy good books. Bonīs librīs fruimur.*

*The soldier uses a sword. Miles gladiō ūtitur.*

#### EXERCISES

##### 390. Translate:

(a) 1. Cōnābimur castrīs potīrī. 2. Gladiō optimē ūteris. 3. Multī virī frūmentō vīvunt. 4. Imperātor pollicitus est peditēs victōriā fructūrōs esse. 5. Putant trēs virōs tōtius Galliae imperiō potīrī posse.

(b) 1. Proficīscuntur ut senātōrēs videant. 2. Equitēs mīlia passuum multa hostēs secūtī sunt. 3. Ad urbem iter facimus nē senātōrēs impetūs hostium vereantur. 4. Morātī sumus in urbe tōtam noctem. 5. Pater adulēscētī imperāvit ut liberōs librōs bonōs legere paterētur.

##### 391. Translate:

(a) 1. All had set out at daybreak. 2. We shall follow the enemy many miles. 3. The Romans used very many recruits. 4. We tried to keep the enemy from the march. 5. Many women enjoy beautiful pictures.

(b) 1. Caesar got possession of the larger part of the enemy's horses. 2. We promised that the ambassador would be at



SPRING — AN ANCIENT FESTIVAL.



Rome late in the day. 3. We shall delay at Rome as long as possible. 4. The senator persuaded the general to allow the army to follow the enemy. 5. The commander-in-chief will get possession of all Gaul.

## ORAL EXERCISE

**392.** *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Cūr telō ūtēbāris? 2. Quid verēberis? 3. Quam diū morātī sunt? 4. Cūr proficiscēmur? 5. Pollicēbāturne lēgātum ducem secūtūrum esse?

## ROBERT, KING OF SCOTS. II

Duās hōrās in silvā errant rēx comesque fidēlis. Tandem trēs virōs armātōs vident. Rēx famē cōfectus (*overcome*) hospitium petit. Ad casam dūcitur, ā latrōnibus (nam latrōnēs erant trēs virī) benignē cēnā accipitur.<sup>1</sup> Post cēnam rēx somnō sēsē (*himself*) dedit.

Comitem, quī diligenter vigilāre ā rēge iussus erat, somnus impediēbat. Tum latrōnēs partem casae petiērunt ubi Robertus comesque dormiēbant.

Rēx, quī leviter dormiēbat, adventum latrōnum audīvit, gladiumque cēpit. Hīc atrōciter pugnātum est, rēx enim gladiō ūnum latrōnem trānsfixit; at comes rēgis ā latrōnibus interfectus est.

Tum rēx irā et dolōre incēnsus (*inflamed*), quod gladium ē corpore latrōnis trahere nōn poterat, face ārdentī secundī latrōnis caput elisit. Ubi id (*that*) vīdit tertius, morte comitum perterritus fugam temptāvit. Nec tamen ē periculō ēvāsīt, ā rēge enim mortālī vulnere cōfectus est.

---

<sup>1</sup> *is entertained at (by) dinner.*

## LESSON LVIII

### SUBJECTIVE AND OBJECTIVE GENITIVES. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

---

*Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori. — Sweet and seemly it is to die for one's country.*

---

**393.** Some Latin nouns with verbal ideas have genitives depending upon them. **Amor**, *love*, has the verbal idea of **amō**, *I love*; **timor**, *fear*, has the verbal idea of **timeō**, *I fear*.

*The love of mother*, **amor mātis**, may mean that *the mother loves*. Then *mother* would be the subject of *loves*, and **mātis** would be called a subjective genitive. But if it means that *some one loves his mother*, then *mother* is the object of *loves* and **mātis** is called an objective genitive.

#### RULES

**394. Subjective Genitive.** — The genitive may be used to express the *subject* of the action implied in the noun on which it depends. This is called a *subjective genitive*.

*The fears of the children*, **timōrēs liberōrum**.

**395. Objective Genitive.** — The genitive may be used to express the *object* of the action implied in the noun on which it depends. This is called the *objective genitive*.

*The love of country*, **amor patriae**.

**396. Genitive with Adjectives.** — With adjectives signifying desire, knowledge, familiarity, memory, participation, power, fullness, and their opposites, the genitive is used to limit the extent of their application.

*Eager for (of) war*, **cupidus bellī**.

(a) The genitive is often used with **similis**, *like*, when the reference is to living objects.

*He is like his father*, **Patris similis est**.



## 397.

## VOCABULARY

adven'tus, -ūs, m., arrival.

a'mor, -ō'ris, m., love.

cupi'ditās, -ā'tis, f., eagerness,  
desire.

cu'pidus, -a, -um, eager, desirous.

iniū'ria, -ae, f., injury, wrong.

ino'pia, -ae, f., want, scarcity.

lī'bertās, -ā'tis, f., freedom, lib-  
erty.

plē'nus, -a, -um, full.

398. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

injurious      amorous      plenipotentary      adventure

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

## EXERCISES

399. *Translate, giving the construction of each noun:*

(a) 1. Adventū Caesaris hostēs veritī sunt. 2. Castra militum plēna erant. 3. Inopiā omnium rērum spem amīsit. 4. Cupidī erant pācis. 5. Puer patris similis virtūte erat.

(b) 1. Timor exercitūs Rōmānī hostibus potiēbātur. 2. Puerī amor mātis maior quam patris est. 3. Intelleximus spem praemī esse maximam. 4. Imperātor inopiā frūmentī militibus imperāvit ut iter facerent. 5. Dē adventū adulēscētis certiōrēs factī erant.



JUNO.

Juno, the Greek Hera, was the wife of Jupiter and queen of the gods.

400. *Translate:*

(a) 1. We cannot read one hundred books in one year.

2. We promise that the infantry, full of courage and eager for victory, will set out at daybreak. 3. A Roman's love of liberty was very great. 4. The Germans had great desire

for war. 5. We tried to follow the enemy that we might kill (their) leader.

(b) 1. Caesar thought that the injury to the state was very small. 2. Life is full of dangers. 3. At the arrival of the Belgians the Romans delayed. 4. Hope of victory has been lost. 5. The children had great fear of death.

#### ORAL EXERCISE

**401.** Ask five questions in Latin. (One student should ask the question and another one answer it.)



THE LITTLE THEATER AT POMPEII.

This is called the little comic theater and is one of the best-preserved Roman *theaters*, as distinguished from the arenas or amphitheaters. It had a roof and was probably used for musical performances.

The first four tiers were reserved for the chairs of the aristocracy. Above the parapet, part of which may be seen at the left of the picture back of the fourth tier, were the seats of the common people. In this theater they were so wide that there was ample foot-room without inconveniencing those in the row ahead.

## LESSON LIX

### SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT

---

*Verbum sat sapienti. — A word to the wise is sufficient.\**

---

**402.** **Result** is expressed by the subjunctive introduced by *ut*. *Negative result* is introduced by *ut . . . nōn*. The main clause often contains *tantus*, *so great*, *sic*, *ita*, *tam*, *so*, or some word of similar meaning. The rule for sequence of tenses, § 376, should be followed.

*The boy was so good that he was loved. Puer tam bonus erat ut amārētur.*

*Caesar's courage was such that he could not be conquered. Virtūs Caesaris tanta erat ut vincī nōn posset.*

(a) In purpose and result clauses if *that* means *in order that*, the clause is purpose ; if *that* means *so that*, the clause is result.

### 403.

### VOCABULARY

**Brū'tus**, -ī, m., *Brutus*.

**cūs'tōs**, -ō'dis, m., *guard, watch, keeper*.

**impedīmen'tum**, -ī, n., *hindrance*; pl., *heavy baggage*.

**suspī'ciō**, -ō'nis, f., *suspicion*.

**fu'giō**, -ere, fū'gī, —, *flee*.

**an'te**, prep., (with acc.) *before*.

**an'te**, adv., *before, ago*.

**pau'lō**, adv., (of degree of difference) *by a little, a little*.

**pau'lum**, adv., *a little, somewhat*.

**tan'tus**, -a, -um, *so great, such*.

**i'ta**, adv., *so (manner)*.

**tam**, adv., *so (degree)*.

**plū'rimum pos'se**, *to be most powerful, to have great influence*.

**404.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

custodian      fugitive      impediment      suspicious

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

\* This is sometimes abbreviated: **verb. sat** or **verb. sap.**

## RULES

**405. Adverbial Accusative.** — The accusative is often used adverbially to express degree or extent.

*He is very powerful.* **Plūrimum potest.**

*The teacher praised the girl much.* **Magister puellam multum laudāvit.**

**406. Adverbial Ablative.** — The ablative is often used adverbially, usually to express degree of difference.<sup>1</sup>

*A little before.* **Paulō ante.**

*He is much braver.* **Multō fortior est.**

## EXERCISES

**407.** *Translate; give the reason for the mood and tense of each verb:*

(a) 1. Paulō ante domī eram. 2. Rēgēs plūrimum poterant. 3. Ante sōlis<sup>2</sup> occāsum paulum legēmus. 4. Nihil tam malum est ut peius esse nōn possit. 5. Tēlis ita ūsī sunt ut ūnum ex hostibus interficerent.

(b) 1. Bene pugnāre cōnātur ut ā duce bonō laudētur. 2. Suspīciōne servum liberāvimus ut vitā fruerētur. 3. Brūtō nūntiāre cōnātus est impedimenta hostium capta esse. 4. Tantus timor mortis omnēs cūstōdēs occupāvit ut tēlis nōn ūterentur. 5. Lēgātī perīculum tam timuērunt ut exercitum relinquerent et fugerent.

**408.** *Translate:*

(a) 1. The bravest are the most powerful. 2. Did you know that the enemy had fled a little while ago? 3. The bravery of the Romans was so great that they could not be conquered. 4. The boy read so that no one could understand (him). 5. The guard saw such danger that he did not allow the women to leave the town.

<sup>1</sup> Compare § 272.

<sup>2</sup> Subjective genitive.





THE COURT OF A ROMAN HOUSE.



(b) 1. The soldiers were so full of courage that they easily conquered the forces of the Helvetians. ~~2.~~ They denied that the right wing of the army had fled from the top of the hill. 3. The citizens tried to flee from the fire. 4. They used the swords so well that they killed many of the enemy. ~~5.~~ The leader promised that the cohorts would not delay, but would take possession of the enemy's heavy baggage.

## ORAL EXERCISE

409. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Estne puer tam bonus ut ab omnibus amētur? 2. Num Caesar impedimentis potiēbātur? 3. Nōne Caesar apud (among) Rōmānōs plūrimum potuit? 4. Fugiēbatne Rōmā suspiciōne? 5. Quam longē exercitum sequēris?

## DOMUS RŌMĀNA

Pīctūram Rōmānae domūs vidēmus. Ante iānuam erat vēstibulum. Mōs erat ut in limine "Salvē<sup>1</sup>" scriberent.

Iānitor ad iānuam saepe stābat. Ibi canis saepe erat aut in solō pīctūra canis cum verbis "Cāvē<sup>2</sup> canem" vidērī poterat. Super iānuam erat scriptum, "Nihil intret<sup>3</sup> malī."

Interior domus in trēs partēs dīvīsa est. Prīma pars appellāta est ātrium. Ibi in mediō tēctō apertum spatium relīctum est. Pluvia per locum in impluvium dēscendēbat. In ātriō dominus suōs amīcōs accipiēbat. Pariēs pīctūrīs montium, animālium et virōrum atque fēminārum pulchrē ōrnātus est. In tablīnō, quod (*which*) ātriō proximū erat, dominus tabulās familiārēs et pecūniam servāvit.

Tertia pars domūs et pulcherrima erat peristȳlium. Hic pulchrī flōrēs et fontēs columnīs marmoreīs inclūsī sunt. Inter tablīnum et peristȳlium vēlum erat. Sī domus fenestrās habēbat, in superiōre parte parietis erant et parvae.

---

<sup>1</sup> Imperative of *salvēō*.    <sup>2</sup> Imperative of *cavēō*.    <sup>3</sup> Subjunctive to express a mild command. *Let no evil (nothing of evil) enter.*



## LESSON LX

### REVIEW

---

*Amicus certus in re incerta cernitur. — A friend in need is a friend indeed.\**

---

**410. Derivatives.** — Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following :

adventus	impedimentum	iniūria	patior
suspīciō	plēnus	sequor	fugiō
cūstōs	amor	ūtor	cupidus

**411. Form Drill.** — 1. Define a deponent verb. 2. Conjugate **sequor** through the indicative and subjunctive moods.

**412. Syntax Drill.** — 1. Distinguish between a subjective and an objective genitive. 2. Give an example of each. 3. What verbs govern the ablative case? 4. How is result expressed? 5. How is negative purpose introduced? negative result? 6. **Imperātor tam celeriter venit ut hostēs impedimentīs potīrī nōn possint.** Change **venit** to **vēnit** and complete the sentence.

### 413. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

1. Militēs multōs diēs circum oppidum morābuntur.
2. Liber tam gravis erat ut ā puerō parvō portārī nōn posset.
3. Tanta cupiditās libertātis est ut servī adventū exercitūs nōn fugiant sed quam fortissimē pugnent.
4. Rēgis amor pācis tantus erat ut proeliō militēs prohibēre cōnārētur.
5. Imperātor primā lūce proficiscētur et milia passuum multa iter faciet.

---

\* Ennius. Literally: *A sure friend is seen in an uncertain affair.*

## LESSON LXI

### RELATIVE PRONOUN

*Qui non proficit, deficit. — Who does not advance, falls behind.*

414. The relative pronoun <sup>1</sup> is declined as follows :

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM. NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cu'ius	cu'ius	cu'ius	quō'rum	quā'rum quō'rum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	qui'bus	qui'bus qui'bus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	qui'bus	qui'bus qui'bus

415.

### VOÇABULARY

fu'ga, -ae, f., *flight*.

profec'tiō, -ō'nis, f., *departure*.

tū'tus, -a, -um, *safe*.

quī, quae, quod, relative pronoun, *who, which, that*.

i'bi, adv., *there*.

in'colō, -ere, -uī, (intrans.)<sup>2</sup> *live, dwell*; (trans.) *inhabit*.

po'puloꝛ, -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum, *lay waste, devastate*.

vi'deor, -ē'rī, vī'sus sum, *seem, appear*.

416. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

depopulate      suspicion      scribe      transpose

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

### RULE

417. **Agreement of the Relative.** — A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case is determined by its use in its own clause.

*I saw the man who came.* Virum quī vēnit vīdī.

*The city which you see is Rome.* Urbs quam vidēs Rōma est.

(a) Notice that quī in the first example is masculine gender, singular number, third person, like its antecedent virum, but it is *nominative*

<sup>1</sup> See §§ 602 and 604.

<sup>2</sup> See §§ 623 and 624.

case because it is the subject of the verb **vēnit**. In the second example the pronoun **quam** is feminine gender, singular number, third person, to agree with its antecedent **urbs**, but *accusative* because it is the object of the verb **vidēs**.

### EXERCISES

**418.** *Translate, giving the reason for the gender, number, and case of each relative pronoun:*

(a) 1. Loca ad quae properāvimus tūta erant. 2. Vidērunt cūstōdem cuius amīcus ex urbe missus erat. 3. Cūstōs cui



HOUSE OF THE VETTI, POMPEII.

This is perhaps the most interesting house in Pompeii. Its many wall-paintings are unusually well preserved. Some may be seen in the picture, covered with glass to protect them. The kitchen gives some idea of the way the Romans prepared their food. Compare this with the picture on page 137.

periculum nūntiātum erat verērī vīsus est. 4. Pater virī dē quō dixit multōs annōs Rōmae incoluit. 5. Profectiō hostium fugae simillima vidētur.

(b) 1. Ad amicum litterās quās scripsī mīsi. 2. Ad flūmen quod est in extrēmīs hostium fīnibus properāvit atque ibi castra posuit. 3. Militēs missī sunt quī<sup>1</sup> finēs Gallōrum populārentur. 4. Militēs ā quibus castra mūnīta sunt ad urbem venient. 5. Caesar per nūntiōs certior factus est trēs partēs cōpiārum trāns flūmen esse, quārtam partem in castrīs relīctam esse.

#### 419. *Translate :*

(a) 1. I heard that Caesar had come, had seen, had conquered. 2. We saw the men by whom the heavy baggage had been captured. 3. The boy whom I see is much better than (his) sister. 4. I followed the slave to whom the master had given very many gifts. 5. The city was not safe on account of the flight of the army.

(b) 1. We had delayed the departure of the enemy many days. 2. The Romans so laid waste the territory of their enemies that nothing was left. 3. They tried to make peace with Caesar in order that their fields might not be destroyed and their children killed. 4. They say that brave men are often very powerful and have gained possession of many large cities. 5. I heard the things about which Caesar had been informed by his lieutenant.

#### ORAL EXERCISE

#### 420. *Answer these questions in Latin :*

1. Fuitne Caesaris profectiō similis fugae? 2. Esne puer quem Rōmae vidī? 3. Ubi legiōnēs Rōmānae erant? 4. Quibus fābulam nārrāvistī? 5. Vidistīne impedīmenta quibus imperātor potītus est?

---

<sup>1</sup> Quī is often equivalent to ut and a personal pronoun.

## LESSON LXII

### INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

*Quis custodiet ipsos custodes?—Who will watch the watchmen themselves?\**

**421.** The interrogative pronouns<sup>1</sup> are the substantive, **quis**, *who?* and the adjective, **quī**, *what?*

**Quis, who?**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>quis</b>	<b>quid</b>	<b>quī</b>	<b>quae</b>	<b>quae</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>cu'ius</b>	<b>cu'ius</b>	<b>quō'rum</b>	<b>quā'rum</b>	<b>quō'rum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>cui</b>	<b>cui</b>	<b>qui'bus</b>	<b>qui'bus</b>	<b>qui'bus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>quem</b>	<b>quid</b>	<b>quōs</b>	<b>quās</b>	<b>quae</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>quō</b>	<b>quō</b>	<b>qui'bus</b>	<b>qui'bus</b>	<b>qui'bus</b>

(a) The interrogative adjective **quī** is declined like the relative pronoun **quī**, § 414.

### 422.

#### VOCABULARY

**quis, quid**, interrogative pronoun, *who? what?*

**quī, quae, quod**, interrogative adjective, *what?*

**Rho'danus, -ī**, m., *the Rhone*.

**num**, interrogative particle, *whether*, when used in indirect questions.

**dīc**, (imperative), *tell*.

**quamo'brem**, adv., *why?*

**et . . . et**, both . . . and.

**quae'rō, -ere, quaesī'vī, quae-sī'tus**, *ask, seek*. It takes the acc. of the thing and the abl. of the person with **ē, ex, ā, ab**, or **dē**.

**423.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

question                  dictate                  benediction                  intervene

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

\* Juvenal.

<sup>1</sup> Compare § 605.

## RULE

**424. Indirect Questions.** — An indirect question follows a verb of knowing, asking, and the like, and is a subordinate clause introduced by an interrogative word.<sup>1</sup> It is expressed by the subjunctive.

## DIRECT QUESTION

*Where were they?*

**Ubi erant?**

*Where are you?*

**Ubi es?**

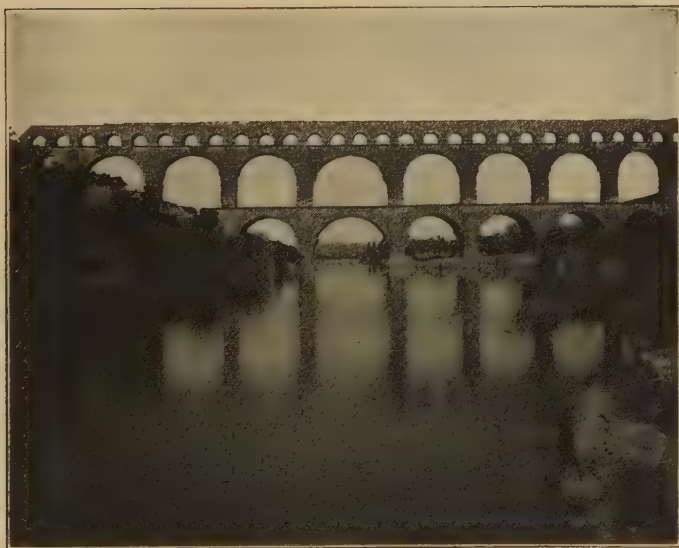
## INDIRECT QUESTION

*He heard where they were.*

**Audīvit ubi essent.**

*He knows where you are.*

**Scit ubi sis.**



A ROMAN AQUEDUCT IN GAUL.

This furnished water to Nemausus (Nîmes), the amphitheater of which is shown on pages 5 and 12.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare §§ 605 and 648.

## EXERCISES

425. *Translate:*<sup>1</sup>

(a) 1. Sciō quis veniat, quis vēnerit. 2. Scīvit quis veniret, quis vēnisset. 3. Quaesīvit cui liber datus esset. 4. Quaeram ā Caesare cūr paulō fortius nōn pugnāverīs. 5. Audīvī quot hominēs Galliam incolerent.

(b) 1. Quid fēcerat? 2. Quaesīvit ā Gallīs quamobrem Rōmam vēnissent. 3. Quī militēs tam bene pugnābunt ut hostium finēs populentur? 4. Quaerēbat num Gallī trāns Rhodanum incolerent. 5. Multō diē Caesarī per explorātōrēs nūntiātum est et montem ā militibus Rōmānīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse.

426. *Translate:*

(a) 1. We do not know who<sup>2</sup> inhabited the cities of Gaul. 2. My friends asked why I had not remained there. 3. We asked Caesar how many men had been killed. 4. Do you know by whom the Gauls were conquered? 5. Did you know that the enemy had fled a little while before?

(b) 1. We shall ask about the children who are delaying in the city but who ought to set out toward home. 2. So great was the fear of the soldiers that they fled and left the heavy baggage. 3. Did you tell your father why you were a little afraid (feared a little)? 4. The lieutenants ordered (their) infantry to use (their) swords as quickly as possible. 5. Before the departure of the guards the young men seemed to be safe.

## ORAL EXERCISE

427. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quis scīvit cūr victus essēs? 2. Quibus tēlis militēs ūtuntur? 3. Quem Rōmae vīdistī? 4. Scīsne quō in locō sīs?

<sup>1</sup> Review the subjunctive forms of each conjugation.

<sup>2</sup> The student must decide whether *who* and *whom* are *relative* or *interrogative pronouns*, for on this fact depends the mood of the following verb.



## THE BEGINNINGS OF ROME

Proca, rēx Albānōrum, Numitōrem et Amūlium filiōs habuit. Numitōrī, quī nātū maior erat, rēgnū relīquit; sed Amūlius frātre m pepulit et rēgnāvit. Postēā Rhēam Silviam, Numitōris filiam, Vestae sacerdotem <sup>1</sup> fēcit, quae tamen Rōmulum et Remum geminōs ēdidit.

Ubi Amūlius rem cognōvit, Rhēam Silviam in vincula coniēcit, et puerōs in Tiberim abiēcit, quī tum forte super rīpās erat effūsus.<sup>2</sup> Sed brevī tempore aqua puerōs in siccō relīquit. Tum lupa, ut fāma est, ad vāgītum cucurrit, puerōs linguā lambit, mātremque sē gessit.<sup>3</sup> Ubi Faustulus, pāstor rēgis rem vīdit, puerōs ad casam portāvit et Accae Lārentiae coniugī dedit.



MARS.

The Roman god of war, Mars, was the father of Romulus and Remus.

<sup>1</sup> Priestesses of Vesta, called "Vestal virgins," were forbidden to marry.

<sup>2</sup> I.e., *had overflowed its banks.*

<sup>3</sup> *sē gessit, conducted herself as, acted as.*

## LESSON LXIII

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS

*Veritas vos liberabit. — The truth shall make you free.\**

**428.** The personal pronouns<sup>1</sup> are **ego** for the first person and **tū** for the second. The personal pronoun of the third person is supplied by the demonstrative **is**. See § 582,(e).

FIRST PERSON		SECOND PERSON	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i> <b>e'go, I.</b>	<b>nōs, we.</b>	<b>tū, you.</b>	<b>vōs, you.</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>me'ī</b>	<b>{ nos'trum</b> <b>{ nos'trī</b>	<b>tu'ī</b>	<b>{ ves'trum</b> <b>{ ves'trī</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>mi'hi</b>	<b>nō'bīs</b>	<b>ti'bi</b>	<b>vō'bīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>mē</b>	<b>nōs</b>	<b>tē</b>	<b>vōs</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <b>mē</b>	<b>nō'bīs</b>	<b>tē</b>	<b>vō'bīs</b>

**429.** The reflexive pronouns<sup>2</sup> refer to the subject of the sentence or of the clause in which they stand. The reflexives of the first and second persons are supplied from the declension of **ego** and **tū**; **meī**, *of myself*, **tuī**, *of yourself*, and so on.

#### Reflexive of the Third Person

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Gen.</i> <b>su'ī</b>	<b>su'ī</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>si'bi</b>	<b>si'bi</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>sē</b> or <b>sē'sē</b>	<b>sē</b> or <b>sē'sē</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <b>sē</b> or <b>sē'sē</b>	<b>sē</b> or <b>sē'sē</b>

(a) The reflexive of the third person serves for all genders and for both numbers. Thus, **suī** may mean *of himself*, *of herself*, *of itself*, *of themselves*.

\* St. Jerome's Bible. Motto of the Johns Hopkins University.

<sup>1</sup> Compare § 603.

<sup>2</sup> Compare § 608.

## 430.

## VOCABULARY

e'go, me'ī, I.

tū, tu'ī, you.

me'ī, of myself.

tu'ī, of yourself.

su'ī, of himself, etc.

dēdi'tiō, -ō'nis, f., surrender.

dē'dō, -ere, dē'didī, dē'ditus,  
(trans.) give up, surrender,  
abandon.respon'deō, -ē're, respon'dī,  
respōn'sus, answer, reply.

ne'que, neither, and not.

431. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

egotism

suicide

respond

vision

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.



THE TEMPLE OF APOLLO AT POMPEII.

## EXERCISE ON FORMS

432. *Translate, distinguishing between the pronouns:*

(a) 1. Tū mē vidēs. 2. Ego tē videō. 3. Vōs nobīscum<sup>1</sup> veniētis. 4. Puella sē vīcit. 5. Vōs nobīs librōs dedistis.

<sup>1</sup> The preposition **cum** is appended to the ablative of personal and reflexive pronouns; usually, to relative and interrogative pronouns.

(b) 1. We saw you. 2. You praised us. 3. We came with you. 4. You told the story to me. 5. The boys praised themselves.

### EXERCISES

**433.** *Translate, telling to which class each of the pronouns belongs:*

(a) 1. Puellae inter sē<sup>1</sup> laudant. 2. Vōbīs maiōra dōna pollicēbimur. 3. Tūne mihi fābulam nārrāvistī? 4. Māter tē semper laudat sed sē semper culpat. 5. Quaesivērunt ā mē quis essem et quō ex locō vēnissem.

(b) 1. Lēgātīs respondit sē pācem factūrum esse. 2. Ante prīmam lūcem hostēs sē dēdidērunt. 3. Respondēs tē duci persuāsūrum esse ut paulum morētūr. 4. Ego<sup>2</sup> et tū quārēmus quamobrem dēditionem fēcērunt. 5. Caesarem certiorē faciant agrōs ab Helvētiīs vāstātōs esse neque sē ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre posse.

**434.** *Translate, expressing all the pronouns:*

(a) 1. The general responds that he will not surrender. 2. In what city did we see you a little while ago? 3. I know who you are, and you know who I am. 4. You have been good children, and I shall give you a beautiful gift. 5. You told us about Caesar's love of war.

(b) 1. The soldiers praise each other and do not (make a) surrender. 2. The city extends three miles in length. 3. We boys are a little younger than you girls. 4. The lieutenant promised that he would get possession of the camp of the enemy. ~~5.~~ The senator about whose surrender we had heard responded a little concerning himself.

---

<sup>1</sup> Each other.

<sup>2</sup> Notice the order of personal pronouns in Latin: first, second, third. The personal pronoun as subject is expressed only when there is emphasis or contrast.

## ORAL EXERCISE

435. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Cūr tū melior es quam ego? 2. Tūne tē saepe laudās?  
 3. Quis vōbīs dōna dedit? 4. Quī discipulī ā magistrō  
 laudātī sunt? 5. Num tē  
 dēdēs?

## ROMULUS AND REMUS

Rōmulus et Remus ā Faustulō et Accā Lārentiā educābantur. Lūdierīs certāminibus inter pāstōrēs vīrēs auxērunt, et latrōnēs ā rapīnā pecorum arcēre coopērunt. Latrōnēs igitur cōnsilium cēpērunt ut iuvenēs aut ē terrā expellerent<sup>1</sup> aut interficerent.

Remus captus est, sed Rōmulus ē perīculō praesentī<sup>2</sup> sē ēripuit. Tum Faustulus necessāriā rē coāctus<sup>3</sup> Rōmulum docuit quis avus esset. Rōmulus statim cum pāstōribus armātīs Albam properāvit.



A ROMAN ALTAR.

In the lower part of the sculpture are shown Romulus and Remus with the wolf, while at the right the shepherd Faustulus reclines.

Compare this altar with the one on page 102.

<sup>1</sup> formed a plan that they might drive, i.e., planned to drive.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative of the adjective **praesēns**.

<sup>3</sup> **necessāriā rē coāctus**, compelled by necessity.

## LESSON LXIV

### POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

---

*In lumine tuo videbimus lumen. — In thy light we shall see light.\**

---

**436.** The so-called possessive pronouns are merely the adjective forms of the personal and reflexive pronouns.

**me'us, -a, -um,**<sup>1</sup> *my, mine.*

**nos'ter, -tra, -trum,** *our, ours.*

**tu'us, -a, -um,** *your, yours* (belonging to one person).

**ves'ter, -tra, -trum,** *your, yours* (belonging to more than one).

**su'us, -a, -um,** *his, her, hers, its, their, theirs.*

(a) The possessive pronouns are all declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions, and, like adjectives, they agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

### 437.

#### VOCABULARY

**me'us, -a, -um,** *my, mine.*

**nos'ter, -tra, -trum,** *our, ours.*

**tu'us, -a, -um,** *your, yours.*

**ves'ter, -tra, -trum,** *your, yours.*

**su'us, -a, -um,** *his, her, their.*

**prae'fī'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus,**  
*place over, or in command of.*

**praepō'nō, -ere, -po'suī, -itus,**  
*place in command of.*

**prae'stō, -ā're, -stitī, -stitus,**  
*excel, surpass.*

**prae'sum, -es'se, -fuī,** *have com-*  
*mand of, be at the head of.*

**super'sum, -es'se, -fuī,** *be left*  
*over, survive.*

**438.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

preposition      applaud      benefactor      riparian

(a) Define, and use each word in an English sentence.

#### RULES

**439. Gender of Possessives.** — The gender of a possessive pronoun depends not upon the gender of the person

---

\* The motto of Columbia University.

<sup>1</sup> Voc. sing. masc. **mī.**

to whom it refers, but upon the gender of the word it modifies.

*Marcus loves his mother.* **Mārcus mātrem suam amat.**

*Julia loves her mother.* **Iūlia mātrem suam amat.**

*Julia loves her father.* **Iūlia patrem suum amat.**

**440. Dative with Compounds.**—The dative is used with many verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, **super**, and sometimes **circum**.

*Brutus was in command of the ships.* **Brūtus nāvibus praeerat.**

(a) But if the verb which forms part of the compound is transitive, it may take a direct object in the accusative. This may be either in addition to the dative taken by the compound as a whole, or without it.

*He placed Brutus in command of the ships.* **Brūtum nāvibus prae-  
posuit.**

*Brutus sent the ships ahead.* **Brūtus nāvēs praemīsīt.**

### EXERCISES

#### 441. *Translate:*

- (a) 1. Caesar exercituī praefuit. 2. Rōmānī omnibus virtūte praestitērunt. 3. Nāvibus longīs Brūtum praefēcīt. 4. Laudābiminī, puerī,<sup>1</sup> et ā mātrem vestrā et ā magistrō vestrō. 5. Deī comitēs nostrī semper sunt et rēbus hominum praesunt.

- (b) 1. Imperātor castrīs quae ad rīpam flūminis posita erant Mārcum praeposuit. 2. Dīxērunt peditēs suōs paulum morātōs esse. 3. Nostrī<sup>2</sup> oppidum fortius oppugnāverant quam vestrī. 4. Centum ex equitibus superfuērunt neque sē dēdērunt. 5. Dīcēbant sē bene fēcisse neque vōs suōs agrōs vāstāre dēbēre.

<sup>1</sup> The vocative, the case of address, has the same form as the nominative except in the singular of nouns of the second declension ending in **-us**, where the vocative ends in **-e**.

<sup>2</sup> The possessive is often used substantively; as, **nostrī**, *our men*.



**442. Translate:**

(a) 1. I am in command of myself. 2. The girl excels her brother in courage. 3. Who made the war-ships?

4. The general responded that he had placed a youth in command of the forces. 5. The mother asked her brave son why he did not use his sword.



A ROMAN SLINGER.

(b) 1. We asked why they had not sent aid to us. 2. Our faithful lieutenant had been placed in charge of the heavy baggage. 3. We have informed Caesar that our army will make an attack on the enemy at daybreak. 4. Why did our senator not tell us about the surrender a little while ago? 5. My sister and your brother are

friends of the man who has command of the infantry.

**ORAL EXERCISE****443. Answer these questions in Latin:**

1. Quis legiōnī praeerat? 2. Tūne exercituī Brūtum prae-  
pōnēs? 3. Quī discipulus aliīs praestitit? 4. Suntne tuī  
amicī meliōrēs quam mei? 5. Nōne nostrī vōbīs virtūte  
praestant?

## LESSON LXV

### REVIEW

*Aquila non capit muscas. — The eagle does not catch flies.*

**444. Derivatives.** — Write all the English words you can which seem to be derived from the following :

fuga	respondeō	ego	populor
quaerō	praeſiciō	praepōnō	dīc

**445. Form Drill.** — 1. How does the reflexive pronoun differ from the personal? 2. How does the interrogative pronoun differ from the relative in declension? 3. Give the Latin for *Who are you? What man is in the city?* 4. Decline *quī, ego, tuus, suī, quis.* 5. When do we use *tuus* and when *vester*?

**446. Syntax Drill.** — (a) 1. With what compound verbs is the dative used? 2. In what does a relative pronoun agree with its antecedent? 3. What determines the gender of a possessive pronoun? 4. How can you recognize an indirect question?

(b) Give the Latin for :

1. We saw the man who had been conquered.
2. We heard who had been conquered.
3. We heard that the man had been conquered.
4. The man fights that he may not be conquered.
5. The man fought so bravely that he was not conquered.

### THE DEATH OF AMULIUS

Intereā latrōnēs ad Amūlium rēgem pervēnērunt et Remum vehementer incūsāvērunt. Cupiēbant dēmōnstrāre Remum

agrōs Numitōris infēstāre solēre.<sup>1</sup> Itaque Remus ā rēge Numitōrī ad supplicium trāditus est.

Ubi vērō Numitor Remī vultum cōsiderāvit et aetātem cognōvit, paene nepōtem agnōvit. Nam Remus mātī simillimus erat. Dum Numitor dubitat, subitō Rōmulus adest, frā-trem liberat, Amūlium interfecit, avum Numitōrem in rēgnum restituit.



THE ARCH OF CONSTANTINE.

This triumphal arch stood close to the Colosseum. The pile at the right is the ruin of the fountain in which the gladiators are said to have bathed after their combats in the arena.

---

<sup>1</sup> *that Remus was accustomed to . . .*

## LESSON LXVI

### FERŌ AND ITS COMPOUNDS

*Qui transtulit sustinet. — He who has brought us across (the sea) sustains us.\**

**447.** Learn the conjugation of *ferō* in the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive, active and passive, § 593.

**448.**

#### VOCABULARY

<i>fe'rō, fer're, tu'lī, lā'tus, bear, carry.</i>	<i>in'ferō, infer're, in'tulī, illā'tus, bring in, upon or against.</i>
<i>cōn'ferō,<sup>1</sup> cōnfer're, cōn'tulī, collā'tus, bring together, collect; (with sē) betake one's self.</i>	<i>bel'lum infer're, to make war (on). sig'na infer're, to advance.</i>
<i>dif'ferō, differ're, dis'tulī, dīlā'tus, scatter; differ.</i>	<i>expug'nō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, take by storm.</i>
<i>ef'ferō, effer're, ex'tulī, ēlā'tus, bring out, carry away.</i>	<i>Rhē'nus, -ī, m., the Rhine. -que, conj., and (always appended to another word which in construction belongs after it).</i>

**449.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

transfer          conference          infer          differ

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

#### EXERCISES ON FORMS

**450.** *Translate:*

(a) 1. *Fers, fertur, lātus erit, feram.*    2. *Distulit, differet, differimus, distulerō.*    3. *Intulistī, inferent, intulerat.*  
4. *Collātī erant, feruntur, fert, ferris.*    5. *Tulērunt, infert, tulistī, cōnferam.*

---

\* The motto of Connecticut.

<sup>1</sup> Notice the way the accent of the principal parts of compounds of *ferō* swings back and forth like a pendulum.

(b) 1. We differ, he will bring in. 2. They had carried out, we collect, you (*sing.*) carry. 3. They will have collected, he is carried. 4. They had differed, you (*plur.*) have carried. 5. We shall scatter, they advanced.



A VIEW OF THE RHINE.

The Rhine separated the Germans from the Gauls. When Caesar invaded Germany he built a famous bridge across the river. A drawing of this bridge as reconstructed from his description is seen on page 233.

#### EXERCISES

##### 451. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Scīmus Caesarem Germānīs bellum intulisse. 2. Inter sē linguā lēgibusque differunt. 3. Trāns Rhēnum sē cōferent nē ā cōpiīs Rōmānōrum vincī possint. 4. Decima legiō signa infert et urbem expugnat. 5. Sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt.

(b) 1. Quis castrīs praeest? 2. Rōmānī cum Germānīs bellum gessērunt. 3. Iniūriās rēgis malī ferre nōn possumus.

4. Galliae bellum inferēmus. 5. Nostrī virtūte Gallis prae-  
stitērunt et fortissimī vīsī sunt.

**452. Translate:**

(a) 1. They collected all their weapons into the towns.  
2. Brutus made war on his enemies. 3. The infantry and  
the cavalry differ from each other. 4. We marched many  
miles that we might make war on the chiefs. 5. The leader  
ordered the van to advance and kill the enemy or scatter  
(them).

(b) 1. The auxiliary troops were placed on the left wing.  
2. The king said that the captive had been carried away.  
3. We asked who he was and why he had come. 4. The  
Gauls who dwelt across the Rhine surrendered to their con-  
queror. 5. They could not bring aid to their men.

ORAL EXERCISE

**453. Answer these questions in Latin:**

1. Habēsne magnum timōrem mortis? 2. Nōne militēs  
signa inferent? 3. Centuriōne interfectus erat? 4. Cūr  
animālia omnēs in partēs ferēbantur? 5. Quibus Rōmānī  
bellum intulērunt?

THE NAMING OF ROME

Deinde Rōmulus et Remus urbem in locīs ubi expositi  
ēducātique erant condidērunt. Sed contentiō orta est uter  
nōmen novae urbī daret.<sup>1</sup> Auspicia adhibēre cōstituērunt.  
Remus prior sex vulturēs, Rōmulus postea duodecim vīdit.

Sic Rōmulus victor urbem Rōmam vocāvit. Deinde mūrōs  
exstruere cōnātus est. Remus mūrōs inrīdēns (*mocking*) saltū  
trāiēcit. Tum Rōmulus irātus frātre interfēcit et sōlus im-  
periō potītus est.

---

<sup>1</sup> a dispute (as to) which should give.

## LESSON LXVII

### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

---

*Semper eadem. — Always the same.\**

---

**454.** The demonstrative pronouns point out an object; they are used either substantively or adjectively. They are :

**hic**, *this* (near me).

**iste**, *that* (near you).

**ille**, *that* (remote from both speaker and one addressed).

**is**, *that* (often used as the personal pronoun of the third

person).

**idem**, *the same*.

(a) The first three are often called demonstratives of the first, second, and third persons.

**455.** The intensive pronoun is **ipse**, *self*.

(a) Learn the declension of **hic**, **iste**, **ille**, **is**, **idem**, **ipse**, § 582.

### 456.

#### VOCABULARY

**hic**, **haec**, **hoc**, *this*.

**ī'dem**, **e'adem**, **ī'dem**, *same*.

**il'le**, **il'la**, **il'lud**, *that*.

**ip'se**, **ip'sa**, **ip'sum**, *self, himself*.

**is**, **e'a**, **id**, *that, he*.

**is'te**, **is'ta**, **is'tud**, *that*.

**Len'tulus**, **-ī**, m., *Lentulus*.

**nā'tiō**, **-ō'nis**, f., *nation, tribe*.

**tumul'tus**, **-ūs**, m., *disturbance, tumult*.

**sīc**, adv., *so, in this way*.

**a'gō**, **a'gere**, **ē'gī**, **āc'tus**, *do, act, drive*.

**iu'beō**, **iubē're**, **ius'sī**, **ius'sus**, *order*. It takes an infinitive with subject accusative.

**457.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

action

identify

jussive

national

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

\* The motto of Queen Elizabeth. Quoted also in the masculine and neuter genders.



## EXERCISES

**458.** *Translate, telling which demonstrative pronouns are used substantively and which adjectively:*

(a) 1. Huius virī, hae fēminae, huic centuriōnī, illōrum mīlitum, illī puerō, illīs hominibus. 2. Hic est malus, ille est peior. 3. Iste tuus amīcus est sed eōrum inimīcus. 4. Ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt. 5. Caesar amīcum suum vocāvit et eius<sup>1</sup> virtūtem laudāvit.

(b) 1. Quis sim, sciēs ex eō amīcō quem ad tē mīsī. 2. Ille dīxit sē habēre litterās ā Lentulō. 3. Eaedem nātiōnēs Rōmānīs<sup>2</sup> amīcae nōn erant. 4. Haec omnia sīc agentur ut rēs pūblica sine tumultū servētur. 5. Eōdem tempore Caesar suās legiōnēs laudārī iussit.

**459.** *Translate, expressing all the pronouns:*

(a) 1. I myself came to your city. 2. These are our friends, those are your enemies. 3. On the same day he will set out with two legions. 4. Those men ordered<sup>3</sup> the



MARCUS AURELIUS.

This statue is on the Capitoline Hill. When the statues of pagan emperors and gods were being destroyed, this was spared as it was thought to be Constantine, the first Christian emperor.

<sup>1</sup> When *his, her, their*, etc., do not refer to the subject, use the genitive of *is*.

Notice that *suus* refers to the subject of the sentence in which it stands. When, however, it is used in a subordinate clause, it may refer to the subject of the principal sentence.

<sup>2</sup> § 290.

<sup>3</sup> Translate in two ways : (1) with *iubeō* and (2) with *imperō*.

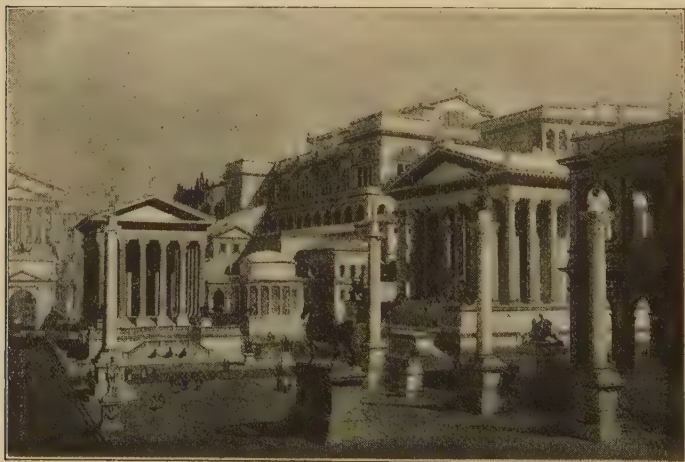
cavalry to drive the enemy from the city. 5. The nations of the earth are often in a great tumult.

(b) 1. He will tell you that we have come. 2. We shall order<sup>1</sup> auxiliary troops to attack the rear of the enemy. 3. Caesar very often made war upon his<sup>2</sup> enemies, and killed their leaders. 4. These things will be done by Lentulus himself as quickly as possible. 5. The brave troops bore their standards to the bank of the Rhine and took the cities of the enemy by storm.

#### PHRASES FROM CAESAR

460. *Commit to memory, with the translations:*

1. Patrum nostrōrum memoriā. 2. Ā castrīs suis.
3. Paulō ante mediam noctem. 4. Ex omnibus partibus.
5. Multīs dē causīs.



THE ROMAN FORUM RESTORED.

This is a view looking from the center toward the Palatine Hill.

<sup>1</sup> See footnote 3 on preceding page.

<sup>2</sup> See footnote 1 on preceding page.

## LESSON LXVIII

### DOUBLE QUESTIONS

*Sic semper tyrannis. — Thus always to tyrants.\**

**461.** Double questions are introduced by the following particles: *utrum* . . . *an*; *-ne* . . . *an*; (*—* . . . *an*).

<i>Is he good or bad?</i>	{	<i>Utrum bonus est an malus?</i>
		<i>Bonusne est an malus?</i>
		<i>Bonus est an malus?</i>

(a) When the second part of the question is negative, *annōn* is used.

*Is he good or not?* *Estne bonus annōn?*

### 462.

#### VOCABULARY

*an*, conjunction, *or*; *annōn*, *or not*.

*u'trum*, conj.; not translated in direct questions; in indirect questions, *whether*.

*equitā'tus*, *-ūs*, *m.*, *cavalry*.

*Pompē'ius*, *Pompē'ī*, *m.*, *Pompey*; compare *Pompeii*, the city.

*cōnsī'dō*, *-ere*, *-sē'dī*, *—*, *en-camp*, *settle*.

*antepō'nō*, *-ere*, *-po'suī*, *-po'situs*, *place before*, *prefer*.

*cognō'scō*, *cognō'scere*, *cognō'vī*, *cog'nitus*, *become acquainted with*, *learn*; in perfect tenses, *know*.

*coniun'gō*, *coniun'gere*, *coniūn'xī*, *coniūnc'tus*, *join together*, *unite*.

*pe'tō*, *-ere*, *-ī'vī*, (*-īī*), *-ī'tus*, *seek*, *ask*. It takes accusative of the thing and ablative of the person with *ā* or *ab*.

**463.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

anteposition      conjunction      recognize      petition

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

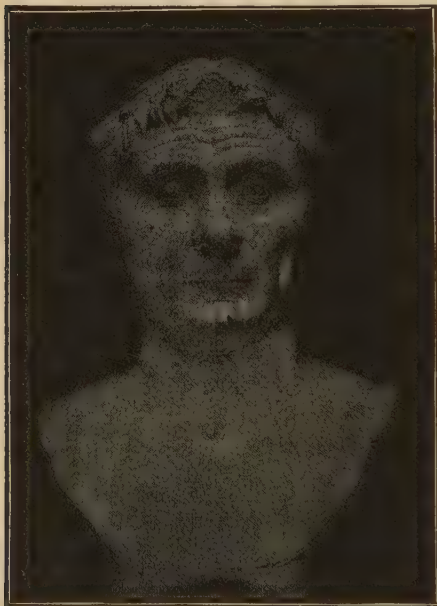
---

\* The motto of Virginia.

## RULE

**464. Quality or Description.** — The quality or description of a noun is expressed by the genitive or ablative with an adjective.

*He was a man of great courage.* **Erat vir magnae virtūtis, or Erat vir magnā virtūte.**



POMPEY.

In the Civil War which followed Caesar's crossing of the Rubicon, Pompey headed the senatorial party. He was defeated by Caesar in the decisive battle of Pharsalus in 48 B.C.

nārum vīrium petēbat ut in suō exercitū eīs ūteretur. 2. Antepōnitur omnibus Pompēius. 3. Militēs omnia tēla quae ab equitātū hostium relicta erant cōtulērunt. 4. Nostrae cōpiae Gallōs vīcerant et in eōrum fīnibus cōnsidēbant. 5. Ducem

(a) *Definite measurement* must be expressed by the genitive.

*The wall was of great height.* **Mūrus magnā altitūdine erat.**

*It was a wall of six feet in height.* **Mūrus sex pedum altitūdine erat.**

## EXERCISES

**465. Translate:**

(a) 1. Pompēius magnā virtūte vir erat. 2. Circum moenia fossa quīndecim pedum altitūdine est. 3. Utrum domī erās, annōn? 4. Petīvit utrum domī essēs, annōn. 5. Utrum Pompēius Cicerōnī antepōnētur, annōn?

(b) 1. Caesar ex Gallīs hominēs magnā

cum cohortibus duodecim et magnō numerō equitātūs in hostium finēs proficisci iubet, nē ex his nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur et tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur.

466. *Translate:*

(a) 1. The Germans were men of great size. 2. We did not know whether he had been in the house or in the field. 3. Pompey orders the lieutenant and his companions to encamp at the foot of a very high mountain. 4. I saw the girl herself. 5. The two places were joined by a wall of three feet in height.

(b) 1. We have lived many years without slaves. 2. Those who had been wounded were carried out, and the legions advanced that they might not be conquered by a leader of such valor. 3. The senator tells us who has been placed in command of the one hundred soldiers, and why they do not surrender. 4. Were the weapons carried away or left in the camp? 5. What shall I say about Cicero and Pompey?

### THE SEIZURE OF THE WOMEN

Rōmulus, ut cīvium numerum augeret, asyllum patefecit, ad quod multi ex cīvitātibus suis ēiecti vērunt. Sed novae urbis cīvibus<sup>1</sup> coniugēs deerant. Lūdōs itaque Rōmulus parāvit, in quibus iuvenēs virtūtem suam certāminibus ostenderent (*might display*). Multi ex finitimis populis cum mulieribus et liberis convērunt ut lūdōs spectārent. Tum Rōmāni inter ipsos lūdōs virginēs rapuerunt.

---

<sup>1</sup>to the citizens, with deerant.

## LESSON LXIX

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

*Ars est celare artem. — Art conceals art.\**

**467.** Pronouns which do not refer to definite persons or things are called **indefinite pronouns**. As an indefinite pronoun the simple form **quis** (substantive), **quī** (adjective) is not common, but it has several compounds.

1. The substantive forms are :

M. AND F.		NEUT.
<b>aliquis</b> , <i>some one, something.</i>		<b>aliquid</b>
<b>quisque</b> , <i>each one, every one.</i>		<b>quidque</b>
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<b>quīdam</b>	<b>quaedam</b>	<b>quiddam</b> , <i>a certain one.</i>

2. The adjective forms are :

<b>aliquī</b>	<b>aliqua</b>	<b>aliquod</b> , <i>any.</i>
<b>quisque</b>	<b>quaeque</b>	<b>quodque</b> , <i>each.</i>
<b>quīdam</b>	<b>quaedam</b>	<b>quoddam</b> , <i>a certain.</i>

(a) In indefinite pronouns only the pronominal part is declined. **M** is changed to **n** before **d** ; **quendam**, not **quemdam**.

3. **A'liquis**, *some one.*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	a'liquis	a'liquid	a'liquī	a'liquae	a'liqua
<i>Gen.</i>	alicu'ius	alicu'ius	aliquō'rum	aliquā'rum	aliquō'rum
<i>Dat.</i>	ali'cui	ali'cui	ali'quibus	ali'quibus	ali'quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	a'liquem	a'liquid	a'liquōs	a'liquās	a'liqua
<i>Abl.</i>	a'liquō	a'liquō	ali'quibus	ali'quibus	ali'quibus

---

\* Literally: *Art is the concealing of art.*

## 468.

## VOCABULARY

ar'ma, -ō'rum, n., *arms, implements of war.*

ini'tium, ini'tī, n., *beginning.*

re'ferō, refer're, ret'tulī, relā'tus, *bring back, report.*

rever'tō, -ere, -tī, -sus,	{	turn back, return. The perfect stem
rever'tor, -ī, rever'sus sum,		tenses are from the active, the others from the deponent.

quan'tus, -a, -um, *how great? how much?*

inte'reā, adv., *in the meantime.*

post, prep. (with acc.), *after (of time), behind (of place).*

a'liquis, a'liquid (a'liquī, a'liqua, a'liquod, adj.), *some one, something.*

quī'dam, quae'dam, quid'dam (quod'dam, adj.), *a certain one.*

quis'que, quid'que (quis'que, quae'que, quod'que, adj.) *every one, each.*

#### 469. What Latin words do the following suggest?

initial          refer          quantity          revert

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

## EXERCISES

470. Translate, telling to what class each pronoun belongs:

(a) 1. Aliquem ad tē mittent. 2. Quisque multō diē profectus est. 3. Ab hīs quaesivit quae civitatēs quantaque in armīs essent. 4. Paulum frūmentī quemque domō efferre iubent. 5. Multae nātiōnēs auxilium ā suīs amicīs petiērunt.

(b) 1. Quaedam legiō Rōmam revertētur, et alicui victōriam nūntiābit. 2. Māter aliīs suōs liberōs antepōnet. 3. Extrēma pars huius librī quam initium difficilior est. 4. Eōdem tempore equitātus noster et aliī quī cum eīs fuerant sē in castra recipiēbant. 5. Lēgātī haec<sup>1</sup> sē ad suōs relātūrōs<sup>2</sup> dīxērunt et post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē castra movēret petiērunt.

<sup>1</sup> See § 21.

<sup>2</sup> Esse is often omitted in infinitives.



471. *Translate:*

(a) 1. The king gave arms to some one. 2. Pompey made a good beginning. 3. Our country is much loved by every one. 4. We do not know how great a number can return. 5. After the battle Caesar ordered the soldiers to retreat into camp.



THE PALATINE HILL.

This view is taken from outside the city and shows the substructures on which the palaces of the emperors were built. An idea of their size can be had from the picture on page 206.

(b) 1. A certain one will return to report all these things to Caesar. 2. They had encamped across a river of great depth. 3. I prefer her to all my other friends. 4. This man was a sailor; that one, a farmer. 5. The cavalry will drive their horses into the territory of the Belgians, and in the meantime the leader will learn something about the army of the enemy.

## LESSON LXX

### REVIEW

---

*Mens aequa in arduis. — A mind serene in difficulties.\**

---

**472. Derivatives.** — Write all the English words you can which seem to be derived from the following :

differō	inferō	ferō	nātiō
tumultus	agō	coniungō	arma
initium	referō	revertō	quantus
ante	praesum	conferō	petō

**473. Form Drill.** — 1. Name the classes of pronouns and tell why each is so called. 2. Decline *hic, ille, is, idem*. 3. Decline the Latin for *another soldier*. 4. What is the intensive pronoun? 5. Write one Latin sentence containing a personal, possessive, relative, demonstrative, and an interrogative pronoun.

**474. Syntax Drill.** — 1. How is *utrum* used and what does it mean? 2. What case and mood follow *iubeō*? *imperō*? 3. When *must* the genitive be used to express description? 4. What cases follow *petō*?

### EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

**475.** 1. Audīvimus quae oppida tūta essent. 2. Multa ā Caesare quaesivērunt dē profectiōne. 3. Liberī sē paulum laudant. 4. Rōmānī exercituī Caesarem praeficiunt. 5. Dux tuus, Mārce, secundā vigiliā interfectus est. 6. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit militibus imperāvit ut signa inferrent. 7. Polliceor hoc vōbīs. 8. Eadem ab eō dicta erant. 9. Scivērunt equitātum in Germāniam missum esse. 10. Cuique dōnum dabō.

---

\* Motto on the statue of Warren Hastings in Calcutta.

## THE REIGN OF ROMULUS

Exitus lūdōrum magnam difficultātem afferēbat. Nam Sabīnī, patrēs et propinquī virginum quae in urbe remanēre coāctae erant, bellum adversus Rōmānōs suscepērunt. Tum Rōmulus cum hostibus in eō locō ubi nunc Forum Rōmānum est proelium commisit.

In mediā caede eae quae raptae erant prōcessērunt, et patrēs et coniugēs magnopere orābant ut finem caedis facerent. Utrique<sup>1</sup> hīs precibus commōtī sunt. Pugnāre dēstitērunt et pācem fēcērunt. Urbs communis Rōmānōrum et Sabīnōrum facta est.

Posteā Rōmulus cīvitatē rēxit. Centum senātōrēs lēgit, eōsque ob aetātem dignitātemque patrēs appellāvit. Plēbem in trīgintā cūriās distribuit. Annō rēgnī tricēsimō septimō inter tempestātem subitō ex oculīs hominum ēreptus est. Aliī eum ā senātōribus interfectum, aliī ad deōs sublātum<sup>2</sup> esse exīstimāvērunt.



AUGUSTUS AS IMPERATOR.

<sup>1</sup> *I.e.*, both sides.

<sup>2</sup> See *tollō* in vocabulary.

## LESSON LXXI

### PARTICIPLES

*Ave, Imperator! Morituri te salutant. — Hail Emperor! Those who are about to die, salute thee.\**

**476.** There are **four participles**, the *present* and *future* in the active voice and the *perfect* and *future* (or gerundive) in the passive voice.

<b>Present Active Participle</b> = <i>Present stem</i> + <b>-ns</b> <i>or -ēns</i>	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">{</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <b>portāns</b>  <b>monēns</b>  <b>dūcēns</b>  <b>audiēns</b> </div> </div>
<b>Future Active Participle</b> = <i>Participial stem</i> + <b>-ūr + endings of magnus</b>	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">{</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <b>portātūrus</b>  <b>monitūrus</b>  <b>ductūrus</b>  <b>audītūrus</b> </div> </div>
<b>Perfect Passive Participle</b> = <i>Participial stem</i> <b>+ endings of magnus</b>	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">{</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <b>portātus</b>  <b>monitus</b>  <b>ductus</b>  <b>audītus</b> </div> </div>
<b>Future Passive Participle or Gerundive</b> = <i>Present stem</i> + <b>nd or end + endings of magnus</b>	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">{</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <b>portandus</b>  <b>monendus</b>  <b>dūcendus</b>  <b>audiendus</b> </div> </div>

*Note.* — For **15** verbs see § 340.

**477. Declension of Participles.** — All participles are declined like **magnus** except the present, which is declined like **potēns**, § 572.

(a) A participle is a verbal adjective. Like a verb, it may take an object and be modified by an adverb; like an adjective, it agrees with its

---

\* The call of the Roman gladiators upon entering the arena for the gladiatorial contests.

noun or pronoun in gender, number, and case.<sup>1</sup> It is often best translated by a phrase or clause.

*We saw the farmer (as he was) driving his horses swiftly. Agricola*  
**m equōs v̄lōciter agentem v̄dimus.**

*They saw the city (which had been) captured by the enemy. Urbem*  
**ab hostibus captam v̄dērunt.**

**478. Time of Participles.** — Like the infinitive, the time denoted by the participle is relative, depending on the time of the principal verb. The present participle denotes the *same* time as the principal verb; the perfect participle, time *before*; and the future participle, time *after* the principal verb.

(a) Learn all the participles, active and passive, of **portō, moneō, dūcō, audiō, capiō**, §§ 586–590. and the active participles of **sum** and **possum**, § 591.

**479.****VOCABULARY**

**fīdēs, -eī, f.,** *faith, pledge, confidence.*      **addū'cō, -ere, -dū'xī, -duc'tus,**  
*lead to, influence.*

**lī'tus, -oris, n.,** *shore (of the sea).*      **re'gō, -ere, rē'xī, rēc'tus,** *rule,*  
*manage.*

**senā'tus, -ūs, m.,** *senate.*      **sapien'ter, adv.,** *wisely.*

(a) Form all the infinitives and participles of **referō, regō.**

**480. What Latin words do the following suggest?**

fidelity      sapient      littoral      reference

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

**EXERCISES**

**481. Translate:**

(a) 1. Ad Caesarem auxilium petentēs v̄nērunt.      2. Virōs victōs laudābimus.      3. Stāns in lītore armīs ūtar.      4. Rēx

<sup>1</sup> Compare § 645.

nātiōnem bene regere cōnātus laudātus est. 5. Centuriōnēs ferentēs suum ducem interfectum veniunt.

(b) 1. Audīvimus tē mortem nōn verērī. 2. Caesar suōs<sup>1</sup> impetum fortiter sustinentēs vīdit. 3. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī, inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant. 4. Aliquem in senātū sapienter dicentem audīvī. 5. Intereā ā plūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quibus pācem petentibus respondet princīpemque ad sē mittī iubet.

#### 482. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Kings are not always loved when ruling wisely and well. 2. Having been influenced by the senate, the Roman people praised their generals. 3. Caesar gave a pledge to the Gauls when they were seeking peace. 4. Pompey, after being placed in command of the army, conquered many nations. 5. The general, seeing the soldiers of the tenth legion fighting long and fiercely, knew that the enemy would surrender.

(b) 1. In the beginning of the war Caesar saw the forces of the Belgians setting out against him. 2. We shall remain at the seashore all summer. 3. This man lived in a city of great size; that one, on the seashore. 4. The centurions differ from each other in many respects. 5. The tired horseman returns to the camp after the battle and seeks aid from his companions.

#### PHRASES FROM CAESAR

#### 483. *Commit to memory, with the translations:*

1. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī. 2. Senātus populusque Rōmānus.
3. Ōrātiōnem habēre (*to make a speech*). 4. Plūs posse.
5. Plūrimum posse.

---

<sup>1</sup> See page 181, footnote 2.



## NUMA AND TULLUS

Post Rōmulī mortem ūnīus annī interrēgnum fuit. Deinde Numa Pompilius in oppidō Sabīnōrum nātus (*born*) rēx creātus est. Hic vir bellum nūllum gessit, sed cum omnibus finitimīs ratiōnem pācis habuit. Sub eius imperiō populus in summā



THE ALBAN LAKE.

Across the lake on the ridge in the distance lay Alba Longa, the oldest Latin city, said to have been founded by Ascanius, the son of Aeneas.

fēlicitate permanēbat. Morbō dēcessit quadrāgēsīmō tertiō imperī annō.

Numae successit Tullus Hostīlius, cuius avus in bellō adversus Sabīnōs virtūte multōs antecesserat. Is bellum cum Albānīs gessit, urbemque Albam dēlēvit. Trīgintā duōs annōs rēgnāvit.



## LESSON LXXII

### ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

---

*Consule Planco. — When Plancus was consul.\**

---

**484. The ablative absolute** consists of two words in the ablative case grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence. It may consist of

- (1) a substantive and a participle, **signō datō**.
- (2) a substantive and an adjective, **periculō magnō**.
- (3) two substantives, **Caesare imperātōre**.

(a) The Ablative Absolute is usually best translated as a clause and generally denotes time, cause, condition, or concession. The substantive in the Ablative Absolute never denotes the same person or thing as the subject or object of the main verb.

The participle and the adjective must agree with the substantive in gender, number, and case.

1. **Signō datō, oppidum oppugnāvērunt.** *The signal having been given (literally), when the signal had been given, they attacked the town.*

2. **Periculō magnō, Caesar signum dedit.** *The danger (being) great (literally), since the danger was great, Caesar gave the signal.*

3. **Caesare imperātōre, ad victōriam exercitus dūcētur.** *Caesar (being) general (literally), if Caesar is general, the army will be led to victory.*

4. **Multīs interfectīs, oppidum expugnāvimus.** *Many having been killed (literally), although many had been killed, we took the town by storm.*

*Note.* — The verb **sum** has no present participle, consequently the connecting word *being* cannot be expressed in the Latin of 2 and 3, but must be supplied in the translation.

**485. Perfect Participles.** — There is no perfect active participle in Latin. We cannot put literally into Latin:

---

\* Horace. An expression used by the Romans for "in the good old days."

*The leader, having given the signal, fought bravely.* There is no Latin word meaning *having given*, but the same idea may be expressed by changing the participle to the passive and making it agree with *signal* in the ablative instead of *leader*.

*The signal having been given, the leader fought bravely.* **Signō datō, dux fortiter pugnāvit.**

(a) Such an ablative absolute may be rendered as an independent coördinate clause: *The leader gave the signal and fought bravely.*

(b) A deponent verb has a perfect participle with an active meaning, so no change is necessary in the case of a deponent verb. *Having encouraged the Remi, Caesar ordered the entire senate to come to him.* **Caesar, Rēmōs cohortātus, omnem senātum ad sē convenīre iussit.**

## 486.

## VOCABULARY

aedifi'cium, aedifi'cī, n., build-  
ing.

Gal'ba, -ae, m., Galba.

immortā'lis, -e, immortal.

invic'tus, -a, -um, invincible, un-  
conquered.

acci'piō, -ere, -cē'pī, -cep'tus,  
receive, accept.

conten'dō, -ere, -dī, -ten'tus,  
hasten, contend.

incen'dō, -ere, -cen'dī, -cēn'sus,  
set on fire, burn (with acc.).

praemit'tō, -ere, -mī'sī, -mis'sus,  
send ahead.

trā'dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, hand  
over, give up, surrender.

487. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

edifice      invincible      incendiary      tradition

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

## EXERCISES

488. *Translate; render ablatives absolute literally and as clauses, and decide which makes the better English:*

(a) 1. Spē āmissā, fūgērunt. 2. Pāce factā, cūr diūtius pugnātis? 3. Omnibus vicis aedificiisque incēnsis, ad castra Caesaris cum omnibus cōpiis contendērunt. 4. Intereā militēs

legiōnum duārum, proeliō nūntiātō, in summō colle ab hostibus vidēbantur. 5. His rēbus gestīs, ab iīs nātiōnibus missī sunt lēgātī ad Caesarem quī<sup>1</sup> sē trāditūrōs esse pollicērentur.

(b) 1. Hostēs ōrdinem agminis Caesaris nōn cognōvērunt. 2. Omnem equitātum quī<sup>1</sup> novissimum agmen morārētur prae-misit. 3. Rōmānī putāvērunt deōs immortalēs plūrimū<sup>2</sup> posse. 4. Cicerō dixit deōs immortalēs huic invictō populō auxilium esse lātūrōs. 5. Caesar, armīs omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditionem hostēs accēpit.

**489.** *Translate, expressing the subordinate clauses by the use of the ablative absolute when possible:*

(a) 1. While Caesar is leader, our forces are invincible. 2. Since many soldiers had been killed, Pompey received recruits into his army. 3. When the cavalry had been sent ahead, the infantry followed without fear. 4. Having burned all the buildings on the shore, they destroyed the ships of the enemy. 5. When these things have been done, they fortify the towns and carry the grain<sup>3</sup> out of the fields into the towns.

(b) 1. It is easier to promise than to do. 2. The senate was very powerful among the Romans. 3. When the letters had been received, Caesar enlisted two legions in hither Gaul. 4. We surrendered the camp and hastened home as quickly as possible. 5. The senate makes as good laws as possible that the people may prefer the senate to a king.

#### THE FOURTH AND FIFTH KINGS

Post hunc<sup>4</sup> Ancus Mārcius, Numae nepōs, suscēpit imperium. Hic vir aequitāte et religiōne avō similis et in bellō et in pāce multās rēs prōsperē perfēcit. Vicēsīmō quārtō annō imperī morbō dēcessit.

<sup>1</sup> quī = ut eī.

<sup>3</sup> See page 26, footnote 2.

<sup>2</sup> Adverbial Accusative of Degree.

<sup>4</sup> Tullus. See page 202.

Deinde rēgnum Lūcius Tarquinius Prīscus accēpit. Eum Ancus Mārcius tūtōrem filiōrum reliquerat; sed is ab illis rēgnum intercēpit. Senātōribus quōs Rōmulus creāverat cen-



THE PALACE OF TITUS.

This is the name given to these enormous foundations on the Palatine Hill. Compare this view with the picture on page 196.

tum aliōs addidit. Plūra bella fēliciter gessit, plūra opera pācis cōnfēcit. Tricēsīmō octāvō imperī annō per Ancī filiōs quōs ab rēgnō exclūserat interfectus est.

## LESSON LXXIII

### SUBJUNCTIVE WITH CUM

---

*Abeunt studia in mores. — Pursuits pass over into habits.\**

---

**490. Clauses introduced by *cum* may denote circumstance, time, cause, or concession.**

**491. *Cum* Circumstantial.** — **Cum**, meaning *when*, takes the subjunctive to denote the circumstances under which an action took place. This use is commonly found only in the imperfect and pluperfect tenses.

*When this had been announced to Caesar, he set out from the city.*  
**Caesar, cum hoc eī nūntiātum esset, ab urbe profectus est.**

(a) When the **cum** clause merely fixes the time of the action or state described by the principal sentence, the verb is put in the indicative. This is sometimes called **cum temporal**.

*When Caesar came into Gaul, the Aedui were the leaders.* **Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, principēs erant Aedui.**

**492. *Cum* Causal.** — **Cum**, meaning *since (because)*, regularly takes the subjunctive.

*Since we are fighting bravely, we shall not be conquered.* **Cum fortiter pugnēmus, nōn vincēmur.**

*Since they were retreating, we attacked the town.* **Cum sē reciperent, oppidum oppugnāvimus.**

**493. *Cum* Concessive.** — **Cum**, meaning *although*, takes the subjunctive.

*Although we had set fire to the town, they did not surrender.* **Cum oppidum incendissēmus, nōn sē dēdidērunt.**

*Although Caesar thought that the Roman legions were invincible, he did not hasten into Gaul.* **Caesar, cum legiōnēs Rōmānās esse invictās exīstimāret, in Galliam nōn contendit.**

(a) The tense usage in all these subjunctive clauses is the same as that described in § 376.

---

\* Ovid.



THE MARINE GATE AT POMPEII.

This is the ancient gate leading toward the Bay of Naples.

#### 494.

#### VOCABULARY

**cau'sa**, -ae, f., *cause, reason.*

**cau'sā** (governs the genitive, which it always follows), *for the sake of.*

**mō'tus**, -ūs, m., *movement, revolt.*

**potes'tās**, **potestā'tis**, f., *power, opportunity.*

**rū'mor**, -ō'ris, m., *rumor, report.*

**re'liquus**, -a, -um, *remaining, the rest of.*

**af'ferō**, -fer're, at'tulī, allā'tus, *bring.*

**cum**, conj., *when, since, although.*

**trādū'cō**, -dū'cere, -dū'xī, -duc'tus, *lead across.*

**commit'tō**, -ere, -mī'sī, -mis'sus, *join*; **proe'lium com-mit'tere**, *join battle, begin an engagement.*

**repe'riō**, -ī're, rep'peri, reper'tus, *find, discover.*

**ta'men**, adv., *nevertheless, still, however.*

**cum prī'mum**, *as soon as.*

#### 495. What Latin words do the following suggest?

commotion      commit      rumor      traduce

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.



## EXERCISES

**496.** *Translate, giving the reason for the mood and tense of each verb:*

(a) 1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur. 2. Cum tēla sua amīsisset, pugnāre nōn potuit. 3. Cum spēs victōriae magna sit, tamen centuriōnēs signa nōn inferunt. 4. Caesar, ubi proelium commisit, nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit. 5. Liberōrum nostrōrum causā in potestāte hostium diūtius manēre nōn possumus.

(b) 1. Cum ab hīs quaereret quae civitatēs in armīs essent, causam bellī repperit. 2. Dare<sup>1</sup> melius est quam accipere. 3. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus relictīs, reliquās sex legiōnēs ex castrīs edūxit. 4. Partem suārum cōpiarum flūmen magnā lātitudine trādūcere<sup>2</sup> cōnātī sunt ut castra expugnārent. 5. Multa dē stellīs atque eārum mōtū, dē terrae magnitudine, dē deōrum immortalium vīribus et potestāte scīmus.

✓ **497.** *Translate:*

(a) 1. Although they have very many wounds, they fight for the sake of power. 2. When the Gauls had made many revolts, Caesar conquered them and sent them under the yoke. 3. Although we have found out many things about the stars, there is much which we do not know. 4. When the legions had been left in the camp, the general led the remaining soldiers across the territory of the enemy. 5. Although rumors of the danger had been brought to us, yet we did not give up hope.

(b) 1. When the people had been informed concerning the death of Cicero, many declared that he had been an excellent consul and had saved his country. 2. She excels her brother

---

<sup>1</sup> An infinitive or clause used substantively is neuter singular, and a modifying adjective accordingly is put in the neuter.

<sup>2</sup> Trādūcō governs two accusatives.



in diligence. 3. The forces of the Gauls will encamp between the river and the hill. 4. Although they were men of great power and courage, nevertheless they were not invincible.



A CHARIOTEER.

He is shown carrying the palm of victory. For a chariot race, see the picture facing page 122.

Tarquiniū Superbī, filiū eius rēgis cui Servius successerat. Nam ab ipsō Tarquiniō dē gradibus cūriæ dēiectus (*having been thrown down*), dum fugit, in itinere interfectus est.

5. In a very short time we found out who had been bringing evil reports about us.

### SERVIVS TULLIVS

Post hunc<sup>1</sup> Servius Tullius suscepit imperium, ex nobili femina natus, captivā tamen et servā. Dum in domo Tarquiniū Prisci educatur, flamma in eius capite visa est. Hōc prōdigiō Tanaquil, Prisci uxor, summam dignitatem eī portendī<sup>2</sup> intellēxit. Postea rex Serviō Tullio filiam suam in mātrimonium dedit.

Servius Tullius bene imperium administravit. Primus omnium cēsum habuit. Numerus cīvium Rōmānōrum fuit capitum octōgintā tria mīlia. Hic rex interfectus est scelere filiae Tulliae et

<sup>1</sup> Tarquinius. See page 206.

<sup>2</sup> Present passive infinitive.

Fīliae singulāre scelus nārrātur. Uxor Tarquinī erat. In Forum properāvit, ut prīma coniugem rēgem (*as king*) salūtāret. Domum rediēns (*returning*) aurīgam super patris corpus, quod in viā iacēbat,<sup>1</sup> carpentum agere iussit. Servius Tullius rēgnāvit annōs quattuor et quadrāgintā.



THE PARTHENON AT ATHENS.

This is the most famous Greek temple in the world, a marvel of grace and beauty, both in design and in execution. Compare it with the better preserved building on page 241.

Before Rome conquered Greece there was practically no Latin literature. After the conquest, Greece may be said to have educated and civilized Rome. Prominent Romans visited Athens and other cities of Greece for recreation and study, and many Greeks sought their fortunes in Rome. This interchange had much to do with the finer things in Roman art, literature, and philosophy, most of which were inspired by Greece.

---

<sup>1</sup> Not from *iaciō*.

## LESSON LXXIV

### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

---

*Si monumentum requiris, circumspice.* — *If you seek a monument, look about you.\**

---

**498. A Conditional Sentence** consists of two parts: (a) the *conditional clause* and (b) the *conclusion*. For example, in the sentence, *If you say this, you are wrong*, the clause introduced by *if* is the conditional clause, while *you are wrong* is the conclusion.

There are different kinds of conditional sentences. Latin conditions closely resemble English ones. They are usually introduced by **sī**, *if*.

**499. Conditional Sentences of Fact.** — Sometimes the conditional clause assumes something to be true, and the conclusion contains a statement of fact. In this case the indicative is used both in the conditional clause and in the conclusion.

*If Caesar fights, he conquers.* **Caesar,<sup>1</sup> sī pugnat, vincit.**

*If the boy was good, he was praised.* **Puer, sī bonus erat, laudābātur.**

**500. Conditional Sentences of Doubt.** — In this class the conclusion states that something *would* take place if a certain condition *should* be fulfilled. This is the statement not of a *fact*, as in the first class, but of an *idea* de-

---

\* Motto on the tomb of Sir Christopher Wren in St. Paul's Cathedral, London, of which Wren was the architect. From this was adapted the motto of Michigan: **Si quaeris peninsulam amoenam, circumspice.** *If you seek a delightful peninsula, look about you.*

<sup>1</sup> In Latin a word serving as common subject or object of the main clause and a subordinate clause usually stands before both.

pending upon something about which there is a doubt. Both verbs are put in the subjunctive.

*If Caesar should fight, he would conquer. Caesar, sī pugnet, vincat.*

*If the boy should be good, he would be praised. Puer, sī bonus sit, laudētur.*

**501. Conditional Sentences Contrary to Fact.** — Both conclusions and conditions that are *contrary to fact* are expressed by the subjunctive. The use of the tenses should be carefully noted. If the thing is contrary to fact *at the present time*, the imperfect is used ; if it is contrary to fact *in the past*, the pluperfect is used.

*If Caesar were fighting, he would conquer. Caesar, sī pugnāret, vinceret.*

This implies that Caesar is *not* fighting and so does *not* conquer. It is a condition in present time contrary to fact.

*If Caesar had fought, he would have conquered. Caesar, sī pugnāvisset, vīcisset.*

This implies the same as the last sentence except that the time is past instead of present.

## 502.

## VOCABULARY

**Ae'duus**, -ī, m., *an Aeduan*.  
**Catilī'na**, -ae, m., *Catiline*.  
**dēfēn'sor**, -ō'ris, m., *defender*.  
**ho'nor**, -ō'ris, m., *honor, esteem*.  
**tur'ris**, -is (-ium), f., *tower*.  
**ver'bum**, -ī, n., *word*; plural, *speech*.

**dēfen'dō**, -ere, -fen'dī, -fēn'sus, *defend, guard*.  
**nū'dō**, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *strip, leave unprotected*.  
**sī**, conj., *if*.  
**nī'si**, conj., *if not, unless*.  
**e'tiam**, adv., *also, even*.

**503.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

honor                  defend                  nude                  turret

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

## 504. TABLE OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

CLASS	TIME	MOOD	TENSE	ILLUSTRATION
Fact	Present	Indicative	Present	1. <i>If Caesar fights, he conquers. Caesar, sī pugnāt, vincit.</i>
	Past		Imperfect or Perfect	2. <i>If Caesar was fighting, he was conquering. Caesar, sī pugnābat, vincēbat. If Caesar fought, he conquered. Caesar, sī pugnāvit, vīcit.</i>
	Future		Future	3. <i>If Caesar fights, he will conquer. Caesar, sī pugnābit, vincet.</i>
Doubt	Future	Subjunctive	Present	<i>If Caesar should fight, he would conquer. Caesar, sī pugnēt, vincat.</i>
Contrary to Fact	Present	Subjunctive	Imperfect	1. <i>If Caesar were fighting, he would conquer. Caesar, sī pugnāret, vinceret.</i>
	Past		Pluperfect	2. <i>If Caesar had fought, he would have conquered. Caesar, sī pugnāvisset, vīcisset.</i>

## EXERCISES

505. Translate, first giving the mood, tense, and consequent time and class of each conditional sentence:

(a) 1. Sī bonī essēmus, laudārēmur. 2. Sī perīculum cēlēs, nōn timeāmus. 3. Rēx, sī bene rēxisset, nōn interfectus esset. 4. Sī pater tuus Rōmānus est, tū Rōmānus es. 5. Sī perīculum cognōscās, nōbīs nārrēs.

(b) 1. Urbēs,<sup>1</sup> sī bene dēfenderentur, capī nōn possent. 2. Urbs, sī nūdātur, dēfendī nōn potest. 3. Sī tēlīs ūtī potuissent, nōn victī essent. 4. Puerī, sī bonōs comitēs habērent, nōn pugnārent. 5. Sī oppidum mūniātur, id capere nōn possīmus.

506. *Translate, first noticing what time and thought are expressed and what mood and tense are required:*

(a) 1. If I were you, I should be better. 2. If you can run, I can follow you. 3. If you had delayed longer, you



CICERO DENOUNCING CATILINE.

Here is shown the Roman Senate during the scathing denunciation preserved to us in Cicero's first oration against Catiline. This is usually read in the third year of high school Latin.

would have been blamed. 4. If we should make an end of the battle, many would survive. 5. If the attack had been made as quickly as possible, the forces would have fled.

(b) 1. If the king should return home, his friends would receive him gladly. 2. If the Aeduans were brave, the town would be taken by storm. 3. If Catiline had brought war

<sup>1</sup> See footnote 1 to page 212.



on us, we should have sent him from the state. 4. If you have been good, you have been praised. 5. If the rest had fled, we should have discovered their flight.

#### SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

**507.** *Translate, first giving mood, etc., as in § 505:*

(a) 1. Sī urbs ā nōbīs dēfendātur, hostēs eam nōn capere possint. 2. Sī illīs verbīs ūsus esset, culpātus esset. 3. Oppidum, sī dēfēnsōribus nūdābātur, impetum diū sustinēre nōn poterat. 4. Miles, sī gravissimum vulnus accipiat, ex proeliō ā suis comitibus ferātur. 5. Caesar honōris Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum esse dixit.

(b) 1. Sī turris ad mūrū movērētur, in dēfēnsōrēs lapidēs iacerēmus. 2. Bona causa est cūr tē tam saepe dēfendam. 3. Dux cum repperit ubi hostēs essent, celeriter proelium commisit. 4. Sī Catilīna in urbe ad hunc diem mānsisset, tantīs periculīs rem pūblicam nōn liberāvissēmus. 5. Senātus haec intellegit, consul videt; hic tamen vivit. Vivit? Etiam in senātum venit.

**508.** *Translate, first noticing the time, etc., as in § 506:*

(a) 1. If a revolt had been made, the captives would have been killed. 2. If your city should be stripped of defenders, what would you do? 3. If the king rules well, the citizens do that which he commands. 4. If the enemy's scouts should set fire to our camp, we should try to defend it. 5. If the guards had defended the place more diligently, the fortifications could not have been taken by storm.

(b) 1. Unless the city had been deprived of defenders, the army of the Aeduans would not have been conquered. 2. The remaining Gauls will be invincible. 3. When we have surrendered, we shall not attack the enemy. 4. When we had found out that the tower could be moved, we hastened to move it as quickly as possible. 5. If Cicero were living, he would be held in esteem by the men of our state.



## LESSON LXXV

### REVIEW

*Divide et impera. — Divide and govern.\**

**509. Derivatives.**— Write all the English words you can which seem to be derived from the following :

fidēs	nūdō	regō	contineō
aedificium	immortālis	accipiō	contendō
incendō	trādō	mōtus	rūmor
reliquus	trādūcō	committō	causa
dēfendō	honor	turris	verbum



VIEW INSIDE THE PORTA SAN SEBASTIANO.

This shows the side opposite to that pictured on page 32.

**510. Form Drill.**— 1. How is each participle formed and declined? 2. Of what three combinations may an

---

\* Motto of Louis XI of France.

Ablative Absolute consist? 3. Give four possible translations of *rūmōre audītō*. 4. Translate, first by a clause and then by an Ablative Absolute: (a) *When Caesar had brought the grain, they discovered a new danger.* (b) *Since his soldiers were not brave, the leader surrendered.*

**511. Syntax Drill.** — 1. Why is an Ablative Absolute necessary? 2. What three kinds of clauses may be introduced by *cum*? 3. Give the law of Sequence of Tenses. 4. In Conditional Sentences what mood and tense are used to express (a) a fact in present, past, future time? (b) a statement contrary to fact in present, past time? (c) a doubt in future time?

#### EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

**512.** 1. *Trēs arborēs in ōrdine stantēs manent.* 2. *Rēgnum in cīvitāte nostrā ā frātre tuō tenēbātur.* 3. *Posterō diē nostra aciēs in equitātum hostium signa intulit.* 4. *Armīs trāditīs, sē dēfendere nōn possunt.* 5. *Decem legiōnibus cōscriptīs, in Galliam contendēs.* 6. *Cum finem proelī nox fēcisset, nūntius ad lēgātum missus est.* 7. *Reperiēmus magnitudinem silvae.* 8. *Cum fortiter impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, ā suō duce vidēbantur.* 9. *Liberōrum nostrōrum causā servī diūtius nōn erimus.* 10. *Multae cīvitātēs Gallōrum, quae ā Rōmānīs sub iugum missae erant, bellum intulērunt.*

## LESSON LXXVI

### EŌ. DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS

*Furor fit laesa saepius patientia. — Beware the fury of a patient man.\**

513. Learn the conjugation of *eō* in full, § 594.

#### 514. VOCABULARY

<i>a'deō, -ī're, -ī (-ī'vī), -itus, go to, approach, visit (followed by the accusative).</i>	<i>lo'quor, lo'quī, locū'tus sum, speak, say.</i>
<i>crē'dō, -ere, crē'didī, crē'ditus, trust, believe.</i>	<i>pā'reō, -ē're, pā'ruī, —, obey.</i>
<i>e'ō, ī're, ī'ī (-ī'vī), itū'rus, go.</i>	<i>pla'ceō, -ē're, -uī, -itus, please.</i>
<i>ex'eō, -ī're, -ī (-ī'vī), -itū'rus, go out, withdraw.</i>	<i>resis'tō, -ere, res'titī, —, resist, oppose.</i>
	<i>ser'viō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -ī'tus, to be slave to, serve.</i>

515. What Latin words do the following suggest?

credit      loquacious      resist      placid

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

#### RULE

516. **Dative with Intransitive Verbs.** — Many verbs meaning to *benefit* or *injure*, *please* or *displease*, *command*<sup>1</sup> or *obey*, *serve* or *resist*, *believe* or *distrust*, *persuade*, *pardon*, *envy*, *threaten*, *be angry*, and the like, take the dative.

*I believe you. Tibi crēdō.*

*He persuaded the soldiers. Militibus persuāsit.*

---

\* Publilius Syrus. Literally: *Patience too often abused becomes madness.* The English is from Dryden's *Absalom and Achitophel*.

<sup>1</sup> *Iubeō* takes the accusative as subject of a following infinitive.

## EXERCISES

517. *Translate, giving the construction of each noun or pronoun:*

(a) 1. Ībimus Rōmā. 2. Nōbīs imperāvit ut rēgī servīremus. 3. Dīxērunt facile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestarent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potīrī.<sup>1</sup> 4. Militibus imperat ut in proelium eant. 5. Omnibus vicīs aedificiisque, quae adīre potuerant, incēnsīs, castra posuērunt et in finibus hostium hiemāvērunt.

(b) 1. Rūmōribus auditīs, imperiō rēgis restitimus. 2. Legiō, cum in proelium fortiter īsset, hostibus nōn diūtissimē restitit. 3. Maiōrī tamen partī placuit castra dēfendere. 4. Sī mihi imperāvisset nē quid<sup>2</sup> loquerer, eī pāruiissem. 5. Cīvibus persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent.

518. *Translate, paying particular attention to the verbs in subordinate clauses:*

(a) 1. If they had trusted me, they would not have gone. 2. The defenders received many wounds while defending their native land. 3. If the towers were higher, we could resist the enemy better. 4. Although they believe us, they will not obey us. 5. If you should go at daybreak, it would please me.

(b) 1. Servants obey their masters as well as possible. 2. We know that you have approached the bank of the river. 3. The general, having been warned of the danger, led his forces into camp. 4. When he has seized the royal power, he will send some men from the city, and others he will kill. 5. The left wing of the army approached the enemy's line of battle as bravely as possible.

<sup>1</sup> Infinitive used as a substantive, subject of *esse*.

<sup>2</sup> *Anything*, when used with *nē*.

## TARQUIN THE PROUD

Tarquinius Superbus cognōmen mōribus meruit. Bellō tamen fortis plūrēs finitimōrum populōrum vīcit. Templum Iovis<sup>1</sup> in Capitoliō aedificāvit. Postea, dum urbem Ardeam oppugnat, propter scelus fili imperium āmisit. Nam filius Lucrētiaē,<sup>2</sup> nōbilissimae fēminae, coniugī Tarquini Collātini, vim fēcit. Tum haec sē ipsa occīdit.



THE BATHS OF CARACALLA.

Bathing was a favorite recreation among the Romans, and their many Baths were most elaborate. The two most important remaining are those of Diocletian in the city, and those of Caracalla outside the walls.

Hanc ob causam Lūcius Brūtus, Collātīnus, aliique nōnnūlli in exitium rēgis coniūrāvērunt et portās urbis clausērunt. Exercitus quoque rēgem relīquit. Fūgit itaque rēx cum uxōre et liberīs. Ita Rōmae rēgnātum est<sup>3</sup> per septem rēgēs annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā trēs.

<sup>1</sup> See **Iuppiter** in vocabulary.

<sup>2</sup> Dative, with **vim fēcit**.

<sup>3</sup> I.e., *royal power continued*.

## LESSON LXXVII

### VOLO, NŌLO, MĀLO. DATIVE OF PURPOSE

*Fere libenter homines id quod volunt credunt. — Men gladly believe what they wish to.\**

**519. Syntax of volō, nōlō, mālō.** — The infinitive with subject accusative is used with **volō, nōlō, mālō** when its subject is not the same as that of the governing verb. When the subject of both verbs is the same, the complementary infinitive is used.<sup>1</sup>

*I wish you to go. Volō tē ire.*

*I wish to go. Volō ire.*

(a) Learn the conjugation of **volō, nōlō, mālō**, § 592.

### 520.

### VOCABULARY

difficul'tās, -tā'tis, f., *difficulty.*

hi'ems, hi'emis, f., *winter, stormy weather.*

re'giō, -ō'nis, f., *region, boundary, district.*

subsi'dium, subsi'di, n., *aid, support.*

mā'lō, māl'le, mā'luī, *prefer.*

nō'lō, nōl'le, nō'luī, *be unwilling.*

occī'dō, -ere, -cī'dī, -cī'sus, *kill, slay.*

pel'lō, -ere, pe'pulī, pul'sus, *drive out, put to flight, defeat.*

vo'lō, vel'le, vo'luī, *be willing, wish.*

**521.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

voluntary      expel      region      benevolent      subsidiary

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

### RULE

**522. Dative of Purpose.** — A dative expressing purpose is often used in connection with another dative called a dative of reference.

\* Caesar.

<sup>1</sup> Compare § 637 and (a)



*The legion served as aid to Caesar. Legiō auxiliō Caesarī fuit.*  
*He sent men as aid to the army. Virōs subsidiō exercituī mīsit.*

(a) Here **auxiliō** and **subsidiō** are datives of purpose ; **Caesarī** and **exercituī** are datives of reference.

## EXERCISES

523. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Vult hostēs pellere. 2. Deō volente, Rōmae tē vidēbimus. 3. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō. 4. Volō tē tuō patrī placēre. 5. Māluērāmus cōpiās vestrās auxiliō nobīs et nostrō exercituī venīre.

(b) 1. Decima legiō Caesarī subsidiō erat. 2. Caesar nōluit legiōnēs auxiliō Aeduīs mittere. 3. Hīs facile pulsīs, incredibīlī celebritāte ad flūmen cucurrērunt. 4. Caesar memoriā tenēbat cōsulem occīsum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum. 5. Captivīs cūstōdēs praepōnit, ut, quae agant, quibuscum loquantur, scīre possit.



AGRIPPINA, MOTHER OF NERO.

She was born at Cologne, which was named for her, the *Colony* of Agrippina.

524. *Translate:*

(a) 1. We were willing to fight longer for our country. 2. Caesar had been unwilling to send the tenth legion as aid for Galba. 3. If I had preferred to remain at home, I should not have gone with you. 4. He thought it would not be difficult to slay the enemy. 5. We shall always resist the Germans.



(b) 1. Caesar could not engage in battle on account of the stormy weather. 2. If I believed your words, I should not delay my departure. 3. When we wished you to approach the regions of the Germans, we could see no difficulty. 4. We wish to defend these regions with towers of great height. 5. Caesar remained in camp ten days that the rest of the cavalry might come to his aid (as aid to him)



A VESTAL VIRGIN.

### VIRGINĒS VESTĀLĒS

Vesta dea erat Rōmānōrum quae ignī focōque praeerat. Rōmae fuit Vestae templum quō in templō sex virginēs Vestālēs sacrum ignem continenter cūstodiēbant.

Sex annōs nātae virginēs hōc ministeriō fungī incēperunt, ā Pontifice Maximō dēlēctae. Trīgintā annōs officiīs in templō fūctae sunt, tum aut templum relinquere aut

manēre ibi eīs licuit. Virginēs Vestālēs maximō in honōre ā populō Rōmānō habēbantur.

Vestālēs sacrum ignem cūstodivērunt et cum esset pericūlum, eum ad locum tūtum portāvērunt. Nōnnumquam Rōmā ignem extulērunt, nē in hostium manūs venīret.

Rōmānī putāvērunt Vestam in Italiā prīmō esse ab Aenēā cultam, et eum prīmum virginēs Vestālēs dēlēgisse.

## LESSON LXXVIII

### SEMI-DEPONENTS. DATIVE OF POSSESSOR

*Gaudeamus igitur iuvenes dum sumus. — Let us rejoice, then, while we are young.*

**525.** Semi-deponents are verbs which have the *present system* in the active voice and the *perfect system* in the passive voice, but both with the active meaning.

au'deō, -ē're, au'sus sum, *dare.*

gau'deō, -ē're, gāvī'sus sum, *rejoice.*

so'leō, -ē're, so'litus sum, *be wont.*

fī'dō, fī'dere, fī'sus sum, *trust.*

### 526.

#### VOCABULARY

au'deō, -ē're, au'sus sum, *dare.*

clas'sis, -is (-ium), f., *a fleet.*

cō'gō, -ere, coē'gī, coāc'tus, *collect; compel.*

conve'niō, -ī're, -vē'nī, -ven'tus, *assemble.*

conven'tus, -ūs, m., *assembly, meeting.*

ēdo'ceō, -ē're, ēdo'cuī, ēdoc'tus, *show, inform, instruct.*

fī'ō, fī'erī, fac'tus sum, *become, be made, happen. Learn the conjugation, § 595.*

trāns'eō, -ī're, -ī'vī (-īī), -itus, *go across.*

īn'struō, -ere, -strū'xī, -strūc'tus, *draw up, construct.*

prōgre'dior, -ī, -gres'sus sum, *advance.*

Ve'netī, -ō'rum, m., *Veneti.*

**527.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

audacious      transitive      instruct      progress

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

## RULE

**528. Dative of Possessor.**—The dative is used with **sum** to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.

*The boy has a book.* **Puerō liber est.**

*Cicero's name was Marcus Tullius.* **Cicerōnī nōmen erat Mārcus Tullius.**

## EXERCISES

**529. Translate:**

(a) 1. Virō erat pulcherrima domus. 2. Nōne hieme in mare ire ausus es? 3. Impetus in eōs fit et eīs timor est. 4. Fortis vir praeerat eīs civitatibus ex quibus exercitum coēgerat. 5. Brūtum adulēscētem classī nāvibusque, quās convenire iusserat, praeficit et in Venetōs eum proficiscī iubet.

(b) 1. Quaerit ex eō sōlō quae in conventū dixerit. 2. Militibus multa tēla erant. 3. Huic magnīs dōnīs persuādet ut ad hostēs trānseat, et quid fierī velit ēdocet. 4. Proximō diē Caesar ē castrīs cōpiās suās ēdūxit et, paulum ā castrīs prōgressus, aciem instrūxit. 5. Putāmus eum mercātōribus nōn crēdidisse.

**530. Translate:**

(a) 1. The diligence of my pupils pleases me much. 2. The Veneti had very many ships. 3. They informed the Veneti that they wished to assemble near the shore. 4. They went across the river and led the army among the enemy. 5. The leader dares to advance to the regions of the enemy and is asking about their fleet.

(b) 1. Caesar drew up a line of battle on the top of the hill. 2. Other forces were sent as aid to Caesar. 3. They had set out in the winter and two thousand of their men had been slain. 4. Citizens always trust the defenders of their country. 5. The soldier had great courage and he became leader of the enemy.

## THE FIRST PUNIC WAR

Annīs<sup>1</sup> quadringentīs nōnāgintā post urbem conditam<sup>2</sup> Rōmānōrum exercitūs primum in Siciliam trāiēcērunt, rēgemque Syrāeūsārum, Poenōsque, quī multās cīvitatēs in eā insulā occupāverant, superāvērunt.

Quīntō annō huius bellī, quod contrā Poenōs gerēbātur, primum Rōmānī in marī dīmiciāvērunt. Carthāginiēnsēs<sup>3</sup>



SYRACUSE.

A view of the modern city and harbor, taken from the ancient theater.

vicērunt, trīgintā nāvēs occupāverunt, quattuordecim mersērunt, septem mīlia hostiū cēpērunt, tria mīlia occidērunt. Nulla victōria Rōmānīs grātior fuit.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of degree of difference with *post*, which has the force of a comparative.

<sup>2</sup> *After the city founded, i.e., after the founding of the city.*

<sup>3</sup> Accusative.

## LESSON LXXIX

### GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

---

*Crescit eundo. — It grows as it goes.\**

---

**531. The Gerund** is a *verbal noun*. It is formed by the present stem + **nd** (or **end**) + neuter endings of the second declension. It is found in the genitive, dative, accusative, ablative, singular only; **portandī, portandō, portandum, portandō.**

**532. The Gerundive** is a *verbal adjective*.<sup>1</sup> It is formed by the present stem + **nd** (or **end**) + endings of **magnus**: **portandus, -a, -um.**

**533. Gerund and Gerundive Uses.**—The gerund may take a direct object. When it would have an object, the gerundive is generally used instead, the object taking the case of the gerund and the gerundive agreeing with the object as an adjective.

*Desirous of seeking peace.* **Cupidus pācem petendī** (gerund). **Cupidus pācis petendae** (gerundive construction).

*We have hope of conquering the enemy.* **Habēmus spem vincendī hostēs** (gerund). **Habēmus spem vincendōrum hostium** (gerundive construction).

---

\* The motto of New Mexico. Literally: *By going*.

<sup>1</sup> An easy way to distinguish gerund and gerundive is to think that “the gerundive is an adjective.”

## 534.

## VOCABULARY

<b>adver'sus</b> , -a, -um, <i>turned toward, facing, face to face.</i>	<b>sa'lūs</b> , -ū'tis, f., <i>safety.</i>
<b>commeā'tus</b> , -ūs, m., <i>supplies, provisions.</i>	<b>effi'ciō</b> , -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus, <i>accomplish, bring about.</i>
<b>hiber'na</b> , -ō'rum, n., <i>winter quarters.</i>	<b>clau'dō</b> , -ere, clau'sī, clau'sus, <i>shut, close.</i>
<b>por'tus</b> , -ūs, m., <i>harbor, port.</i>	<b>occur'rō</b> , -ere, -cur'rī, -cur'sus, <i>meet.</i>
<b>praesi'dium</b> , praesi'dī, n., <i>guard, garrison, protection.</i>	<b>prox'imē</b> , adv., <i>next, most recently.</i>

535. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

hibernate                  adverse                  occur                  efficient

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

## RULE

536. **The Expression of Purpose.** — The most common ways of expressing purpose are :

1. Subjunctive with **ut** or **nē**. **Vēnērunt ut urbem vidērent.**  
*They came to see the city.*

2. Subjunctive with relative pronoun. **Vēnērunt quī urbem vidērent.**

3. Gerundive construction with **ad**. **Vēnērunt ad urbem videndam.**

4. Gerundive construction with **causā**. **Vēnērunt urbis videndae causā.**

(a) In Latin prose purpose *must not* be expressed by the infinitive.

## EXERCISES

537. *Express the purpose in four ways:*

1. They went to close the gates.    2. We have teachers to instruct children.    3. Soldiers go into battle to slay the enemy.    4. Caesar came to conquer Gaul.    5. Will you hasten to see the king?



**538. Translate:**

(a) 1. Militēs pugnandī finem fēcērunt. 2. Ad pācem petendam cotidiē vērunt. 3. Nautae in portum salūtis petendae causā contendunt. 4. Nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt. 5. Efficiēbat ut commeātūs ab Aeduīs et reliquīs cīvitātibus sine periculō ad sē portārī possent.

(b) 1. Paucae rēs praesidiō hibernīs erunt. 2. Caesar bellī gerendī causā multās legiōnēs parābat. 3. Ad eōs dēfendendōs undique conveniunt. 4. Duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōscrip̄tae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentīs erant. 5. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī, cum sē in castra recipent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant.

**539. Translate:**

(a) 1. Each advanced for the sake of crossing the river. 2. We were informed that the war ships had assembled, and we went into winter quarters to seek safety. 3. The Romans had very many captives. (*Express in two ways.*) 4. I was unwilling to meet you. 5. The captives resisted the victors very often.

(b) 1. We thought that Cicero, after calling the senate together, had dismissed it. 2. I asked him what he was doing. 3. The gates were closed and, a garrison being left at the camp, we sent men in different directions to seek supplies. 4. The leaders will show how many war ships have been collected. 5. They met the cavalry half way up the hill, but did not dare to advance to the attack.

**PHRASES FROM CAESAR****540. Commit to memory, with the translations:**

1. Salūtis causā. 2. Hōc proeliō nūntiātō. 3. Hīs rēbus gestīs. 4. Magnō numerō interfectō. 5. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs.

## THE CAPTURE OF REGULUS

Paucis annis interiectis<sup>1</sup> bellum in Africam translatum est. Hamilcar, Carthaginiensium dux, pugnā nāvālī superatur. Cum Rōmānī in Africam vēnissent, Poenōs plūribus proeliis vicērunt, magnam vim hominum cēpērunt, multās cīvitātēs in fidem recēpērunt.<sup>2</sup>



THE HARBORS OF CARTHAGE.

So complete was the Roman destruction of Carthage that not only was the city razed to the ground but even the harbor was ruined.

Tum victi Carthaginiensēs pācem ā Rōmānīs petiērunt. Quam cum Rēgulus, Rōmānōrum dux, nōn daret nisi dūrissimīs condiciōnibus,<sup>3</sup> Carthaginiensēs auxilium ā Lacedaemoniīs petivērunt. Hī exercitum mīsērunt, quī exercitum Rōmānum magnō proeliō vicit. Rēgulus ipse captus et in vincula coniectus est.

<sup>1</sup> I.e., after an interval of a few years.

<sup>2</sup> took under their protection.

<sup>3</sup> on the hardest terms.

## LESSON LXXX

### PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

---

*Ad captandum vulgus. — To catch the crowd.\**

---

**541. The Periphrastic Conjugations** are inflected in all the tenses of the indicative and subjunctive and in the present and perfect infinitive.

**542. The Active Periphrastic Conjugation** denotes impending action or that which is about to happen. It is formed by combining the future active participle with forms of **sum**.

The present of **sum** is used for the present tense, the imperfect for the imperfect, the present infinitive for the present infinitive, etc. The participle agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

*Caesar was about to announce the battle. Caesar proelium nūntiātūrus erat.*

*The Romans had intended to fight. Rōmānī pugnātūrī fuerant.*

*We thought the enemy would come. Exīstimāvimus hostēs ventūrōs esse.*

(a) Conjugate **scrībō** through the Active Periphrastic.

**543. The Passive Periphrastic** denotes necessity or that which ought to be done. It is formed by combining the gerundive with forms of **sum**. The gerundive agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

*The soldiers must be sent. Milītēs mittendī sunt.*

*The signal must be given. Signum dandum est.*

(a) Conjugate **scrībō** through the Passive Periphrastic.

---

\* Compare "to play to the gallery."

544.

## VOCABULARY

facul'tās, -tā'tis, f., opportunity,  
ability.

tempes'tās, -tā'tis, f., storm, bad  
weather.

ar'bitror, -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum, think.

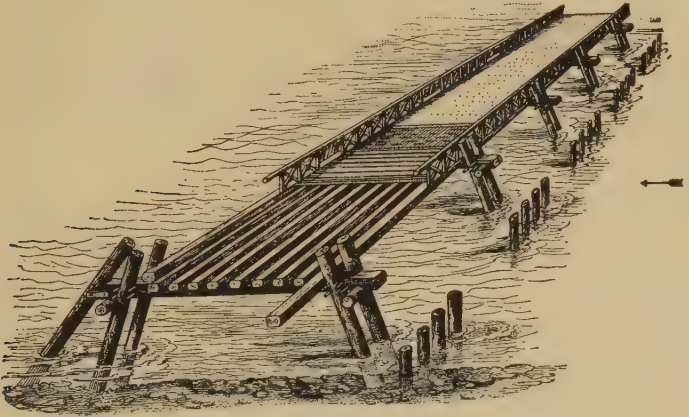
cohor'tor, -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum, en-  
courage.

sta'tuō, -ere, -uī, -ū'tus, deter-  
mine, decide.

magno'pere, (ma'gis, max'imē),  
adv., greatly.

prop'ter, prep. with acc., on ac-  
count of.

sta'tim, adv., immediately.



CAESAR'S FAMOUS BRIDGE ACROSS THE RHINE.

545. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

tempest

exhort

arbitrate

faculty

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

## RULE

546. **Dative of Agent.** — With the Passive Periphrastic the dative is used to denote the agent or doer of the action.

*You must give the signal.* **Signum tibi dandum est.**<sup>1</sup>

*Caesar must fight.* **Caesari pugnandum est.**

<sup>1</sup> Notice that all sentences in the active voice must be recast before they can be expressed literally by the Passive Periphrastic.

## EXERCISES

547. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum. 2. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda. 3. Magnopere tibi placitūrī fuerāmus. 4. Aciēs instruenda et militēs cohortandī erant. 5. Hīs rēbus adductī statuimus hīberna Gallōrum nōbīs capienda esse.

(b) 1. Adversō exercituī occurrunt. 2. Prō rē publicā fortiter pugnātūrī sumus. 3. Propter tempestātēs difficultās nāvigandī maxima est. 4. Arbitrātī sumus commeātum ad hīberna statim mittendum esse. 5. Dēfessō militī eius locī, ubi fuerat, relinquendī et suī recipiendī facultās nōn dabātur.

548. *Translate:*

(a) 1. The gates must often be closed by us for the sake of safety. 2. I had intended to give you a better opportunity of seeing the beautiful buildings at Rome. 3. A brave citizen has often been an aid to the king. 4. The general set out late in the day to encourage the garrison. 5. Our forces must be sent across the wide river, the town of the enemy must be burned, and their children taken.

(b) 1. The Romans had no good ports. (*Two ways.*) 2. We did not dare to meet the Veneti on account of the stormy weather, and took the opportunity of retreating into port. 3. Having been greatly influenced by the reports which he had heard, Caesar determined that he must leave the winter quarters immediately. 4. Having advanced many miles, we met the Veneti face to face. 5. They had been informed that they must drive the enemy from their boundaries immediately.

## LESSON LXXXI

### REVIEW OF CASES<sup>1</sup>

---

*Bis dat qui cito dat. — He gives twice who gives quickly.*

---

**549. Nominative.** — Subject of a finite verb, § 17. Predicate nominative, § 41.

**550. Genitive.** — Possession, § 36. Of the whole, § 283. Description or quality, § 464. Definite measurement, § 464, *a*. Subjective, § 394. Objective, § 395. With adjectives, § 396.

**551. Dative.** — Indirect object, § 79. With adjectives meaning *like, equal*, etc., § 258. With adjectives meaning *dear, faithful*, etc., § 290. With verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con**, § 440. With intransitive verbs meaning *benefit* or *injure*, § 516. Agent with passive periphrastic, § 546. Possessor with **sum**, § 528. Of purpose, § 522.

### EXERCISES

**552.** *Translate, giving the construction of each noun and pronoun:*<sup>2</sup>

(*a*) 1. Tēla mīlitibus Caesaris ferenda sunt. 2. Maior sorōrum ab omnibus pulchrior habēbātur. 3. Caesarī id nūntiātum est. 4. Imperātor mīlitibus imperāvit ut fortiter resisterent. 5. Spēs victōriae legiōnēs addūxit.

(*b*) 1. Erat fossa ducentōrum pedum in longitudinem. 2. Belgīs bellum intulērunt. 3. Hic amīcus meus est; ille,

---

<sup>1</sup> The forms may be reviewed as the teacher sees fit.

<sup>2</sup> In these review lessons consult the general vocabulary for new words.



tuus. 4. Equitātūī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī mīserant, fortis vir praeerat. 5. Hīs rēbus cognītīs, explorātōrēs centuriōnēsq̄e praemittit, quī locum idōneum castrīs delīgant.

553. *Translate:*

- (a) 1. The Germans did not have large horses. (*Two ways.*)  
2. The Belgians say that they are the bravest of all. 3. The



THE INTERIOR OF THE COLOSSEUM.

Compare this with the pictures on pages 12, 20, and 81.

fleet was sent as a protection to the city. 4. We met the girls in the road. 5. We must take the opportunity not only of burning the buildings but also of destroying the grain.

(b) 1. They did not dare to resist the enemy. 2. For the sake of safety they made a wall of ten feet in height. 3. At the arrival of the Germans our men fought more bravely. 4. The men were like their leader in courage. 5. He will order the lieutenant to send soldiers as aid to our men.

## LESSON LXXXII

### REVIEW OF CASES

---

*Ense petit placidam sub libertate quietem.*—*With the sword she seeks calm repose in freedom.\**

---

**554. Accusative.** — Adverbial, § 405. Direct object, § 21. Duration of time and extent of space, § 307. Place *into, to, toward, near* which, § 112. Subject of an infinitive, § 327. With prepositions, § 353.

**555. Ablative.** — Absolute, § 484. Accompaniment with *cum*, § 136. Agent with a preposition, § 175. Cause without a preposition, § 229. Degree of difference, § 272. Manner, § 151. Means or instrument, § 87. Place *in, from, out of* which, § 112. Quality, § 464. Specification, § 238. Separation, § 336. Time when, § 182. With prepositions, § 352. With verbs *ūtor, fruor*, etc., § 389. Adverbial, § 406.

**556. Locative.** — Place in or at which with names of cities and towns, *domus*, and *rūs*, § 299.

**557. Vocative.** — The vocative is used as the case of address, § 5.

### EXERCISES

**558.** *Translate, giving the construction of each noun and pronoun :*

(a) 1. *Sciēbant Rōmānōs plūrimum inter nātiōnēs et virtūte et hominum numerō posse.* 2. *His verbīs auditīs, eum ab sē dīmittit.* 3. *Haec rēs latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis*

---

\* The motto of Massachusetts.

mūniēbat. 4. Galbam cum sex cohortibus praesidiō legiōnibus reliquit. 5. Ab hīs castrīs vir, Galba nōmine, magnā cum celeritāte mīlia passuum octō iit.

- (b) 1. Dux summā virtūte ad bellum ā Caesare mittētur. 2. Mediā nocte Caesar isdem ducibus ūsus, quī nūntiī vēnerant, eōs auxiliō urbī mīsīt. 3. Decem diēbus ante Galba mūrū dēfēnsōribus nūdāverat. 4. Venetī multō potentiōrēs quam hostēs erant. 5. Manēre Rōmae est facillimum.



A ROMAN MATRON.

### 559. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Friends, we shall use our weapons as well as possible. 2. The citizens at Rome wished to please their king. 3. The large animals ran out of the woods at day-break and remained near the town all day. 4. We use our javelins to deprive the city of its defenders. 5. If the leader orders, you will set out.

(b) 1. Marcus, you can surpass the enemy in courage.

2. Caesar was informed that the top of the mountain was held by the enemy. 3. Caesar with his brave men stormed the town with great courage. 4. We followed the cavalry five miles and fought much more bravely than they. 5. After the gates had been closed, a message was sent to the general who was attacking the town.

## LESSON LXXXIII

### REVIEW OF SUBJUNCTIVES

---

*Finis coronat opus. — The end crowns the work.*

---

**560. Subjunctives.** — Causal clauses, § 492. Circumstantial clauses, § 491. Concessive clauses, § 493. Conditional clauses, §§ 498–504. Indirect questions, § 424. Purpose, § 366. Result, § 402.

#### EXERCISES

**561. Translate, explaining each subjunctive :**

(a) 1. Mīles ita ēgit ut imperātor eum culpāret. 2. Quid ēgerīs sciō. 3. Caesar, cum aciem instrūxisset, legiōnibus signum dedit. 4. Cum domī meae paene interfectus essem, senātum convocāvī. 5. Sī facultās militibus data esset, ācerrimē pugnāre ausī essent.

(b) 1. Hostēs, cum ā tertiā hōrā ad sōlis occāsum pugnāvisent, tamen victī sunt. 2. Cum iussī erimus in portum ire, quam vēlocissimē nāvigābimus. 3. Tantīs periculīs occurrit ut salūtis causā fugiat. 4. Dux dīcit militēs in hostēs quam plūrima pīla iactūrōs esse. 5. Sī militēs cohortēris, fortius pugnent.

**562. Translate :**

(a) 1. He saw in how great peril the camp was. 2. They surrendered to Caesar, since he was very powerful. 3. When Cicero saw the danger, he tried to save the state. 4. He sent a man to enlist two legions. 5. Caesar commanded us to bring the captives back.

(b) 1. Since their fleet had been taken, they could not defend themselves. 2. We had sent the Gauls under the yoke.

3. Although we do not understand the movements of the stars, nevertheless it pleases us to see them. 4. If the enemy had been braver, they would not have sought peace. 5. The army was so powerful that it could not be taken.

### THE HEROISM OF REGULUS

Fortūna tamen in aliīs locīs Carthāginiēnsibus<sup>1</sup> nocuit. Cum plūribus proeliīs victī essent, Rēgulum rogāvērunt ut



THE SITE OF THE CITADEL AT CARTHAGE.

Rōmam proficīscerētur<sup>2</sup> et pācem ā Rōmānīs impetrāret. Haec tamen erat condiciō, ut, sī pāx nōn esset facta, Rēgulus Carthāginem reverterētur.

Ille cum Rōmam vēnisset, dīxit sē Rōmānum esse dēsiisse<sup>3</sup> ex illā diē quā in potestātem Poenōrum vēnisset.<sup>4</sup> Tum Rōmānīs praecēpit nē pācem cum hostibus facerent.

<sup>1</sup> Dative. See § 516.

<sup>2</sup> ut proficīscerētur, *to set out*.

<sup>3</sup> had ceased to be a Roman.

<sup>4</sup> Subjunctive because it is the verb of a subordinate clause in an indirect statement.



Dixit Carthāginiēnsēs cāsibus frāctōs pācem spērāre tālem ut<sup>1</sup> paucīs annīs bellum redintegrāre possent.<sup>2</sup> Sibi mortem crūdēlem parātam esse sē nōn ignōrāre, sed vītam prō patriā dēpōnere<sup>3</sup> magnam laudem esse. Oportēre sē<sup>4</sup> in Āfricam revertī.<sup>5</sup> Sententia Rēgulī obtinuit (*prevailed*); in Āfricam reversus crūdēlissimīs suppliciīs interfectus est.



THE TEMPLE OF NEPTUNE AT PAESTUM.

This relic of Greek influence in Italy is the best preserved Greek temple  
 1 in existence. Compare page 211.

<sup>1</sup> pācem tālem ut, *such a peace that.*

<sup>2</sup> they would be able.

<sup>3</sup> Subject of esse.

<sup>4</sup> Subject of revertī, which is itself the subject of oportēre.

<sup>5</sup> This passage in the form of direct discourse would run as follows: Carthāginiēnsēs cāsibus frāctī pācem spērant tālem ut paucīs annīs bellum redintegrāre possint. Mihi mortem crūdēlem parātam esse nōn ignōrō, sed vītam prō patriā dēpōnere magna laus est. Oportet mē in Āfricam revertī.





# SUPPLEMENTARY READING

## THE STORY OF ULYSSES

### HOMEWARD BOUND

Urbs Trōia ā Graecīs decem annōs obsessa est. Dē hōc bellō Homērus, maximus poētārum Graecōrum, Īliadem, opus



THE RUINS OF TROY.

The story of the excavations at Troy reads like a novel. Here were found the ruins of city after city, each built upon the wreckage of a former one. The sixth from the bottom is thought to be Homer's Troy.

nōtissimum, scrīpsit. Trōiā tandem per īnsidiās<sup>1</sup> captā, Graecī longō bellō dēfessī domum revertī mātūrāvērunt. Omnibus rēbus igitur ad profectionem parātīs, nāvēs dēdūxērunt et magnō cum gaudiō solvērunt.

---

<sup>1</sup> The stratagem of the wooden horse.

Erat inter primos Graecorum Ulixēs quidam, vir summae virtutis ac prudentiae. Hic regnum insulae Ithacae obtinuerat, et puellam pulcherrimam nomine Pēnelopēn in matrimonium duxerat.<sup>1</sup> Nunc igitur, cum iam decem annos quasi in exsilio cōsumpsisset, magnopere patriam et uxorem vidēre cupiēbat.

### THE LOTUS EATERS

Postquam tamen pauca milia passuum a litore Trōiae progressi sunt, tanta tempestas subito orta est ut nulla navium cursum tenere posset, sed aliae alias in partes disicerentur.<sup>2</sup> Navis autem quā<sup>3</sup> ipse Ulixēs vehēbatur, vi tempestatis ad meridiem delata, decimo die ad litus Libyae pervenit. Ancoris iactis Ulixēs constituit nonnullos e sociis in terram expōnere, qui qualis esset natura eius regionis cognoscerent,<sup>4</sup> et aquam ad navem reportarent.

Hi igitur e navi egressi imperata facere parabant. Dum tamen fontem quaerunt, a quibusdam ex incolis hospitio accepti sunt. Cibus autem eorum hominum erat mirus quidam fructus, quem lotum appellabant. Quem cum Graeci gustavissent, patriae et sociorum statim obliti,<sup>5</sup> confirmaverunt se semper in ea terra permansuros esse, ut dulci illo cibo<sup>6</sup> in aeternum vescerentur.

### THE DEPARTURE

At Ulixēs, cum ab hora<sup>7</sup> septima ad vesperum expectavisset, nonnullos e reliquis sociis misit, ut quae causa esset

<sup>1</sup> *Had married. Literally what?*

<sup>2</sup> *they were driven, some in one direction, others in another. Notice how much shorter the Latin is.*

<sup>3</sup> Ablative of means.

<sup>4</sup> *qui cognoscerent, who should learn, to learn.*

<sup>5</sup> The verb *obliviscor* often takes the objective genitive.

<sup>6</sup> See § 389.

<sup>7</sup> The day from sunrise to sunset was divided by the Romans into twelve equal parts, called "hours" (*hōrae*).

morae cognōscerent. Hī igitur ad vicum, quī nōn longē āfuit, sē contulērunt; quō cum vēnissent,<sup>1</sup> sociōs suōs quasi vīnō ēbriōs repperērunt. Tum iīs persuādēre cōnābantur ut sēcum<sup>2</sup> ad nāvem reverterentur.

Illī tamen resistere ac manū sē dēfendere coepērunt, saepe clāmitantēs sē numquam eum locum relīctūrōs esse. Quae cum ita essent,<sup>3</sup> nūntiī ad Ulixem revertērunt. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Ulixēs ipse cum omnibus quī in nāve relīctī erant ad locum vēnit; et sociōs suōs frūstrā hortātus invitōs ad nāvem reportāvit. Tum ancorīs sublātīs quam celerrimē ē portū solvit.

### THE ONE-EYED GIANT

Posterō diē ad terram ignōtam vērērunt; tum quod nātūrā eius regiōnis ignōrābat, ipse Ulixēs cum duodecim ē sociīs in terram ēgressus locum explōrāre cōstituit. Paulum ā litore prōgressī ad spēluncam ingentem pervērērunt, cuius introitus arte et manibus mūnītus erat.

Mox, etsī intellegēbant sē nōn sine periculō id factūrōs, spēluncam intrāvērunt; quod cum fēcissent, magnam cōpiam lactis invērērunt, quod in vāsīs ingentibus erat. Dum tamen mīrantur quis eam sēdem incoleret,<sup>4</sup> sonitum terribilem audīvērunt.

Oculīs ad portam versīs mōnstrum horribile vīdērunt, hūmānā quidem figurā, sed ingentī magnitudīne corporis. Cum autem vīdissent gigantem ūnum tantum (*only*) oculum habēre in mediā fronte positum, intellēxērunt hunc esse ūnum ē Cyclōpibus, dē quibus fāmam iam accēperant.

<sup>1</sup> *and when they had come there (thither)*

<sup>2</sup> *I.e. cum sē.* See § 432; footnote 1.

<sup>3</sup> *and since these things were so.*

<sup>4</sup> This imperfect apparently violates the rule for sequence of tenses. But *mīrantur*, though a present, has the force of an imperfect tense.

## THE GIANT'S SUPPER

Cyclōpēs autem pāstōrēs erant quīdam, quī insulam Siciliam et praecipuē montem Aetnam incolēbant; ibi enim Volcānus, praeses fabrōrum et ignis repertor, cuius servī Cyclōpēs erant, officīnam suam habēbat.

Graeci igitur ubi mōnstrum vīdērunt, perterriti in interiōrem partem spēluncae refūgērunt et sē ibi cēlare cōnābantur.



MOUNT AETNA IN SICILY

The cave of Polyphēmus was supposed to be here and the rocks he threw at Ulysses are still shown scattered in the sea just off shore. This picture is taken from the Greek theater at Taormina.

Polyphēmus autem, hoc enim nōmen gigantis erat, pecora sua in spēluncam ēgit; tum cum<sup>1</sup> saxō ingentī portam obstrūxisset, ignem in mediā spēluncā fēcit. Hōc factō, oculō omnia perlūstrābat, et cum sēnsisset hominēs in interiōre parte spēluncae cēlārī, magnā vōce exclāmāvit: “Quī estis hominēs? Mercātōrēs an latrōnēs?”

<sup>1</sup> Although the word following **cum** is an ablative, **obstrūxisset** shows that **cum** must be the conjunction.

Tum Ulixēs respondit sē neque mercātōrēs neque latrōnēs esse, sed vī tempestātum ā rēctō cursū dēpulsōs eō pervēnisse. Tum Polyphēmus quaesivit ubi esset nāvis eōrum. Ulixēs respondit nāvem suam in rūpēs coniectam et frāctam esse. Polyphēmus autem nūllō datō respōnsō duo ē sociīs manū corripuit, et membrīs eōrum dīvulsīs<sup>1</sup> carnem dēvorāre coepit.

### NO WAY OF ESCAPE

Dum haec geruntur, Graecōrum animōs tantus terror occupāvit ut nē vōcem quidem ēdere<sup>2</sup> possent, sed omnī spē salutis dēpositā mortem praesentem expectārent. At Polyphēmus, postquam famēs hāc tam horribilī cēnā dēpulsus est, somnō sē dedit.

Quod cum vīdisset Ulixēs, nē tantam occāsiōnem omitteret, in animō habuit pectus mōnstrī gladiō trānsfigere. Tamen cōstituit prius<sup>3</sup> explōrāre quō modō ē spēluncā ēvādere possent. At cum saxum cōsiderāret quō introitus obstrūctus erat, dubitābat. Tanta enim erat eius saxī magnitūdō ut nē ā decem quidem hominibus āmovērī posset.

Quae cum ita essent, Ulixēs hōc dēstitit cōnātū. Sociī cum intellēxissent quō in locō (*situation*) rēs essent, dē fortūnis suis dēspērāre coepērunt. Ille tamen nē animōs dēmitterent<sup>4</sup> vehementer hortātus est; dēmōstrāvit sē iam antea ē multīs



ULYSSES.

From an ancient relief.

<sup>1</sup> *I.e.*, tearing them limb from limb.

<sup>3</sup> *First*, *i.e.*, before taking any action.

<sup>2</sup> *vōcem ēdere*, utter a word.

<sup>4</sup> *not to lose courage*.



et magnīs periculīs ēvāsisse, neque in tantō discrīmine deōrum auxilium āfutūrum esse.

### A PLAN FOR VENGEANCE

Primā lūce, Polyphēmus iam ē somnō excitātus idem quod hesternō diē fēcit;<sup>1</sup> correptīs enim duōbus ē reliquīs virīs carnem eōrum sine morā dēvorāvit. Tum, cum saxum amōvisset, ipse cum pecore suō ē spēluncā prōgressus est; quod cum vidērent Graeci magnam in spem vērunt sē ēvāsūrōs esse.<sup>2</sup> Mox tamen ab hāc spē repulsi sunt; nam Polyphēmus, postquam omnēs ovēs ēgressae sunt, saxum in locum restituit.

Tum reliquī lacrimīs sē dēdidērunt; Ulixēs vērō, quī, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, vir magnī fuit cōsili, etsi bene intellegēbat rem in discrīmine esse, nōndum dēspērābat. Tandem hoc cēpit cōsiliū. E lignīs quae in spēluncā erant pālum magnum dēlēgit; hunc summā cum dīligentiā praeacūtum fēcit; tum postquam sociis suum cōsiliū ostendit, reditum Polyphēmī exspectābat.

### A GLASS TOO MUCH

Sub vesperum Polyphēmus ad spēluncam vēnit, et eōdem modō quō<sup>3</sup> antea cēnāvit. Tum Ulixēs ūtrem vīnī cēpit, quem forte sēcum attulerat, et postquam magnam crātēram vīnō complēvit, gigantī eam dedit. Polyphēmus, quī numquam antea vīnum gustāverat, tōtam crātēram statim hausit; quod cum fēcisset, tantam voluptātem percēpit ut iterum et tertium (*a third time*) crātēram replērī iusserit.<sup>4</sup>

Tum quaesivit quō nōmine Ulixēs appellārētur. Ille respondit sē Nēminem appellārī; quod cum audīvisset, Poly-

<sup>1</sup> *I.e., idem fēcit quod hesternō diē fēcērat.*

<sup>2</sup> *sē ēvāsūrōs esse, that they were going to escape, depends on and explains spem.*

<sup>3</sup> *in the same way in which, i.e., in the same way as.*

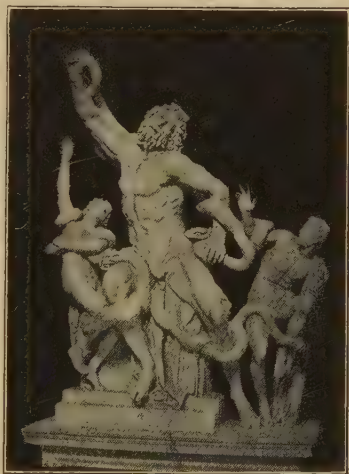
<sup>4</sup> *In clauses of result the perfect subjunctive is frequently used after historical tenses.*

phēmus ita locūtus est: "Hanc tibi grātiā prō tantō beneficiō referam:<sup>1</sup> tē ultimum omnium dēvorābō." His dictīs, cibō vīnōque gravis brevī tempore somnō oppressus est. Tum Ulixēs sociīs convocātis, "Habēmus," inquit, "quam petiimus facultātem;<sup>2</sup> nōn igitur tantam occāsiōnem nōs omittere oportet.<sup>3</sup>"

## NOBODY

Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, postquam extrēmum (*the end of*) pālū igne calefēcit, oculum Polyphēmī, dum dormit, ārdentī lignō trānsfōdit; quō factō, omnēs in dīversās spēluncae partēs sē abdidērunt. At ille subitō illō dolōre ē somnō excitātus clāmōrem terribilem sustulit, et dum per spēluncam errat, Ulixī manum inicere cōnābātur; cum tamen iam caecus esset, nūllō modō hoc efficere potuit.

Intereā reliquī Cyclōpēs, clāmōre auditō, undique ad spēluncam convēnērunt, et ā Polyphēmō quaesivērunt quam ob causam tantum clāmōrem sustulisset. Ille respondit sē graviter vulnerātum esse, et magnō dolōre afficī; cum tamen cēterī quaesivissent quis eum vulnerāvisset, respondit ille, "Nēmō id fēcit." Deinde ūnus ē



LAOCOÖN.

He was a priest of Apollo at Troy and was strangled by serpents together with two of his sons because he had offended the god.

<sup>1</sup> *hanc tibi grātiā referam, I will return you (i.e., do you in return) this favor.*

<sup>2</sup> *quam facultātem, the opportunity which.*

<sup>3</sup> *We ought not to lose such a chance. Omittere is the subject of the impersonal verb oportet.*

Cyclōpibus, "At sī," inquit, "nēmō tē vulnerāvit, cōnsiliō (*by the will*) deōrum, quibus<sup>1</sup> nostrās virēs oppōnere nōn dēbēmus, hōc suppliciō afficeris." Hīs dictīs discessērunt Cyclōpēs.

### THE ESCAPE

At Polyphēmus furōre impulsus Ulixem iterum quaerere coepit; tandem cum portam invēnisset, saxum quod portae obiectum erat amōvit. Tum ipse in introitū sēdit et ovium ēgredientium terga manibus trāctābat, nē virī inter ovēs ēgredī possent.

Quod cum vīdisset Ulixēs hoc cōsilium cēpit; postquam trēs ovēs inter sē (*to one another*) vīminibus coniūnxit, ūnum ē sociīs ventribus eārum subiēcit; deinde ovēs hominem sēcum ferentēs ad portam ēgit. Polyphēmus postquam manūs tergīs ovium imposuit, eās ēgredī passus est. Ulixēs ubi hoc vīdit, omnēs suōs sociōs eōdem modō ēmisit. Ipse ultimus ēvāsit.

### THE WRATH OF POLYPHEMUS

Hīs rēbus ita cōfectīs, Ulixēs cum sociīs quam celerrimē ad litus contendit; quō cum vēnissent, ab iis quī in nāve relictī erant magnā cum laetitiā acceptī sunt. Hī enim eōs in periculum grave vēnisse (id quod erat<sup>2</sup>) arbitrātī, aut nōnnūllōs submittere aut omnēs auxilium ferre parābant.

Tum Ulixēs quam celerrimē proficīscī cōstituit. Iussit igitur omnēs nāvem cōscendere, et, ancorīs sublātīs, paulum ā litore in altum prōvectus est. Tum magnā vōce exclāmāvit: "Tū, Polyphēme, quī iūra hospitī spernis, iūstās poenās crūdēlītātis tuae dedistī, nec tibi invidēō." Hāc vōce audītā Polyphēmus irā vehementer commōtus ad mare sē contulit, et saxum ingēns in eam partem unde vōcem venīre sēnsit frūstrā adiēcit. Graeci autem incolumēs cursum tenuērunt.

<sup>1</sup> Dative, indirect object of **opponere**.

<sup>2</sup> *that which was* (the case), *i.e.*, as was really the case.

## THE WINDS

Pauca mīlia passuum ab eō locō prōgressus Ulixēs ad insulam quandam nōmine Aeoliam pervēnit. Haec patria erat ventōrum. Ibi rēx Aeolus ipse Graecōs hospitio accēpit, atque iīs persuāsit ut paucōs diēs in eā regiōne manērent. Septimō diē, cum socii ē labōribus sē recēpissent, Ulixēs, nē annī tempore ā cursū excluderētur, sine morā proficisci statuit. Tum Aeolus sociōs Ulixis amplē dōnīs dōnāvit,<sup>1</sup> atque ipsi magnum dedit saccum, in quō omnēs ventōs praeter Zephyrum<sup>2</sup> inclūserat. Ulixēs hoc dōnum libenter accēpit; tum ē portū solvit.

Novem diēs Zephyrō secundō cursum tenuerant, iamque in cōspectum patriae suae veniēbant. Ulixēs, quī dēfessus erat, paulum quiētis<sup>3</sup> capiēbat. At socii, quī quid in illō sacco inclūsum esset ignōrābant, cum vidērent ducem somnō oppressum esse, magnam occāsiōnem sibi dari arbitrāti sunt; crēdebant enim aurum ibi cēlārī. Itaque saccum sine morā solvērunt.

Tum, ventis liberātis, tanta tempestās subitō orta est ut illi cursum tenēre nōn possent, sed in eandem partem unde erant profecti referrentur. Ulixēs ē somnō excitātus quō in locō rēs esset statim intellēxit; saccum solūtum, Ithacam post tergum relictam vidit. Tum vērō maximē irā commōtus sociōs incūsābat quod cupiditate pecūniae adducti spem salutis prōiēcērant.

## THE HOME OF CIRCE

Brevi intermissō spatio Graeci insulae cuidam appropinquāverunt, quam Circē, filia Sōlis, incolēbat. Ubi ad terram pervēnit, Ulixēs sociōs in duās partēs divīsit, quarum alteri<sup>4</sup> Eurylochus, vir summae virtutis, alteri ipse praeesset.<sup>5</sup> Hōc

<sup>1</sup> *presented with gifts.*

<sup>2</sup> The west wind was left out, because it was favorable for Ulysses.

<sup>3</sup> Genitive of the whole, depending on **paulum**.

<sup>4</sup> See § 440.

<sup>5</sup> *was to be in command.*

factō Euryloclus cum duōbus et vīgintī sociīs ē nāve ēgressus in interiōrem partem insulae profectus est. Magnus tamen timor animōs omnium occupāverat. Vix quidem poterant īlī quī in nāve relictī erant lacrimās tenēre; crēdebant enim sē sociōs suōs numquam postea vīsūrōs esse.

Illī autem brevī tempore ad villam quandam pervēnērunt. Hīc Circē ipsa omnēs ut domum intrārent invitāvit. Euryloclus, quī insidiās timēbat, forīs expectāre cōstituit; at reliquī rē novā adductī intrāvērunt. Cēnam invēnērunt omnibus rēbus instrūctam, quam libenter vīdērunt. At Circē vīnum medicāmētō quōdam miscuerat; quod cum illī bibissent, gravī somnō subitō oppressī sunt.

#### TRANSFORMATION AND COUNTERCHARM

Tum Circē, quae artis magicae summam scientiam habēbat, baculō aureō quod gerēbat capita eōrum tetigit; quō factō omnēs in porcōs subitō conversī sunt. Intereā Euryloclus, quī ignōrābat quid in aedibus agerētur, ad occāsum solis expectāvit; tum sōlus ad nāvem revertī cōstituit. Eō cum vēnisset, timōre ita perturbātus fuit ut vix ea quae vīderat nārrāre posset.

At Ulixēs satis intellēxit sociōs suōs in periculō esse, et Eurylochō imperāvit ut sine morā ad eam domum dūceret. Ille tamen multīs cum lacrimīs Ulixem orābat nē in tantum periculum sē prōiceret.<sup>1</sup> Ulixēs autem respondit sē nēminem invītum sēcum adductūrum; eī licēre in nāve manēre;<sup>2</sup> sē ipsum sine ūllō auxiliō rem susceptūrum.<sup>3</sup> Hoc cum magnā vōce dīxisset, ē nāvī dēsiluit, et nūllō sequente sōlus in viam sē dedit.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> **nē sē prōiceret**, not to throw himself.

<sup>2</sup> Subject of the impersonal **licēre**.

<sup>3</sup> This passage in the form of direct discourse would run as follows; **Nēminem invītum mēcum addūcam; tibi licet in nāve manēre; ego ipse sine ūllō auxiliō rem suscipiam.**

<sup>4</sup> **put himself on the way, started.**

Paulum itineris<sup>1</sup> prōgressus ad villam pervēnit, quam statim intrāre statuit; intellēxit enim hanc esse eandem dē quā Eurylochus dīxisset.<sup>2</sup> At cum ad līmen vēnisset, subitō adulēscētem figurā pulcherrimā vīdit, aureum baculum manū gerentem. Hic, “Quid tē,” inquit, “impellit, aut quō ruis? Nōne scīs hanc esse Circēs<sup>3</sup> domum? Hīc inclūsī sunt amīcī tuī, ex hūmānā figurā in porcōs conversī. Num cupis ipse eundem cāsum ferre?”

Ulixēs ubi vōcem audīvit deum Mercurium agnōvit; nullīs<sup>4</sup> tamen precibus ā cōsiliō dēterrērī potuit. Quod cum Mercurius sēnsisset, herbam quandam eī dedit, quam<sup>5</sup> contrā artem magicam maximam vim habēre dicēbat. “Hanc cape (*take*),” inquit, “et ubi Circē tē baculō tetigerit,<sup>6</sup> tū gladiō impetum in eam fac (*make*).” Hīs dictīs Mercurius ex oculīs Ulixīs sē ēripuit.

#### THE ENCHANTRESS FOILED. RESTORATION

Brevī intermissō spatiō Ulixēs domum intrāvit, et ab ipsā Circē benignē exceptus est. Omnia eōdem modō atque<sup>7</sup> antea facta sunt. Cēnam omnibus rēbus instrūctam vīdit, et accumbere<sup>8</sup> iussus est. Mox, ubi famēs cibō dēpulsa est, Circē pōculum aureum vīnō replētum Ulixī dedit. Ille timēbat nē (*that*) venēnum in vīnō esset, pōculum tamen hausit; quō factō Circē, postquam caput eius baculō tetigit, ea verba locūta est quibus sociōs eius antea in porcōs converterat.

At tanta erat vīs eius herbae quam Mercurius dederat, ut neque venēnum neque verba quicquam efficere possent. Ulixēs autem, ut eī Mercurius praecēperat, gladiō impetum in eam

<sup>1</sup> Genitive of the whole, depending on **paulum**.

<sup>2</sup> This verb is subjunctive, because it is the verb of a subordinate clause of the indirect statement.

<sup>3</sup> A Greek form of the genitive.

<sup>4</sup> *not . . . any*. Put the negative with the translation of **potuit**.

<sup>5</sup> The subject of **habēre**. <sup>6</sup> *touches*, literally *shall have touched*.

<sup>7</sup> *as*. **Atque** regularly has this meaning after words of likeness.

<sup>8</sup> To recline at table was a Roman custom, often attributed by Latin writers to others than Romans.



fēcit. Tum Circē, cum sēnsisset artem suam nihil valēre,<sup>1</sup> multīs cum lacrimīs eum nē sē interficeret<sup>2</sup> ōrāvit.

Ulixēs autem, ubi sēnsit eam timōre perterritam esse, postulāvit ut sociōs sine morā in hūmānam figuram reduceret. At Circē hīs rēbus graviter commōta ad pedēs eius sē prōiēcit, et multīs cum lacrimīs iūre iūrando cōfirmāvit sē omnibus rēbus<sup>3</sup> eī<sup>4</sup> satisfactūram esse; tum porcōs in domum immittī iussit. Illi cum ducem suum agnōvissent, magnō dolōre affecti sunt, quod nullō modō potuerunt eum dē rēbus suis certiōrem facere.

Circē tamen unguentō quōdam corpora eōrum ūnxit; quō factō omnēs in figuram hūmānam redditī sunt. Magnō cum gaudiō Ulixēs amīcōs agnōvit, et nūntium ad lītus mīsīt, quī reliquīs<sup>5</sup> Graecis sociōs receptōs esse diceret. Illi autem hīs rēbus cognitīs statim ad domum Circēs sē contulērunt; quō cum vēnissent, omnēs ūniversī laetitiae sē dēdidērunt.

### AFLOAT AGAIN

Posterō diē Ulixēs in animō habēbat ex insulā quam celerimē discēdere; Circē autem, quae iam amōrī sē submittebat,<sup>6</sup> omnibus precibus eum ōrāre coepit ut paucōs diēs apud sē morārētur. Hōc tandem impetrātō tanta beneficia in eum contulit ut tōtum annum ibi cōsūmeret. Tum autem magnus amor patriae et uxōris eum cēpit. Sociīs igitur ad sē convocātīs quid in animō habēret ostendit.

Ubi tamen ad lītus dēscendit, nāvem suam tempestātibus ita frāctam invēnit ut paene inūtilis esset; socii autem cum tantā diligentīā labōrābant ut ante tertium diem nāvem refēcerint. Circē ubi vīdit profectiōnem parārī, Ulixem vehementer ōrābat ut eō cōsiliō dēsisteret. Ille tamen, nē annī tempore ā cursū exclūderētur, rē frūmentāriā comparātā eōdem diē nāvem solvit.

<sup>1</sup> *nihil valēre*, had no power, or effect.

<sup>2</sup> *nē sē interficeret*, not to kill her.

<sup>3</sup> Ablative, in all respects.

<sup>4</sup> Dative, depending on *satisfactūram esse*.

<sup>5</sup> Indirect object of *diceret*.

<sup>6</sup> *was submitting herself to, was yielding to*.





**GAUL**  
at the time of  
**CAESAR.**

SCALE OF ROMAN MILES

0 20 40 60 80 100 150

Longitude 4° West from 2° Greenwich 0°





# C. IULII CAESARIS DE BELLO GALLICO

## SELECTIONS FROM BOOK I

### DIVISIONS OF GAUL

Gallia est omnis dīvisa<sup>1</sup> in partēs trēs, quārum<sup>2</sup> ūnam<sup>3</sup> incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam,<sup>4</sup> quī ipsōrum linguā<sup>5</sup> Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā,<sup>6</sup> institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, proximīque sunt Germānīs,<sup>7</sup> quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte<sup>8</sup> praecedunt, quod ferē cotidiānīs proeliīs<sup>9</sup> cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suis finibus<sup>10</sup> eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum<sup>11</sup> finibus bellum gerunt.

### THE HELVETIANS DECIDE TO MIGRATE

Undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit, alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs, tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fiēbat,<sup>12</sup> ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs<sup>13</sup> bellum inferre possent. Prō<sup>14</sup> multitudīne autem

---

<sup>1</sup> The perfect passive participle of dīvidō used as a predicate adjective.

<sup>2</sup> § 283.

<sup>3</sup> Supply *partem*.

<sup>4</sup> *tertiam, quī = tertiam partem ei incolunt, quī.*

<sup>5</sup> § 87.

<sup>8</sup> § 238.

<sup>11</sup> § 458<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>6</sup> § 238.

<sup>9</sup> § 87.

<sup>12</sup> The subject is *ut . . . possent*.

<sup>7</sup> § 258.

<sup>10</sup> § 336.

<sup>13</sup> § 440.

<sup>14</sup> *Considering*.



hominum et prō glōriā bellī angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur.

### THEY PREPARE TO DEPART

Cōstituērunt ea, quae ad proficiēscendum pertinērent,<sup>1</sup> comparāre,<sup>2</sup> iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere,<sup>2</sup> sēmentēs quam maximās facere,<sup>2</sup> cum proximīs civitātibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre.<sup>2</sup> Ad eās rēs cōficiendās<sup>3</sup> biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.

Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī erant,<sup>4</sup> combūrunt.

### TWO WAYS TO GO

Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent;<sup>5</sup> ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur;<sup>5</sup> mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius, propterea quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllis locīs vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt, quā diē ad ripam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant.<sup>6</sup>

### CAESAR LEARNS THEIR PLANS

Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī,<sup>7</sup> mātūrat ab urbe proficiēscī et, quam maximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad

<sup>1</sup> Subjunctive because it is a dependent clause in implied indirect discourse.

<sup>2</sup> These infinitives complete the meaning of cōstituērunt.

<sup>3</sup> § 536, 3.

<sup>4</sup> § 542.

<sup>5</sup> Subjunctive of characteristic.

<sup>6</sup> Subjunctive of purpose.

<sup>7</sup> eōs . . . cōnārī explains id.

Genavam pervenit. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, quī dīcerent,<sup>1</sup> sibi<sup>2</sup> esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum. Ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum<sup>3</sup> mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit, diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum.

Intereā eā legiōne,<sup>4</sup> quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque,<sup>4</sup> quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mūrū fossamque perdūcit.

### HE THWARTS THEIR PLANS

Ubi ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare et, sī vim facere cōentur, prohibitūrum<sup>5</sup> ostendit. Helvētiī eā spē<sup>6</sup> dēiectī, nāvibus iūctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, sī<sup>7</sup> perrumpere possent,<sup>8</sup> cōnātī, mīlitum concursū<sup>9</sup> et tēlīs<sup>9</sup> repulsī hōc cōnātū<sup>6</sup> dēstitērunt.

### SELECTIONS FROM BOOK II

#### THE BELGIANS CONSPIRE AGAINST THE ROMANS

Cum esset<sup>10</sup> Caesar in citeriōre Galliā crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur, litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fiēbat, omnēs Belgās<sup>11</sup> contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare.

Hīs nūntiīs<sup>12</sup> litterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit et initā aestāte,<sup>13</sup> in ulteriōrem Galliam quī<sup>14</sup> dēdūceret,<sup>1</sup> Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum primum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet,<sup>10</sup> ad exercitum vēnit.

<sup>1</sup> § 366.

<sup>2</sup> § 528.

<sup>3</sup> *Until*.

<sup>4</sup> § 87.

<sup>5</sup> **prohibitūrum = sē prohibitūrum esse.**

<sup>6</sup> § 336.

<sup>7</sup> *Whether*.

<sup>8</sup> § 424.

<sup>9</sup> § 87.

<sup>10</sup> § 491.

<sup>11</sup> § 327.

<sup>12</sup> § 229.

<sup>13</sup> § 484 (a), 1.

<sup>14</sup> § 417.

Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs, quī finitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cognōscant<sup>1</sup> sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant.<sup>1</sup> Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt, manūs<sup>2</sup> cōgī,<sup>3</sup> exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī.<sup>3</sup> Rē frūmentāriā comparātā<sup>4</sup> castra movet diēbusque<sup>5</sup> circiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervēnit.

#### THE REMI DECLARE THEIR LOYALTY TO CAESAR

Eō cum vēnisset, Rēmī ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andecum-borium, primōs cīvitatīs, mīsērunt, quī dicerent,<sup>1</sup> sē suae omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant,<sup>6</sup> sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse.

#### CAESAR FINDS OUT THE STRENGTH OF THE ENEMY

Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae cīvitatēs quantaeque in armīs essent<sup>7</sup> et quid in bellō possent,<sup>7</sup> sic reperiēbat: plērōsque Belgās<sup>2</sup> esse ortōs ab Germānīs Rhēnumque antiquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse. Plūrimū<sup>8</sup> inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte<sup>9</sup> et auctōritāte<sup>9</sup> et hominum numerō<sup>9</sup> valēre;<sup>3</sup> hōs posse cōnficere armāta mīlia centum; pollicitōs ex eō numerō elēcta sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre.

Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimū; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nervīos; quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs xxv mīlia, Menapiōs VII

<sup>1</sup> § 366.

<sup>2</sup> § 327.

<sup>3</sup> § 323.

<sup>4</sup> § 484.

<sup>5</sup> § 182.

<sup>6</sup> Subjunctive because it is a subordinate verb in indirect discourse.

<sup>7</sup> § 424.

<sup>8</sup> § 405.

<sup>9</sup> § 238.

mīlia, Caletōs x mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs xix mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemanōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad xl mīlia.

#### CAESAR GIVES DIRECTIONS TO THE REMI

Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus omnem senātum<sup>1</sup> ad sē convenīre principumque liberōs obsidēs<sup>2</sup> ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Aeduum magnopere cohortātus docet, quantō opere rei pūblīcae commūnisque salūtis<sup>3</sup> intersit<sup>4</sup> manūs hostium distīnērī. Id fierī posse,<sup>5</sup> sī suās cōpiās Aeduī in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint<sup>6</sup> et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs datīs mandātīs eum ā sē dīmīttit.

#### CAESAR CROSSES THE RIVER AND FORTIFIES HIS CAMP

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās<sup>1</sup> ad sē venīre vīdit, flūmen<sup>7</sup> Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum<sup>7</sup> trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitūdinem pedum<sup>8</sup> xii vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

#### THE BELGIANS ATTACK BIBRAX

Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine<sup>9</sup> Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Ubi, circumiectā<sup>10</sup> multītūdine hominū tōtis moenibus,<sup>11</sup> undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt,<sup>12</sup> mūrusque dēfēnsōribus<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup> § 327.

<sup>2</sup> § 221.

<sup>3</sup> Genitive after the impersonal verb *intersit*.

<sup>4</sup> § 424.

<sup>5</sup> § 323.

<sup>6</sup> Subjunctive because it is a subordinate verb in indirect discourse.

<sup>7</sup> *Trādūcere* governs two accusatives.

<sup>8</sup> § 464 (a).

<sup>9</sup> § 238.

<sup>10</sup> § 484.

<sup>11</sup> § 440.

<sup>12</sup> Passive voice when followed by a passive infinitive.

<sup>13</sup> § 336.

nūdātus est, testūdine factā succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī<sup>1</sup> potestās erat nullī.<sup>2</sup> Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, quī tum oppidō<sup>3</sup> praefuerat, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur,<sup>4</sup> sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.<sup>5</sup>

#### CAESAR SENDS RELIEF TO THE TOWN, AND THE BELGIANS MARCH AGAINST HIM

Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar isdem<sup>6</sup> ducibus<sup>7</sup> ūsus, quī nūntiī<sup>7</sup> ab Icciō vñerant, sagittāriōs et funditōrēs subsidiō<sup>8</sup> oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū hostibus<sup>9</sup> spēs potiundī<sup>10</sup> oppidī discessit. Paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vñcīs<sup>11</sup> aedificiisque, quōs adire potuerant, incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs<sup>12</sup> contendērunt et ab milibus<sup>13</sup> passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

#### CAESAR PREPARES FOR BATTLE

Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō<sup>9</sup> supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis virtūte posset<sup>14</sup> et quid nostrī audērent, periclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, ab utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum CD et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē hostēs ab lateribus pignantēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōscripserat, in castrīs relictis, ut subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in acie cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās instrūxerant.

<sup>1</sup> § 531.<sup>2</sup> § 528.<sup>3</sup> § 440.<sup>4</sup> Subjunctive of subordinate clause in indirect discourse.<sup>5</sup> § 323.<sup>6</sup> § 389.<sup>7</sup> § 221.<sup>8</sup> § 522.<sup>9</sup> § 336.<sup>10</sup> § 533.<sup>11</sup> § 484.<sup>12</sup> § 136.<sup>13</sup> § 272.<sup>14</sup> § 424.

## THE BELGIANS ATTEMPT TO CUT OFF CAESAR'S SUPPLIES

Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Ubi neutri trānseundī initium faciunt Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō,<sup>1</sup> ut, sī possent,<sup>2</sup> castellum, cui<sup>3</sup> praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus, expugnārent<sup>4</sup> pontemque interseinderent, sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur,<sup>4</sup> quī magnō nobīs ūsuī<sup>5</sup> ad bellum gerendum<sup>6</sup> erant, commeātūque<sup>7</sup> nostrōs prohibērent.

## THE BELGIANS ARE DEFEATED AND DISPERSED

Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et funditōrēs sagittariōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est.<sup>8</sup> Hostēs impeditōs nostrī<sup>9</sup> in flūmine aggressī magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō<sup>10</sup> et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredī pugnandī<sup>11</sup> causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, cōnsiliō convocātō, cōstituērunt optimum esse, domum<sup>12</sup> suam quemque revertī, quod Aeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cognōverant.

Eā rē cōstitutā<sup>13</sup> secundā vigiliā<sup>14</sup> magnō cum strepitū<sup>15</sup> ac tumultū castrīs<sup>7</sup> ēgressī nullō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret<sup>16</sup> et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt, ut cōnsimilis fugae<sup>17</sup> profectiō vīdērētur.<sup>18</sup>

## THEY ARE PURSUED BY THE ROMAN ARMY, AND MANY ARE SLAIN

Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā, insidiās veritus, quod, quā dē causā discēderent,<sup>19</sup> nōndum perspexerat,

<sup>1</sup> § 229.<sup>2</sup> Subjunctive by attraction.<sup>3</sup> § 440.<sup>4</sup> § 366.<sup>5</sup> § 522.<sup>6</sup> § 536, 3.<sup>7</sup> § 336.<sup>8</sup> Fighting was carried on.<sup>9</sup> § 441<sup>2</sup>.<sup>10</sup> § 533.<sup>11</sup> § 531.<sup>12</sup> § 299.<sup>13</sup> § 484.<sup>14</sup> § 182.<sup>15</sup> § 151.<sup>16</sup> § 492.<sup>17</sup> § 258.<sup>18</sup> § 402.<sup>19</sup> § 424.



exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Primā luce<sup>1</sup> cōfirmatā rē ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur,<sup>2</sup> praemisit. His<sup>3</sup> Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefecit. T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hi novissimōs adorti et multa milia passuum prōsecuti magnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium conciderunt. Sub occāsum sōlis sequi dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

#### CAESAR ATTACKS THE SUESSIONES, AND THEIR CHIEF TOWN, NOVIODUNUM, SURRENDERS

Caesar, in finēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere<sup>4</sup> ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem, paucis dēfendentibus,<sup>5</sup> expugnāre nōn potuit. Castris mūnītis, vīneās agere coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs<sup>6</sup> ad oppidum actis, aggere iactō turribusque cōstitūtis, magnitudine<sup>7</sup> operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritate<sup>7</sup> Rōmānōrum permōti lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs, ut cōservarentur, impetrant.

#### THE BELLOVACI COME AND SEEK PEACE

Caesar, obsidibus acceptis primis<sup>8</sup> civitātis atque ipsius Galbae rēgis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppidō traditis, in dēditionem Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaeque omnia in oppidum Brātuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia passuum quinq̄ue abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū<sup>9</sup> ex oppidō

<sup>1</sup> § 182.<sup>2</sup> § 366.<sup>3</sup> § 440.<sup>4</sup> By a forced march.<sup>5</sup> § 484 (a) 4.<sup>6</sup> § 484.<sup>7</sup> § 229.<sup>8</sup> § 221.<sup>9</sup> § 238.

ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre<sup>1</sup> coepērunt, sēsē<sup>2</sup> in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset<sup>3</sup> castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs<sup>4</sup> manibus suō mōre<sup>5</sup> pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

#### DIVICIACUS PLEADS FOR THE BELLOVACI

Prō hīs Dīviciācus facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Aeduae fuisse: impulsōs ā suīs principibus et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī<sup>6</sup> eius cōnsiliī principēs fuissent, quod intellegent quantam calamitātem cīvitātī<sup>7</sup> intulissent,<sup>8</sup> in Britanniam profūgissee. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Aeduōs, ut suā clēmētiā<sup>9</sup> ac mānsuētūdine in eōs utātur.

#### CAESAR ACCEPTS THE SURRENDER

Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dīxit; quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte<sup>10</sup> atque hominum multitūdine<sup>11</sup> praestābat, sescentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs, ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

#### SELECTIONS FROM BOOK IV

##### CAESAR PLANS AN EXPEDITION TO BRITAIN

Caesar in Britanniam proficīscī contendit. Neque praeter mercātōrēs illō<sup>12</sup> adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset<sup>13</sup> insulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent<sup>13</sup> neque quī essent<sup>13</sup> ad maiōrum nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

<sup>1</sup> § 210.

<sup>2</sup> § 327.

<sup>3</sup> § 491.

<sup>4</sup> § 484.

<sup>5</sup> § 151.

<sup>6</sup> Supply eōs as subject of profūgissee and antecedent of quī.

<sup>7</sup> § 440.

<sup>8</sup> § 424.

<sup>9</sup> § 389.

<sup>10</sup> § 464.

<sup>11</sup> § 238.

<sup>12</sup> Adverb.

<sup>13</sup> § 424.

## HE FINDS OUT ALL HE CAN ABOUT THE ISLAND

Ad haec cognōscenda, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvi longā praemittit. Huic mandat, ut ad sē quam primum revertātur. Interim cōnsiliō eius cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus insulae civitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur<sup>1</sup> obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus auditīs, eōs domum remittit, et cum iīs Commium, cuius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābatur, mittit. Huic imperat, quās possit,<sup>2</sup> adeat civitatēs sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet.

HE CROSSES, AND ON LANDING IS ATTACKED BY THE  
BRITONS

Hōrā diēi circiter quartā cum primīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. Cuius locī haec<sup>3</sup> erat nātūra, atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in litus tēlum adigī posset. Interim lēgātīs convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset,<sup>4</sup> et quae fieri vellet,<sup>4</sup> ostendit.

At barbarī, cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitatū reliquīs cōpiīs<sup>5</sup> subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitudinem nisi in altō cōstituī nōn poterant, militibus<sup>6</sup> autem ignōtīs locīs, magnō et gravī onere armōrum pressīs,<sup>7</sup> simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum<sup>8</sup> et in flūctibus cōsistendum<sup>8</sup> et cum hostibus erat pugnandum,<sup>8</sup> cum illi aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressi omnibus membrīs expeditīs, nōtissimīs locīs audācter tēla conicerent.

<sup>1</sup> § 366.<sup>2</sup> Subjunctive by attraction.<sup>3</sup> Such.<sup>4</sup> § 424.<sup>5</sup> § 136.<sup>6</sup> § 546.<sup>7</sup> Agrees with *militibus*.<sup>8</sup> Passive periphrastic used impersonally.

THE STANDARD BEARER OF THE TENTH LEGION SETS AN  
EXAMPLE OF BRAVERY

Atque nostrīs militibus cunctantibus, maximē propter altitudinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, “Dēsilitē,” inquit, “commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium prae-stiterō.” Hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē ex nāvī dēsiluērunt.

AFTER A BITTER STRUGGLE THE BRITONS ARE FORCED  
TO FLEE

Pugnātum est ab utrīsq̄ue ācritē. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque signa subsequī poterant, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtis omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōspexerant, plūrēs<sup>1</sup> paucōs circumsistēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōstitērunt, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt.

## THEY MAKE PEACE

Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs, quaeque imperāset factūrōs sēsē pollicitī sunt. Caesar quod bellum sine causā intulissent obsidēs imperāvit; quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt.

## SELECTIONS FROM BOOK VI

THE TWO CLASSES OF GALLIC NOBILITY; THE KNIGHTS  
AND THE DRUIDS

In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum, quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre, genera sunt duo. Dē hīs duōbus generibus

---

<sup>1</sup> *Several.*

alterum est druidum,<sup>1</sup> alterum equitum.<sup>1</sup> Illī rēbus dīvinīs intersunt, ad eōs magnus adulēscētiū numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Ferē dē omnibus contrōversiis pūblicis prīvātisque cōstituunt. Hīs autem omnibus druidibus<sup>2</sup> praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hūc omnēs undique, quī contrōversiās habent, conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētis iūdicīisque pārent.

### PRIVILEGES OF THE DRUIDS

Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus mittuntur. Multa dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē terrārum magnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortalīum vī ac potestāte disputant.

### THE GODS OF THE GAULS AND THEIR ATTRIBUTES

Deōrum<sup>3</sup> maximē Mercurium colunt: huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē, quam reliquae gentēs, habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere.

Huic, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōstituērunt, ea, quae bellō cēperint, plērumque dēvoent: cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōferunt. Multis in cīvitatibus hārum rērum tumulōs cōspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit, ut quispiam aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere auderet, gravissimumque eī rei supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum est.

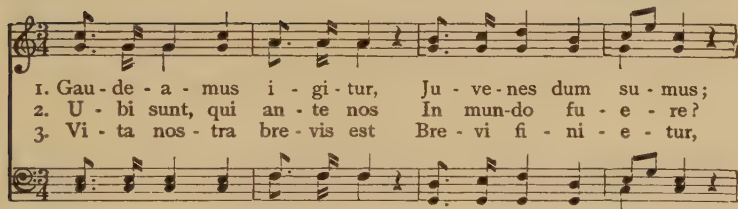
<sup>1</sup> Genitive after **est** meaning *composed of*.

<sup>2</sup> § 440.

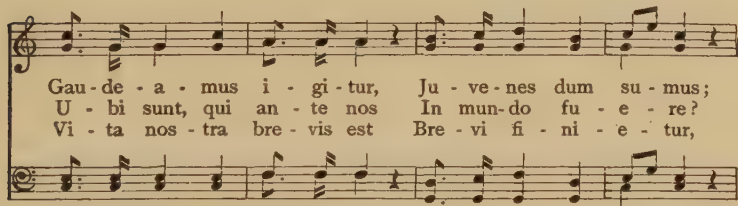
<sup>3</sup> § 283, depending on **maximē**.

## GAUDEAMUS IGITUR

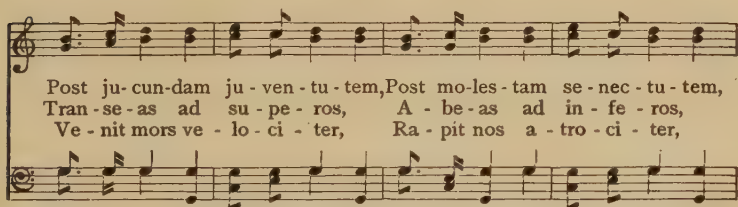
Student Song



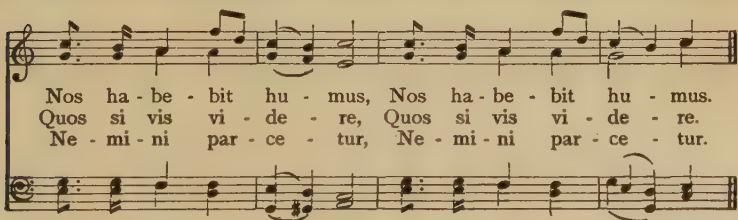
1. Gau - de - a - mus i - gi - tur, Ju - ve - nes dum su - mus;  
 2. U - bi sunt, qui an - te nos In mun - do fu - e - re?  
 3. Vi - ta nos - tra bre - vis est Bre - vi fi - ni - e - tur,



Gau - de - a - mus i - gi - tur, Ju - ve - nes dum su - mus;  
 U - bi sunt, qui an - te nos In mun - do fu - e - re?  
 Vi - ta nos - tra bre - vis est Bre - vi fi - ni - e - tur,



Post ju - cun - dam ju - ven - tu - tem, Post mo - les - tam se - nec - tu - tem,  
 Tran - se - as ad su - pe - ros, A - be - as ad in - fe - ros,  
 Ve - nit mors ve - lo - ci - ter, Ra - pit nos a - tro - ci - ter,



Nos ha - be - bit hu - mus, Nos ha - be - bit hu - mus.  
 Quos si vis vi - de - re, Quos si vis vi - de - re.  
 Ne - mi - ni par - ce - tur, Ne - mi - ni par - ce - tur.

4. Alma mater floreat,  
 Quæ nos educavit,  
 Caros et commilitones,  
 Dissitas in regiones  
 Sparsos, congregavit.

5. Vivat et re publica  
 Et qui illam regit,  
 Vivat nostra civitas,  
 Mæcenatum caritas,  
 Quæ nos hic protegit.



## VEXILLUM STELLATUM

ANTHONY F. GEYSER, S. J.

JOHN S. SMITH

1. Po - test - ne cer - ni, pro - ful - gen - te di - e,  
 2. Vix in o - ra ma - ris vi - sum per te - ne - bras,  
 3. Sic es - to sem - per, ma - nus quam li - be - ra

Sa - lu - ta - tum sig - num cir - ca noc - tis ad - ven - tum?  
 Hos - tis u - bi cas - tra ta - ci - tus col - lo - ca - vit,  
 Ar - cet a pa - tri - a bel - li vas - ta - ti - o - nem!

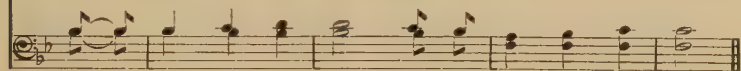
La - ti clavi<sup>1</sup> et stel - lae, de - cer - tante a - ci - e,  
 Quid est hoc quod ven - tus, mon - tis per la - te - bras  
 Tri - um - phan - te pa - ce pa - tri - a pros - pe - ra

Glo - ri - o - se cin - gunt op - pi - di mu - ni - men - tum!  
 Vo - li - tans, a - pe - rit rur - sus et com - pli - ca - vit?  
 De - um lau - det qui nos sta - tu - it na - ti - o - nem!

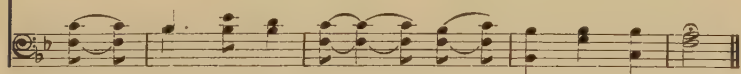
<sup>1</sup> Letters printed in italics are elided in singing



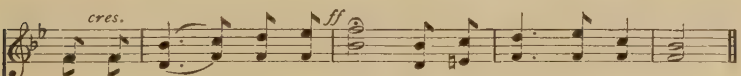
Ia - cu - lum - que ru - bens, glo - bus se - se rum - pens  
 Quum sol e - mi - net, dul - ce sig - num ri - det,  
 Nam vin - ci - mus nos, quan - do cau - sa ius - ta est. —



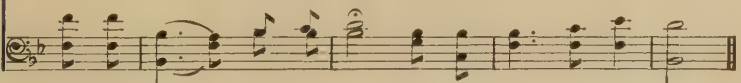
Per noc - tem mon - strant . . vex - il - lum ful - gens:  
 Ma-ris mox in pu - ro . . spe - cu - lo se vi - det:  
 Haec nos - tra sit vox: . . "De - us sa - lus nos-tra est":



Stel - la - tum - ne vex - il - lum flui - tans te - git nos,  
 Stel - la - tum vex - il - lum diu pro - te - gat nos,  
 Stel - la - tum vex - il - lum trium-phans te - get nos,



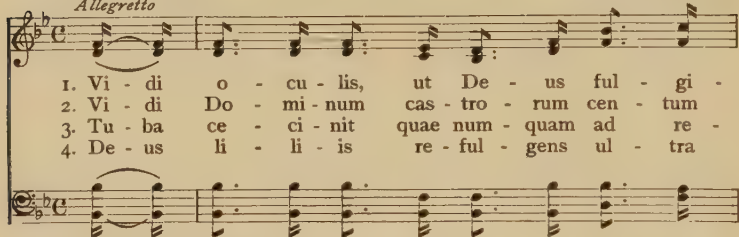
Pa - tri - am li - be - ram for - ti - um - que do - mos!



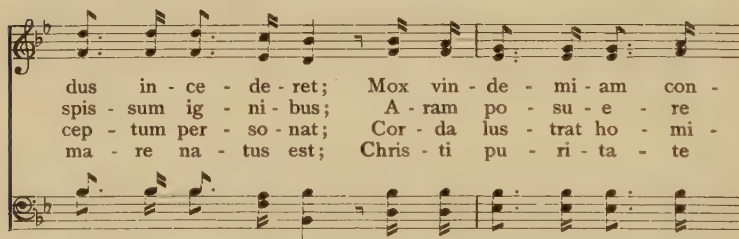
## REI PUBLICAE PAEAN MILITARIS

ANTHONY F. GREYER

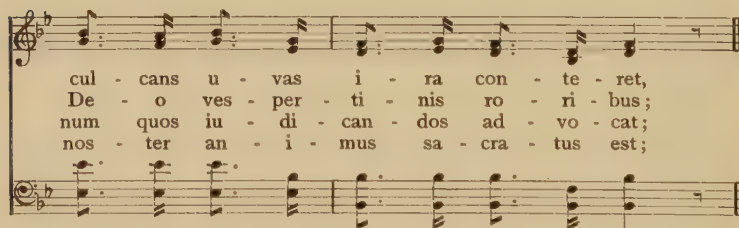
WILLIAM STEFFE

*Allegretto*


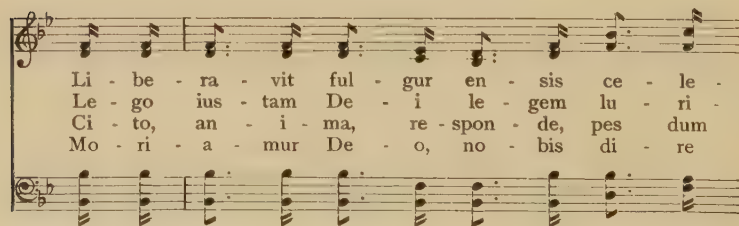
1. Vi - di o - cu - lis, ut De - us ful - gi -  
 2. Vi - di Do - mi - num cas - tro - rum cen - tum  
 3. Tu - ba ce - ci - nit quae num - quam ad re -  
 4. De - us li - li - is re - ful - gens ul - tra



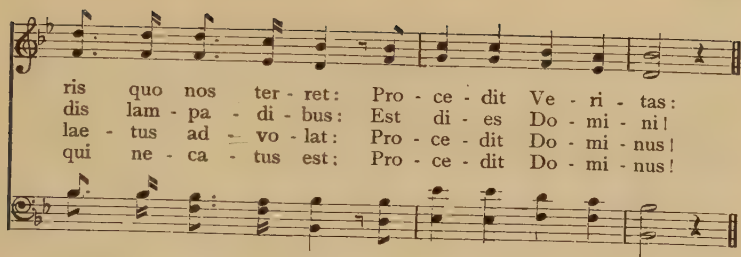
cus in - ce - de - ret; Mox vin - de - mi - am con -  
 spis - sum ig - ni - bus; A - ram po - su - e - re  
 cep - tum per - so - nat; Cor - da lus - trat ho - mi -  
 ma - re na - tus est; Chris - ti pu - ri - ta - te



cul - cans u - vas i - ra con - te - ret,  
 De - o ves - per - ti - nis ro - ri - bus;  
 num quos iu - di - can - dos ad - vo - cat;  
 nos - ter an - i - mus sa - cra - tus est;

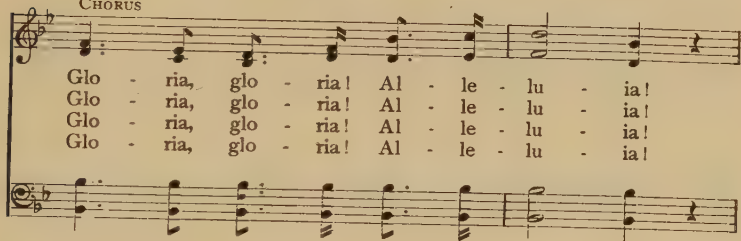


Li - be - ra - vit ful - gur en - sis ce - le -  
 Le - go ius - tam De - i le - gem lu - ri -  
 Ci - to, an - i - ma, re - spon - de, pes dum  
 Mo - ri - a - mur De - o, no - bis di - re

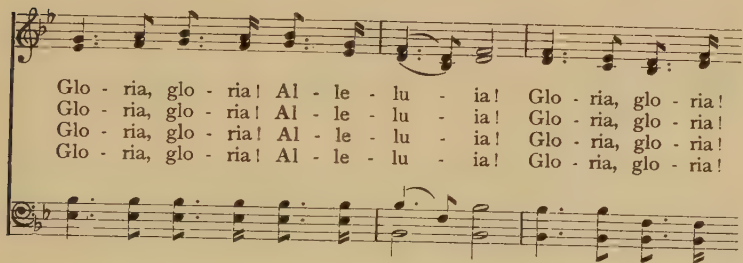


ris quo nos ter - ret: Pro - ce - dit Ve - ri - tas:  
 dis lam - pa - di - bus: Est di - es Do - mi - ni!  
 lae - tus ad - vo - lat: Pro - ce - dit Do - mi - nus!  
 qui ne - ca - tus est: Pro - ce - dit Do - mi - nus!

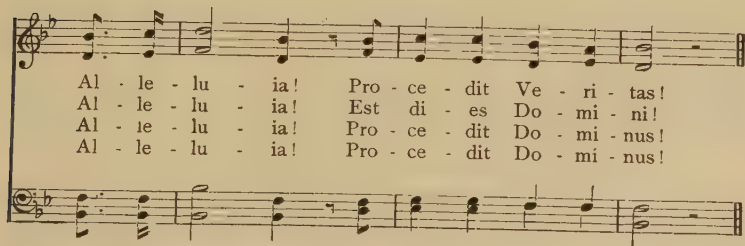
## CHORUS



Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia!  
 Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia!  
 Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia!  
 Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia!



Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia! Glo - ria, glo - ria!  
 Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia! Glo - ria, glo - ria!  
 Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia! Glo - ria, glo - ria!  
 Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia! Glo - ria, glo - ria!



Al - le - lu - ia! Pro - ce - dit Ve - ri - tas!  
 Al - le - lu - ia! Est di - es Do - mi - ni!  
 Al - le - lu - ia! Pro - ce - dit Do - mi - nus!  
 Al - le - lu - ia! Pro - ce - dit Do - mi - nus!

## FLEVIT LEPUS PARVULUS

16th Century Student Song



1. Fle - vit le - pus par - vu - lus cla - mans al - tis vo - ci - bus :
2. Ne - que in hor - to fu - i, ne - que o - lus co - me - di.
3. Lon - gas au - res ha - be - o, bre - vem cau - dam te - ne - o.



Quid fe - ci ho - mi - ni - bus, quod me se - quun - tur ca - ni - bus ?



Quid fe - ci ho - mi - ni - bus, quod me se - quun - tur ca - ni - bus ?



4. Leves pedes habeo, magnum saltum facio. Quid etc.
5. Domus mea silva est, lectus meus durus est. Quid etc.

## DIES FESTUS HODIE

C. M. VON WEBER, 1826

1. Tem - pus hoc lae - ti - ti - ae! Di - es fes - tus ho - di - e!  
 2. Sti - lus nam et ta - bu - lae Fe - ri - a - les e - pu - lae,  
 3. Quic - quid a - gant a - li - i Iu - ve - nes a - me - mus

Om - nes de - bent psal - le - re, Can - ti - le - nas pro - me - re:  
 Et Na - so - nis car - mi - na Vel auc - to - rum pa - gi - na.  
 Et cum tur - ba plu - ri - mum Lu - dum ce - le - bre - mus.

## DOMINE SALVAM FAC

CHARLES GOUNOD

*Maestoso**ff*

Do - mi - ne, sal - vam fac pa - tri - am nos - tram A - me - ri - cam,

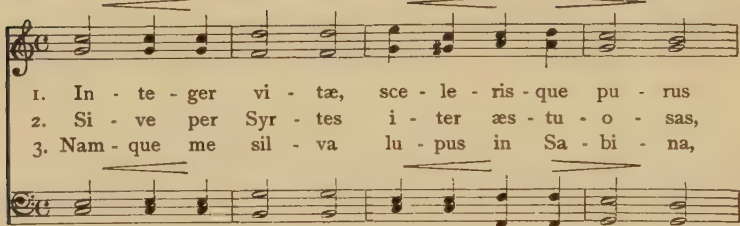
et ex - au - di nos in di - e quâ in - vo - ca - ve - ri - mus te.



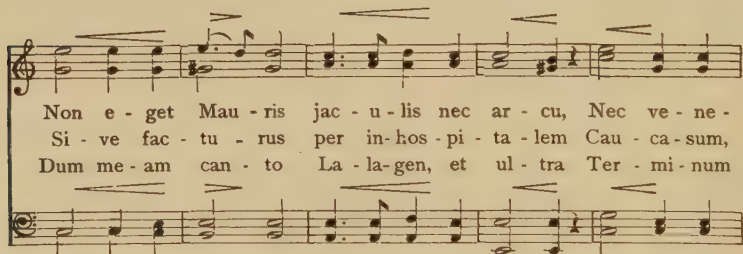
## INTEGER VITAE

HORACE, Ode xxii

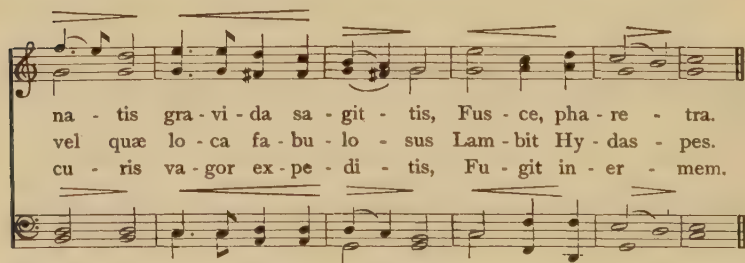
F. FLEMMING, 1810



1. In - te - ger vi - tæ, sce - le - ris - que pu - rus  
 2. Si - ve per Syr - tes i - ter æs - tu - o - sas,  
 3. Nam - que me sil - va lu - pus in Sa - bi - na,



Non e - get Mau - ris jac - u - lis nec ar - cu, Nec ve - ne -  
 Si - ve fac - tu - rus per in - hos - pi - ta - lem Cau - ca - sum,  
 Dum me - am can - to La - la - gen, et ul - tra Ter - mi - num



na - tis gra - vi - da sa - git - tis, Fus - ce, pha - re - tra.  
 vel quæ lo - ca fa - bu - lo - sus Lam - bit Hy - das - pes.  
 cu - ris va - gor ex - pe - di - tis, Fu - git in - er - mem.

The pure in life and free from crime needs no Moorish darts nor bow, nor, my Fuscus, a quiver laden with poisoned arrows, whether he means to journey over the boiling Syrtis, or over the inhospitable Caucasus, or the places laved by storied Hydaspes. For from me, whilst singing my Lalagé in my Sabine wood, and roving beyond its bound with cares cast aside, there fled a wolf, unarmed as I was.

Translated by WILLIAM COUTTS.

## APPENDIX



# APPENDIX I

## FREQUENCY OF LATIN WORDS AND PHRASES

### LATIN IN EVERYDAY USE

Below are given some words of Latin derivation in common use today. Look up the derivation of these words and show in the case of each how Latin helps you with the meaning or the spelling or both. Can a Latin student confuse *accept* and *except*, *altar* and *alter*, *assent* and *ascent*, *session* and *cession*? How do you know that a *pantry* was not originally a place for *pans*?

*In Business*: success, experience, salary, competent, application, capital, principal, interest, receipt, credit, debit, debt, deficit, proprietor, commercial, mercantile, refer, prefer, regular, competition, diary, clerical, factory, manufacture, credentials, certificate, particular.

*In the English Class*: narration, description, exposition, argument, unity, coherence, sentence, declarative, interrogative, exclamatory, positive, negative, verb, regular, transitive, infinitive, participle, auxiliary, imperative, conjunction, coordinate, subordinate, pronoun, personal, relative, conjunctive, demonstrative, punctuation, pronunciation, declension, conjugation, volume, simile, literary, legend, vocabulary, dictionary.

*Agriculture*: agriculture, horticulture, floriculture, arable, cereal, biennial, perennial, stamen, corolla, calyx, fungus.

*Biology*: animal, quadruped, centipede, nares, pelvis, pectus, vertebra, tibia, femur, digit, cuticle, antennae, pulmonary, maxilla, mammal.

*Mathematics*: plus, minus, exponent, coefficient, transpose, subtract, subtrahend, minuend, dividend, divisor, multiplicand, multiplier, decimal, unit, radius, digit, radical, numerator, denominator, addition, subtraction, multiplication, division, proportion, equation, solution, circle, circumference, semicircle, vertical, perpendicular, factor, quantity.

*In General:* herb, separate, ambulance, tenement, oculist, spectacles, dentist, matron, relative, pantry, necessary, anniversary, complexion, circus, testament, testimony, motor, dependent, candidate, association, delegate, committee, itinerary, prohibition, secretary, accept, except, conductor, eraser, manual, professor, assignment, ignorance, vacation, college, university, lecture, diligence, discipline, superintendent, examination, privilege, laboratory, finally, similar, occasion, accommodate, preparation, occurrence, effect, affect, compliment, complement, conscience, describe, supersede, opposite, prejudice, counsel, council, possession, simultaneous, benefit, adjacent, comparative, apparatus, temperate, temporal, latitude, lateral.

### STATE MOTTOES

Two fifths of the States have Latin mottoes, some of which have already appeared in the Lessons.

Ad astra per aspera . . . . .	Kansas
Animis opibusque parati dum spiro spero . .	South Carolina
Cedant arma togae . . . . .	Wyoming
Crescit eundo . . . . .	New Mexico
Dirigo . . . . .	Maine
Ditat Deus . . . . .	Arizona
E pluribus unum . . . . .	United States
Ense petit placidam sub libertate quietem .	Massachusetts
Excelsior . . . . .	New York
Justitia omnibus . . . . .	District of Columbia
Montani semper liberi . . . . .	West Virginia
Nil sine numine . . . . .	Colorado
Qui transtulit sustinet . . . . .	Connecticut
Regnant populi . . . . .	Arkansas
Salve . . . . .	Idaho
Salus populi suprema lex esto . . . . .	Missouri
Scuto bonae voluntatis tuae coronasti nos .	Maryland
Si quaeris peninsulam amoenam circumspice .	Michigan
Sic semper tyrannis . . . . .	Virginia

## LATIN WORDS IN THE CONSTITUTION

Note the large proportion of words derived from the Latin.<sup>1</sup>

*Preamble to the Constitution*

We, the *people* of the *United States*, in order to form a more *perfect union*, establish *justice*, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, secure the blessings of *liberty* to ourselves and our *posterity*, do ordain and establish this constitution for the *United States of America*.

## LATIN PHRASES

Below is a partial list of familiar Latin phrases, some of which have already appeared in the mottoes of the Lessons.

Ad finem	Ceteris paribus	Exit
Ad infinitum	Corpus Christi	Ex officio
Ad modum	De gustibus non	Ex post facto
Ad nauseam	disputandum	Ex tempore
Ad referendum	De novo	Ex voto
Ad valorem	Deo, amicis, pa-	Facsimile
Alias	triae	Fiat
Alibi	Deo volente or Vo-	Fiat lux
Alma Mater	lente deo	Gloria in excelsis
Alter ego	Deus vobiscum	Habeas corpus
Ante bellum	Dramatis personae	In armis
Aqua vitae	Dux femina facti	In esse
Bona fide	Ecce homo	In extremis
Carthago delenda	E pluribus unum	Infra dignitatem
est	Excelsior	(infra dig.)
Cave canem	Exeunt	In memoriam

---

<sup>1</sup> Selections from English Classics with which the student is familiar may be treated in the same way.



In pace	Morituri salutamus	Requiescat in pace
In posse	Multum in parvo	Res gestae
In situ	Ne plus ultra	Semper fidelis
In statu quo	Nolens volens	Sine die
Inter nos	Non compos mentis	Sine dubio
In toto	Nulli secundus	Sine qua non
Ipse dixit	Omnia ad Dei glo-	Sui generis
Ipso facto	riam	Summum bonum
Ita lex scripta est	Pater noster	Te Deum laudamus
Labor omnia vincit	Pater patriae	Tempus fugit
Lapsus linguae	Pax vobiscum	Terra firma
Lapsus memoriae	Per annum	Ultimatum
Lares et Penates	Per capita	Una voce
Laus Deo	Per diem	Vade mecum
Lex non scripta	Per se	Veni, vidi, vici
Lex terrae	Post mortem	Versus
Mea culpa	Prima facie	Via
Mens sana in cor-	Pro bono publico	Vice versa
pore sano	Pro et con(tra)	Vivat rex
Meum et tuum	Pro rata	Vivat res publica
Mirabile dictu	Pro tempore	Viva voce
Modus operandi	Quid nunc	Vox populi, vox Dei

#### ABBREVIATIONS FROM LATIN WORDS

A.D. — Annō Domini	I.N.R.I. — Iēsus Nazarēnus
Aet. — Aetātis	Rēx Iūdāeorum
A.M. — Ante merīdiem; Ar-	N.B. — Notā bene
tium Magister	P.M. — Post merīdiem
A.U.C. — Ab urbe conditā	P.S. — Post scriptum
e.g. — exempli grātiā	S.P.Q.R. — Senātus Populus-
etc. — et cētera	que Rōmānus
i.e. — id est	vs. — versus
I.H.S. — In hōc signō; Iēsus	
hominum salvātor	

## LATIN QUOTATIONS

Quotations from the Latin are constantly met in reading, and in the speech of many people. Below are given some of the best-known, many of which have already appeared in the Lessons.

*Alea iacta est.* The die is cast. — *Caesar at the Rubicon.*

*Ave Caesar! Morituri te salutant.* Hail, Caesar! those about to die salute thee! — *Gladiators in the Arena.*

*Carpe diem.* Seize the opportunity. — *Horace.*

*Cui bono?* To whose advantage? — *Cicero.*

*Cum grano salis.* With a grain of salt. — *Pliny.*

*De mortuis nil nisi bonum (bene).* Of the dead nothing but good (should be spoken or said). — *Diogenes Laertius.*

*Diem perdidit.* I have lost a day. — *Titus.*

*Dira necessitas.* Dire necessity. — *Horace.*

*Disiecta membra.* Scattered members (parts). — *Horace.*

*Docendo discitur.* We learn by teaching. — *Seneca.*

*Eheu fugaces anni!* Alas, the fleeting years! — *Horace.*

*Errare humanum est.* To err is human. — *Seneca.*

*Facilis descensus Averno.* The descent to Avernus is easy. — *Virgil.*

*Factum fieri infectum non potest.* You can't undo what's done. — *Terence.*

*Festina lente.* Make haste slowly. — *Augustus in Suetonius.*

*Finis coronat opus.* The end crowns the work. — *Ovid.*

*Fortes fortuna adiuvat.* Fortune favors the brave. — *Terence.*

*Fortuna caeca est.* Fortune is blind. — *Cicero.*

*Hinc illae lacrimae.* Hence those tears. — *Terence.*

*In hoc signo vinces.* In this sign (the cross) thou wilt conquer. — *Constantine.*

*In medias res.* Into the midst of things. — *Horace.*

*In medio tutissimus ibis.* You will go safest in the middle. — *Ovid.*

*Ipse dixit.* He said it himself. — *Cicero.*

Labor omnia vincit. Work conquers everything. — *Virgil*.

Laudator temporis acti. A praiser of times gone by. — *Horace*.

Licentia poetica. Poetic license. — *Seneca*.

Lupus in fabula. The wolf in the fable. — *Terence*.

Mens sana in corpore sano. A sound mind in a sound body.  
— *Juvenal*.

Nec possum tecum vivere, nec sine te. I can't live with you,  
nor without you. — *Martial*.

Nil homini certum est. Nothing is sure to man. — *Ovid*.

Nomen et omen. The name and the portent. — *Plautus*.

Non omnia possumus omnes. We can't all do everything.  
— *Lucilius*.

Non omnis moriar. I shall not wholly perish. — *Horace*.

(Astra castra) Numen lumen. (The stars my camp) God my  
light. — *Motto of University of Wisconsin*.

Omnia mutantur. All things change. — *Ovid*.

O tempora! O mores! Oh the times! Oh the customs!  
— *Cicero*.

Pares cum paribus facillime congregantur. Birds of a feather  
flock together. — *Cicero*.

Per aspera ad astra. To the stars through bolts and bars.  
— *Seneca*.

Periculum in mora. Danger in delay. — *Livy*.

Potior est, qui prior est. First come first served, or The early  
bird catches the worm. — *Terence*.

Quod erat demonstrandum. Which was to be proved.  
— *Euclid*.

Quot homines, tot sententiae. As many opinions as people.  
— *Terence*.

Rara avis. A rare bird. — *Horace*.

Requiescat in pace. Let him rest in peace.

Roma aeterna. Rome the eternal. — *Tibullus*.

Semper idem. Always the same. — *Cicero*.

Summa summarum. The top of the tops (The height of  
everything). — *Plautus*.

Suum cuique. To every one his own. — *Cicero*.

Tempus edax rerum. Time, the devourer of (all) things.  
— *Ovid*.

Timeo Danaos et dona ferentes. I fear the Greeks even when  
bringing gifts. — *Virgil*.

Ultima Thule. The farthest land. — *Virgil*.

Vae victis. Woe to the vanquished! — *Livy*.

Vanitas vanitatum et omnia vanitas. Vanity of vanities, all is  
vanity. — *Ecclesiastes i, 2*.

Veni, vidi, vici. I came, saw, conquered. — *Caesar*.

Vires acquirit eundo. It gains strength as it goes. — *Virgil*.

Virginibus puerisque. For girls and boys. — *Horace*.

Vita brevis, ars longa. Life is short, art long. — *Hippocrates*.

# APPENDIX II

## HELPFUL HINTS

In studying Latin you will find that certain words, forms, and constructions occur over and over again. If these are carefully memorized your work will be much easier. In this appendix the commonest of these forms and constructions are so grouped that they can be readily learned. Nothing is included unless it will be of value later on.

The work in Derivatives and Word-formation and the suggestions for a Notebook will also help make your study easier.

In the lists the words are in alphabetical order, except that compounds of verbs are grouped together. The English meanings are printed in a separate column so that either column may be covered with a sheet of paper for rapid memory drill.

## FIRST HALF YEAR

**Vocabulary.** — The following list is to be memorized and drilled. Time-limited tests are recommended; on these tests ninety per cent efficiency should be expected.

### (a) Verbs

a'mō	<i>love</i>	di'cō	<i>say</i>
appel'lō	<i>name, call</i>	dō	<i>give</i>
au'deō	<i>dare, venture</i>	exis'timō	<i>think, consider</i>
cognōs'cō	<i>learn, ascertain</i>	expec'tō	<i>expect, wait, await</i>
cōnfir'mō	<i>strengthen, encour- age, affirm</i>	ge'rō	<i>carry on, accom- plish</i>
cōn'sulō	<i>consult (w. acc.)</i>	iu'beō	<i>order</i>
dē'beō	<i>owe, ought</i>	labō'rō	<i>labor, suffer</i>
dēfen'dō	<i>defend</i>	li'berō	<i>set free</i>

lo'cō	<i>place, put, set</i>	adhi'beō	<i>apply, employ</i>
nā'vigō	<i>sail</i>	prohi'beō	<i>prohibit, prevent</i>
nūn'tiō	<i>announce, declare</i>	mit'tō	<i>send</i>
oc'cupō	<i>seize, occupy</i>	āmit'tō	<i>send away, lose</i>
opor'tet	<i>it is fitting</i>	commit'tō	<i>commit, intrust (w. proelium = be- gin)</i>
pā'cō	<i>subdue, pacify</i>		
pe'tō	<i>seek</i>	dimit'tō	<i>send away</i>
por'tō	<i>carry</i>	intermit'tō	<i>interrupt, discon- tinue</i>
pro'perō	<i>hurry</i>	permit'tō	<i>permit, grant, in- trust</i>
pu'tō	<i>think</i>		
relin'quō	<i>leave behind, aban- don</i>	praemit'tō	<i>send ahead</i>
respon'deō	<i>answer</i>	remit'tō	<i>send back</i>
spec'tō	<i>look at</i>	mo'neō	<i>advise, warn</i>
ti'meō	<i>fear</i>	admo'neō	<i>remind</i>
a'gō	<i>drive, do</i>	mo'veō	<i>move</i>
cō'gō	<i>drive together, col- lect, compel</i>	commo'veō	<i>alarm, excite</i>
re'digō	<i>drive back, reduce, render</i>	permo'veō	<i>arouse, disturb</i>
ca'piō	<i>take</i>	remo'veō	<i>move back, remove</i>
acci'piō	<i>accept, receive</i>	pa'rō	<i>get ready, prepare for</i>
inci'piō	<i>begin, undertake</i>	com'parō	<i>get together, pro- vide</i>
interci'piō	<i>intercept, cut off</i>	pug'nō	<i>fight</i>
susci'piō	<i>undertake</i>	expug'nō	<i>capture by assault</i>
discē'dō	<i>go away, depart</i>	oppug'nō	<i>attack</i>
excē'dō	<i>go out</i>	scri'bō	<i>write</i>
prōcē'dō	<i>go forward, ad- vance</i>	cōnscri'bō	<i>enroll</i>
dū'cō	<i>lead</i>	ser'vō	<i>save, protect</i>
abdū'cō	<i>lead away</i>	cōnser'vō	<i>save fully, preserve</i>
addū'cō	<i>lead to, influence</i>	sum	<i>be</i>
ēdū'cō	<i>lead out</i>	ab'sum	<i>be away</i>
indū'cō	<i>lead in, induce</i>	ad'sum	<i>be near, be present</i>
perdū'cō	<i>lead through, ex- tend</i>	pos'sum	<i>be able</i>
prōdū'cō	<i>lead forward</i>	te'neō	<i>hold, keep</i>
redū'cō	<i>lead back</i>	conti'neō	<i>hold together, con- tain, confine</i>
ha'beō	<i>have, hold</i>	obti'neō	<i>obtain, hold, have</i>



perti'neō	reach, extend, per- tain	prōvi'deō	foresee, provide
reti'neō	hold back, retain	vo'cō	call
susti'neō	hold up, sustain	con'vocō	call together, sum- mon
vi'deō	see	ē'vocō	call out

## (b) Nouns

aes'tās	summer	fu'ga	flight
a'ger	field	hi'ems	winter
agri'cola	farmer	ho'mō	man
amici'tia	friendship	impedimen'tum	hindrance; pl., baggage
a'nimus	spirit, life, soul	iniū'ria	wrong
an'nus	year	in'sula	island
ar'ma	arms	iū'dex	judge, juror
auctō'ritās	influence	iūdi'cium	trial, judgment
auxi'lium	aid, help	lēx	law
bel'lum	war	li'ber	book
ca'put	head	li'bertās	freedom
cas'tra	camp	lin'gua	tongue, language
cele'ritās	speed, swiftness	lo'cus	place
ci'vitās	citizenship, state	lūx	light
cōnsi'lium	advice, plan	mā'ter	mother
cōn'sul	consul	memo'ria	memory
de'us	god	mī'les	soldier
dig'nitās	worth, position	nātū'ra	nature
diligen'tia	painstaking, care	negō'tium	business, trouble
dux	leader	nō'men	name
e'ques	horseman	nu'merus	number
e'quus	horse	offi'cium	duty, service, cour- tesy
exem'plum	example, precedent	op'pidum	town
fac'tum	thing done, act, deed	pa'ter	father
fā'ma	reputation, report	pāx	peace
fi'lia	daughter	pecū'nia	money
fi'lius	son	peri'culum	trial, danger
flū'men	river	poe'na	penalty
fortū'na	fortune, wealth	po'pulus	people
frā'ter	brother	por'ta	gate
frūmen'tum	grain		

prae'mium	<i>reward</i>	sil'va	<i>forest</i>
praesi'dium	<i>garrison, guard</i>	so'cius	<i>ally, comrade</i>
prin'ceps	<i>leader, chief man</i>	so'ror	<i>sister</i>
proe'lium	<i>battle</i>	suppli'cium	<i>punishment</i>
puel'la	<i>girl</i>	tem'pus	<i>time</i>
pu'er	<i>boy</i>	ter'ra	<i>land, earth</i>
rēgī'na	<i>queen</i>	vi'a	<i>highway, road</i>
rēg'num	<i>kingdom</i>	victō'ria	<i>victory</i>
rēx	<i>king</i>	vil'la	<i>farmhouse</i>
sa'lūs	<i>safety</i>	vir	<i>man, hero</i>
ser'vitūs	<i>slavery</i>	vir'tūs	<i>manliness, courage</i>
ser'vus	<i>slave</i>	vī'ta	<i>life</i>
sig'num	<i>sign, signal, stand- ard</i>	vōx	<i>voice, speech, re- mark</i>

(c) **Adverbs, Conjunctions, Prepositions**

ā (or) ab	<i>away from, by</i>	nec (neque)	<i>and not, nor</i>
ad	<i>to</i>	neque . . . neque (or) nec . . . nec	<i>neither, neither . . .</i>
ac (or) atque	<i>and also</i>		<i>nor</i>
ante	<i>before (prep. and adv.)</i>	nōn	<i>not</i>
an'tea	<i>before (adv.)</i>	nunc	<i>now</i>
aut	<i>or, either . . . or</i>	per	<i>through</i>
certē	<i>certainly, at least</i>	post	<i>after, behind (prep.)</i>
cum	<i>with (prep.)</i>	pos'teā	<i>afterwards (adv.)</i>
cūr	<i>why</i>	prō	<i>in front of, on be- half of</i>
dē	<i>down from, con- cerning</i>	quam	<i>than (conj.), how? (adv. of degree)</i>
ē (or) ex	<i>out from</i>	-que	<i>and</i>
et	<i>and, also, even</i>	sed	<i>but</i>
etiam	<i>even</i>	trāns	<i>across</i>
iam	<i>by this time, already</i>	tum	<i>then</i>
in	<i>in, on (w. abl.); into (w. acc.)</i>	u'bi	<i>where, when</i>
longē	<i>far</i>		
-ne	<i>(sign of a ques- tion)</i>		

## (d) Pronouns and Adjectives

ae'quus	level, even, just, fair	lon'gus	long
al'tus	high, deep	mag'nus	large
ami'cus	friendly (as a noun, friend)	me'dius	middle, middle of
am'plus	large, distinguished	me'us	my, mine
bar'barus	foreign, barbarous	nos'ter	our, ours
bo'nus	good	nō'tus	known
cer'tus	fixed, certain	no'vus	new
crē'ber	frequent, thick	par'vus	small
ēgre'gius	eminent, unusual	pau'cī	few
fini'timus	neighboring	pri'mus . . . de'-	first . . . tenth
hic	this (as adj.); he (as pron.); here (as adv.)	cimus	
i'dem	the same	pūb'licus	belonging to the state, official, public
ip'se	self, the very	pul'cher	beautiful
il'le	that, he	quis	who (interroga- tive)
inimī'cus	hostile (as noun, enemy)	re'liquus	the rest, remaining, remainder of
ini'quus	uneven, unfavora- ble, unjust	sa'cer	sacred
in'teger	whole, unimpaired	tar'dus	slow, late
is	this, that (as adj.); he (as pron.)	ti'midus	fearful
li'ber	free	tu'us	your, yours
		ū'nus . . . de'cem	one . . . ten
		vē'rus	true
		ves'ter	your, yours

(e) **Division of words into syllables, and quantity.** — From the beginning of the study of Latin careful attention should be given to pronunciation, quantity of vowels, and division into syllables. In written work the pupil should be encouraged to indicate the quantity of the vowels, thus showing that he understands the correct pronunciation.

**Inflections.** — Frequent time-limited tests on inflections will insure accuracy and speed.

(a) *Nouns* : 1st declension.

2d declension.

3d declension — mute and liquid stems.

- (b) *Adjectives* : 1st and 2d declension.
- (c) *Comparison* of regular 1st and 2d declension adjectives and the formation of adverbs therefrom.
- (d) *Pronouns* : the interrogative and the demonstratives.
- (e) *Verbs* : conjugation of *sum* throughout the indicative.
  - 1st conjugation ; indicative, active, and passive.
  - 2d conjugation ; indicative, active, and passive.
  - 3d conjugation ; indicative, active, and passive.

**Principles of Syntax.** — The rules involved in the following twelve principles are to be thoroughly memorized and applied in oral and written exercises.

1. Subject nominative.
2. Agreement of verb.
3. Direct object.
4. Agreement of adjective.
5. Predicate nominative.
6. Predicate adjective.
7. Genitive of possessor (including predicate use).
8. Indirect object.
9. Appositive.
10. Ablative of means.
11. Ablative of accompaniment.
12. Ablative of personal agent.

*Note.* — In the light of investigations into the actual occurrence in high school Latin of various constructions of Syntax (Bryne's *Syntax of High School Latin*), it is believed that the following points can profitably be omitted from the teaching of the first two years: ablative of comparison, ablative of price and penalty, cognate accusative, double accusative, genitive with *refert*, etc., genitive with verbs of feeling, all independent uses of subjunctive mood, clauses after verbs of fearing.

### Word Formation.

(a) **Prefixes.** — First half year. *ā* (*ab*, *abs*), *ad*, *con* (prepositional and adverbial force), *dē*, *ex* (*ē*), *in* (both prepositional and negative uses).

These prefixes are to be used in two ways : first, to form new Latin verbs from simple verbs ; second, to

suggest English derivatives. The simple verbs to be used in this exercise are those which occur in the required vocabularies. For example, in the first half year :

- dūcō, *lead* + ab = abdūcō, *lead away*.  
 + ad = addūcō, *lead to*.  
 + con = condūcō, *lead together*.  
 + dē = dēdūcō, *lead down*.  
 + ē = ēdūcō, *lead out*.  
 + in = indūcō, *lead into*.  
 + prō = prōdūcō, *lead forth*.  
 + re = redūcō, *lead back*.  
 + trāns (trā) = trādūcō, *lead across*.

English derivatives: *adduce, conduce, deduce, educe, induce, conduct, deduct, induct, conducive, deduction*, etc.

*Note*.—Attention should be called to phonetic changes in Latin compounds; for example, *ad* + *capiō* = *accipiō*; *con* + *locō* = *collocō*.

(b) **Suffixes**.—Latin words formed by means of suffixes should be observed carefully and compared with the related words. Except in the case of suffixes that have a uniform and easily defined meaning, it is advisable merely to lead the pupils to associate the words concerned. In the first half year the following types of words should be noted :

- (1) Nouns from nouns; for example, *virtūs* (*vir*), *servitūs* (*servus*), *cīvitās* (*cīvis*).
- (2) Nouns from adjectives; for example, *amīcitia* (*amīcus*), *celeritās* (*celer*), *dignitās* (*dignus*), *diligentia* (*diligēns*).

(c) **Derivation**.—Since a very large number of English words have come, directly or indirectly, from Latin, special attention should be given to the derivation of such words. Accordingly, ten Latin verbs are assigned for each half year as a basis for study in derivation. From each of these verbs the pupil should be required to make a list of all the more important English derivatives. An optional list of ten verbs has been added for each half year in the belief that many teachers will wish to emphasize even more strongly this feature of the study of Latin.

<i>Required</i>		<i>Optional</i>	
1. servō	6. moveō	1. iūdicō	6. habeō
2. locō	7. dūcō	2. pācō	7. moneō
3. vocō	8. mittō	3. parō	8. teneō
4. putō	9. dicō	4. pugnō	9. agō
5. videō	10. capiō	5. spectō	10. cognōscō

*Note.*—A suggested form of arrangement in this work follows:

### Derivation notebook (specimen page).

#### *Type 1* (without definitions)

locō, locāre, locāvī, locātus — <i>place.</i>	<i>locate, local, locality, location, locus, collocate, collocation, dislocate, localization, localize, locally, locative, locomotive, locomotor.</i>
---	---

#### *Type 2* (with definitions)

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus — <i>call.</i>	<i>vocation</i> — a calling, occupation. <i>vocational</i> — pertaining to a vocation or calling. <i>vocal</i> — pertaining to voice. <i>evoke</i> — call out. <i>convoke</i> — call together. <i>vocative</i> — case of calling, case of address. <i>revoke</i> — call back, remand. <i>invoke</i> — call upon, ask for. <i>vociferous</i> — with large calling power, with loud tones. <i>invocation</i> — a calling upon, a prayer.
--	---

#### *Type 3* (with examples of use in English)

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus — <i>send.</i>	<i>mission</i> — He was sent on a mission to Europe. <i>missionary</i> — He was sent as a missionary to China. <i>missive</i> — The letter was a formidable missive. <i>missile</i> — Stones were the missiles of early warfare.
---	---



*transmit*—They will transmit the message to us.

*remission*—He preached the remission of sins.

*commit*—She was committed to his care.

*submit*—They submitted to the inevitable.

*submissive*—The slave was not submissive.

*omit*—Omit the non-essential.

**Oral Sentence Work.**—Latin into English and English into Latin; daily exercises with books closed. Writing Latin from dictation. Practice in translating easy sentences at hearing.

**Latin Readings.**—Not less than *five* pages of very easy connected text.

In reading Latin, attention should be given to the phrases or word groups, as in English. In translating Latin, the first step is to observe the word groups and attack them in order. After a passage has been studied and translated, it is well for the pupil to return to the word groups and practice reading the Latin with proper emphasis and expression.

## SECOND HALF YEAR

**Vocabulary.**—The following list is to be memorized and drilled. Time-limited tests are to be continued and emphasized.

### (a) Verbs

antecē'dō	go before, precede	con'citō	arouse, excite
appropin'quō	draw near to, approach	cōnfi'dō	trust
au'diō	hear	cu'piō	desire
cē'dō	go, yield	dē'ligō	select, choose
coe'pī	begin	dēmōn'strō	point out, show
		dē'sum	be lacking

do'ceō	<i>teach, show</i>	dō	<i>give</i>
dor'miō	<i>sleep</i>	ab'dō	<i>put away, hide</i>
du'bitō	<i>doubt, hesitate</i>	ad'dō	<i>add</i>
ēri'piō	<i>snatch away</i>	circum'dō	<i>put around, sur- round</i>
ignō'rō	<i>be ignorant of</i>	red'dō	<i>give back</i>
impe'diō	<i>hinder</i>	trā'dō	<i>hand over</i>
im'perō	<i>command, order</i>	fa'ciō	<i>do, make</i>
incen'dō	<i>set on fire</i>	cōnfi'ciō	<i>finish, exhaust</i>
invi'deō	<i>envy</i>	dēfi'ciō	<i>fail, revolt, rebel</i>
le'gō	<i>pick, gather, read</i>	exci'piō	<i>take, accept</i>
li'cet	<i>it is lawful, per- mitted</i>	interfi'ciō	<i>kill</i>
mū'niō	<i>fortify</i>	perfi'ciō	<i>accomplish</i>
no'ceō	<i>injure</i>	prae'fi'ciō	<i>put in charge of</i>
ō'di	<i>hate</i>	refi'ciō	<i>repair</i>
persuā'deō	<i>persuade</i>	satisfa'ciō	<i>satisfy</i>
perter'reō	<i>alarm</i>	ia'ciō	<i>throw, hurl</i>
praeci'piō	<i>order, instruct, ad- vise</i>	adi'ciō	<i>throw to, add</i>
prae'di'cō	<i>foretell</i>	con'i'ciō	<i>hurl</i>
prae'sum	<i>be in command of</i>	dēi'ciō	<i>throw down</i>
pre'mō	<i>press, oppress</i>	ēi'ciō	<i>throw out</i>
quae'rō	<i>seek, inquire</i>	obi'ciō	<i>throw against, op- pose</i>
rī'deō	<i>laugh</i>	prōi'ciō	<i>throw forward</i>
sci'ō	<i>know</i>	rei'ciō	<i>throw back</i>
sen'tiō	<i>feel, realize</i>	trāi'ciō	<i>throw across, pierce</i>
ser'viō	<i>serve</i>	ma'neō	<i>remain</i>
sū'mō	<i>take, assume</i>	perma'neō	<i>remain, hold out</i>
su'perō	<i>overcome, excel, surpass</i>	rema'neō	<i>stay behind, remain</i>
temp'tō	<i>test, try, attempt</i>	pel'lō	<i>drive, defeat</i>
trādū'cō	<i>lead across</i>	expel'lō	<i>drive out</i>
tra'hō	<i>drag</i>	impel'lō	<i>drive on, excite</i>
vin'cō	<i>conquer</i>	repel'lō	<i>drive back, repulse</i>
vul'nerō	<i>wound</i>	pō'nō	<i>put, place</i>
clau'dō	<i>close, confine</i>	dēpō'nō	<i>put down, put aside</i>
exclū'dō	<i>shut out</i>	expō'nō	<i>set forth, explain</i>
interclū'dō	<i>shut off, cut off, stop</i>	oppō'nō	<i>put against, oppose</i>
		prōpō'nō	<i>put before, pro- pose</i>

ascen'dō	<i>climb, ascend, mount</i>	ve'niō	<i>come</i>
dēscen'dō	<i>descend</i>	circumve'niō	<i>come around, surround</i>
se'deō	<i>sit</i>	conve'niō	<i>come together</i>
obsi'deō	<i>besiege</i>	inve'niō	<i>come upon, find</i>
consis'tō	<i>take one's place, stop</i>	perve'niō	<i>come through, arrive</i>
dēsist'ō	<i>desist from, cease</i>	reci'piō	<i>take back (esp. with se, withdraw, retreat), receive</i>
resist'ō	<i>resist</i>	submit'tō	<i>send to the assistance of, yield to</i>
spē'rō	<i>hope</i>	succēdō	<i>come up, succeed</i>
dēspē'rō	<i>lose hope, despair</i>		
ex'struō	<i>pile up, erect</i>		
in'struō	<i>arrange</i>		
conten'dō	<i>struggle, hasten</i>		
osten'dō	<i>show</i>		

## (b) Nouns

a'ciēs	<i>line of battle</i>	ex'itus	<i>a going forth, outcome, departure</i>
adven'tus	<i>a coming (to), rival</i>	fi'dēs	<i>good faith, protection</i>
ae'tās	<i>age</i>	fi'nis	<i>end; pl., boundaries, territory</i>
altitū'dō	<i>height, depth</i>	ge'nus	<i>race, kind</i>
benefi'cium	<i>kindness</i>	hos'tis	<i>enemy (of the state)</i>
cī'vis	<i>citizen</i>	imperā'tor	<i>commander, general</i>
co'hors	<i>cohort</i>	impe'rium	<i>command, power</i>
condi'ciō	<i>condition, terms</i>	ino'pia	<i>need, lack</i>
cōnsuētū'dō	<i>custom, habit</i>	i'ter	<i>journey</i>
cō'pia	<i>supply; pl., forces</i>	iūs	<i>justice, right</i>
cor'nū	<i>horn, wing (of army)</i>	laus	<i>praise</i>
cor'pus	<i>body</i>	magnitū'dō	<i>size, importance</i>
cupi'ditās	<i>desire, greed</i>	ma'nus (f.)	<i>hand, group, force</i>
di'ēs	<i>day</i>	ma're	<i>sea</i>
difficul'tās	<i>difficulty</i>	mēns	<i>mind</i>
do'lor	<i>grief</i>	mo'dus	<i>manner</i>
do'mus (f.),	<i>home, house</i>		
equitā'tus	<i>cavalry</i>		
exer'citus	<i>army</i>		

mōns	mountain	rēs	thing
mors	death	rēsfrūmentā'ria	grain supplies
multitū'dō	multitude	rēs militā'ris	military affairs, art of war
nāvi'gium	boat	rēs pū'blica	commonwealth, gov- ernment
nā'vis	ship	senā'tus	senate
nox	night	spa'tium	space, time, dis- tance
ōrā'tiō	speaking, speech	spēs	hope
ōrdō	rank, class	ti'mor	fear
pars	part	tur'ris	tower
pas'sus	pace (about five feet)	urbs	city
pōns	bridge	vis	force, violence; pl., strength
potes'tās	power, authority, chance	vul'nus	wound
ra'tiō	account, theory, manner		

(c) **Adverbs, Conjunctions, Prepositions**

ā'riter	sharply, fiercely	in'terim	meanwhile
am'plē	fully	magno'pere	greatly
a'pud	among, at the home of	mul'tum	much
au'tem (post- positive)	moreover, on the other hand	nam	for
be'ne	well	nē . . . qui'dem	not even
cele'riter	swiftly, quickly	ob	on account of
diligen'ter	with care	prop'ter	on account of
e'nim (postpos- itive)	for	qui'dem (post- positive)	indeed, certainly, at least
fa'cile	easily	quod	because
for'titer	bravely	sa'tis	enough, quite
gra'viter	heavily, weightily, seriously	sī	if
in'ter	between, among	sī'ne	without
		trāns	across
		vē'rō	in truth, but

## (d) Pronouns and Adjectives

<i>ā'cer</i>	<i>sharp, keen</i>	<i>om'nis</i>	<i>every; pl., all</i>
<i>ce'ler</i>	<i>swift</i>	<i>pār</i>	<i>equal</i>
<i>cen'tum</i>	<i>hundred</i>	<i>pedes'ter</i>	<i>infantry (adj.)</i>
<i>commū'nis</i>	<i>common</i>	<i>peri'tus</i>	<i>skilled, experienced</i>
<i>cu'pidus</i>	<i>desirous, eager</i>	<i>plē'nus</i>	<i>full</i>
<i>dex'ter</i>	<i>right (hand)</i>	<i>prae'sēns</i>	<i>present in person</i>
<i>diffi'cilis</i>	<i>difficult</i>	<i>propin'quus</i>	<i>near, a relative</i>
<i>ducen'ti</i>	<i>two hundred</i>	<i>quadringen'ti</i>	<i>four hundred</i>
<i>e'go</i>	<i>I</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>who</i>
<i>eques'ter</i>	<i>cavalry</i>	<i>re'cēns</i>	<i>fresh, new, recent</i>
<i>fa'cilis</i>	<i>easy</i>	<i>sescen'ti</i>	<i>six hundred</i>
<i>familiā'ris</i>	<i>of the household,</i> <i>intimate</i>	<i>si'milis</i>	<i>like</i>
<i>for'tis</i>	<i>brave</i>	<i>singulā'ris</i>	<i>single, unusual</i>
<i>frūmentā'rius</i>	<i>pertaining to grain</i>	<i>sinis'ter</i>	<i>left (hand)</i>
<i>gra'vis</i>	<i>heavy, serious</i>	<i>su'ī</i>	<i>himself, herself,</i> <i>themselves</i>
<i>idō'neus</i>	<i>fit, suitable</i>	<i>su'us</i>	<i>his (her, its, their)</i> <i>own</i>
<i>inmortā'lis</i>	<i>without death, im-</i> <i>mortal</i>	<i>tā'lis</i>	<i>such</i>
<i>inco'lumis</i>	<i>unharmed, safe</i>	<i>trecen'ti</i>	<i>three hundred</i>
<i>le'vis</i>	<i>light (in weight)</i>	<i>tū</i>	<i>you</i>
<i>militā'ris</i>	<i>military</i>	<i>ūn'decim . . .</i>	<i>eleven . . .</i>
<i>mīl'le</i>	<i>one thousand</i>	<i>vigin'ti</i>	<i>twenty</i>
<i>mul'tus</i>	<i>much, many</i>	<i>vī'vus</i>	<i>alive</i>
<i>necessā'rius</i>	<i>necessary, urgent</i>		
<i>nō'bilis</i>	<i>(knowable), noble,</i> <i>famous</i>		

**Inflections.**—Frequent time tests on inflections will insure accuracy and speed.

- (a) *Inflections* of the first half year are to be thoroughly reviewed according to a complete and classified list of typical words to date
- (b) *Nouns*: 3d declension; i-stems and apparent consonant stems.  
4th declension.  
5th declension.
- (c) *Pronouns*: interrogative, relative, and personal. Illustrate with the relative all case-uses to date.

- (d) *Adjectives*: comparison and declension of regular adjectives of the 3d declension; for example, *ācer*, *fortis*, *prūdēns*, *audax*. Declension of the comparative. Comparison of *bonus*, *magnus*, *malus*, *parvus*, *multus*.
- (e) *Adverbs*: adverbs from adjectives of 3d declension: their formation and comparison.
- (f) *Verbs*: 4th conjugation, indicative, active and passive; the subjunctive, active, and passive of all four conjugations; all infinitives and participles of the four conjugations.

**Principles of Syntax.** — The twelve principles of syntax of the first half year are to be thoroughly reviewed and the following additional principles taken up:

1. Ablative of cause.
2. Ablative of specification.
3. Ablative of manner.
4. Agreement of relative pronoun.
5. Dative with certain intransitive verbs.
6. Dative with certain adjectives.
7. Ablative of time when or within which.
8. Accusative of duration of time or extent of space.
9. Genitive: subjective, objective (including genitive with adjectives).
10. Genitive and ablative of description.
11. Ablative of separation.
12. Ablative of degree of difference.
13. Clauses of purpose with *ut* (affirmative), *nē* (negative).
14. Sequence of tenses in clauses of purpose.
15. Ablative absolute.

### Word Formation.

- (a) **Prefixes.** — *inter*, *per*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*.

For suggestions regarding the proper procedure in the study of this list, see outline of work for the first half year (pages 287 and 288).



(b) **Suffixes.** — It is important to observe carefully the following typical nouns and to associate them with the verbs from which they are derived :

*adventus* (*adveniō*), *oppugnātiō* (*oppugnō*), *praesidium* (*praesideō*), *iūdicium* (*iūdicō*).

Similarly the following nouns derived from nouns and adjectives should be noted :

*pecūnia* (*pecus*), *cupiditās* (*cupiō*, *cupidus*), *potestās* (*possum*, *potēns*), *altitūdō* (*altus*).

*Note.* — In the second half year, both prefixes and simple verbs already studied are to be reviewed, the new prefixes are to be compounded with the old verbs, and the old prefixes with the new verbs.

(c) **Derivation.** — The following *ten* verbs and the more important English words derived from their roots.

Required		Optional	
1. nā'vigō	6. vin'cō	1. dō	6. tra'hō
2. do'ceō	7. sū'mō	2. ve'niō	7. pel'lō
3. ti'meō	8. fa'ciō	3. fi'dō	8. cōn'sulō
4. se'deō	9. ia'ciō	4. pō'nō	9. au'deō
5. scrī'bō	10. au'diō	5. ter'reō	10. mū'niō

**Oral Sentence Work.** — Auditory and vocal practice continued daily with books closed. Writing Latin from dictation continued.

**Latin Readings.** — Not less than *ten* pages of easy Latin narrative selected from Eutropius's *Breviarium*, or Lhomond's *Viri Romae*, or simple narrative as in numerous selections, such as Ritchie's *Story of Perseus*, and simple Latin stories, as in Heatley's *Gradatim* or other similar collections of interesting stories.

### Composition.

(a) Practice in translating prepared lessons at hearing and in reproducing orally and in writing incidents taken from the selections read.

(b) Practice at regular intervals in writing easy Latin sentences involving the principles of syntax on page 295.

# APPENDIX III

## INFLECTIONS

### NOUNS

#### 563. FIRST DECLENSION

**Tuba, f., trumpet.**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	tuba	tubae
<i>Gen.</i>	tubae	tubārum
<i>Dat.</i>	tubae	tubīs
<i>Acc.</i>	tubam	tubās
<i>Abl.</i>	tubā	tubīs

#### 564. SECOND DECLENSION

<b>Amīcus, m.,</b> <i>friend.</i>	<b>Puer, m.,</b> <i>boy.</i>	<b>Ager, m.,</b> <i>field.</i>	<b>Vir, m.,</b> <i>man.</i>	<b>Bellum, n.,</b> <i>war.</i>
--------------------------------------	---------------------------------	-----------------------------------	--------------------------------	-----------------------------------

##### SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	amicus	puer	ager	vir	bellum
<i>Gen.</i>	amicī	puerī	agrī	virī	bellī
<i>Dat.</i>	amicō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
<i>Acc.</i>	amicum	puerum	agrum	virum	bellum
<i>Abl.</i>	amicō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō

##### PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	amicī	puerī	agrī	virī	bella
<i>Gen.</i>	amicōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	bellōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	amicīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs
<i>Acc.</i>	amicōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	bella
<i>Abl.</i>	amicīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs

#### 565. THIRD DECLENSION

<b>Cōnsul, m.,</b> <i>consul.</i>	<b>Mīles, m.,</b> <i>soldier.</i>	<b>Frāter, m.,</b> <i>brother.</i>	<b>Flūmen, n.,</b> <i>river.</i>
--------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

##### SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	cōnsul	mīles	frāter	flūmen
<i>Gen.</i>	cōnsulis	militis	frātris	flūminis
<i>Dat.</i>	cōnsulī	militī	frātrī	flūminī
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnsulem	mīlitem	frātrem	flūmen
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnsule	mīlite	frātre	flūmine

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	cōsulēs	militēs	frātrēs	flūmina
<i>Gen.</i>	cōsulūm	militūm	frātrum	flūminūm
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsulibus	militibus	frātribus	flūminibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cōsulēs	militēs	frātrēs	flūmina
<i>Abl.</i>	cōsulibus	militibus	frātribus	flūminibus

**Ignis, m.,**  
*fire.*

**Mare, n.,**  
*sea.*

**Hostis, m., f.,**  
*enemy.*

**Urbs, f.,**  
*city.*

## SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	ignis	mare	hostis	urbs
<i>Gen.</i>	ignis	maris	hostis	urbis
<i>Dat.</i>	ignī	marī	hostī	urbī
<i>Acc.</i>	ignem	mare	hostem	urbem
<i>Abl.</i>	ignī, -e	marī	hoste	urbe

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	ignēs	maria	hostēs	urbēs
<i>Gen.</i>	ignium	marium	hostium	urbium
<i>Dat.</i>	ignibus	maribus	hostibus	urbibus
<i>Acc.</i>	ignīs, -ēs	maria	hostīs, -ēs	urbīs, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	ignibus	maribus	hostibus	urbibus

566.

## FOURTH DECLENSION

**Exercitus, m., army.**

**Cornū, n., horn.**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Gen.</i>	exercitūs	exercituūm	cornūs	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i>	exercituī	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i>	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Abl.</i>	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

567.

## FIFTH DECLENSION

**Diēs, m. and f., day.**

**Rēs, f., thing.**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

568.

## IRREGULAR DECLENSIONS

	<b>Deus, m.,</b> <i>god.</i>	<b>Dea, f.,</b> <i>goddess.</i>	<b>Domus, f.,</b> <i>house.</i>	<b>Vīs, f.,</b> <i>force, strength.</i>
SINGULAR				
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>deus</b>	<b>dea</b>	<b>domus</b>	<b>vīs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>deī</b>	<b>deae</b>	<b>domūs, -ī</b>	<b>vīs</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>deō</b>	<b>deae</b>	<b>domuī, -ō</b>	<b>vī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>deum</b>	<b>deam</b>	<b>domum</b>	<b>vim</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>deō</b>	<b>deā</b>	<b>domō, -ū</b>	<b>vī</b>
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>deī, diī, dī</b>	<b>deae</b>	<b>domūs</b>	<b>virēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>deōrum, deum</b>	<b>deārum</b>	<b>domuum, -ōrum</b>	<b>virium</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>deīs, diīs, dīs</b>	<b>deābus</b>	<b>domibus</b>	<b>viribus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>deōs</b>	<b>deās</b>	<b>domōs, -ūs</b>	<b>virīs, -ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>deīs, diīs, dīs</b>	<b>deābus</b>	<b>domibus</b>	<b>viribus</b>

## ADJECTIVES

569.

## FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

**Bonus, good.**

	SINGULAR		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>bonus</b>	<b>bona</b>	<b>bonum</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>bonī</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bonī</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>bonō</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bonō</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>bonum</b>	<b>bonam</b>	<b>bonum</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>bonō</b>	<b>bonā</b>	<b>bonō</b>
	PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>bonī</b>	<b>bonae</b>	<b>bona</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>bonōrum</b>	<b>bonārum</b>	<b>bonōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>bonōs</b>	<b>bonās</b>	<b>bona</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>	<b>bonīs</b>

## 570. THIRD DECLENSION — THREE ENDINGS

**Ācer**, *sharp*.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

## 571. THIRD DECLENSION — TWO ENDINGS

**Fortis**, *brave*.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
<i>Gen.</i>	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
<i>Dat.</i>	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortem	forte	fortīs (-ēs)	fortia
<i>Abl.</i>	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

## 572. THIRD DECLENSION — ONE ENDING

(a) **Potēns**, *powerful*.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	potēns	potēns	potentēs	potentia
<i>Gen.</i>	potentis	potentis	potentium	potentium
<i>Dat.</i>	potentī	potentī	potentibus	potentibus
<i>Acc.</i>	potentem	potēns	potentēs, -is	potentia
<i>Abl.</i>	potentī, -e	potentī, -e	potentibus	potentibus

(b) **Plūs**, *more*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i>	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	—	—	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i>	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Abl.</i>	—	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

## 573. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

*Melior, better.*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>melior</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>meliōrēs</i>	<i>meliōra</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>meliōris</i>	<i>meliōris</i>	<i>meliōrum</i>	<i>meliōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>meliōrī</i>	<i>meliōrī</i>	<i>meliōribus</i>	<i>meliōribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>meliōrem</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>meliōrēs (-īs)</i>	<i>meliōra</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>meliōre</i>	<i>meliōre</i>	<i>meliōribus</i>	<i>meliōribus</i>

## 574. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

*Alius, another.**Ūnus, one.*

	SINGULAR					
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>alius</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>aliūs</i>	<i>aliūs</i>	<i>aliūs</i>	<i>ūnīus</i>	<i>ūnīus</i>	<i>ūnīus</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>aliī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aliūm</i>	<i>aliām</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnam</i>	<i>ūnum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aliō</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliō</i>	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnā</i>	<i>ūnō</i>

The plural of *alius* is regular, of the First and Second Declensions.

575. *Duo, two.**Trēs, three.*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>duōs, duo</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trīs (trēs)</i>	<i>trīs (-ēs)</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>

## 576. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>fortis</i>	<i>fortior</i>	<i>fortissimus</i>
<i>vēlōx</i>	<i>vēlōcior</i>	<i>vēlōcissimus</i>
<i>miser</i>	<i>miserior</i>	<i>miserrimus</i>
<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācrior</i>	<i>ācerrimus</i>

## 577.

## IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<b>bonus</b> , <i>good</i>	<b>melior</b>	<b>optimus</b>
<b>malus</b> , <i>bad</i>	<b>peior</b>	<b>pessimus</b>
<b>magnus</b> , <i>great</i>	<b>maior</b>	<b>maximus</b>
<b>parvus</b> , <i>small</i>	<b>minor</b>	<b>minimus</b>
<b>multus</b> , <i>much</i>		<b>plūrimus</b>
<b>multum</b> , <i>much</i>	<b>plūs</b>	<b>plūrimum</b>
<b>multī</b> , <i>many</i>	<b>plūrēs</b>	<b>plūrimī</b>
<b>senex</b> , <i>old</i>	<b>senior</b> ( <i>maior nātū</i> )	<b>maximus nātū</b>
<b>iuvenis</b> , <i>young</i>	<b>iūnior</b> ( <i>minor nātū</i> )	<b>minimus nātū</b>
<b>idōneus</b> , <i>suitable</i>	<b>magis idōneus</b>	<b>maximē idōneus</b>
<b>exterus</b> , <i>outer</i>	<b>exterior</b>	<b>extrēmus</b> or <b>extimus</b>
<b>īferus</b> , <i>below</i>	<b>īnferior</b>	<b>īnfermus</b> or <b>īmus</b>
<b>posterus</b> , <i>following</i>	<b>posterior</b>	<b>postrēmus</b> or <b>postumus</b>
<b>superus</b> , <i>above</i>	<b>superior</b>	<b>suprēmus</b> or <b>summus</b>
( <b>cis</b> , <i>citrā</i> )	<b>citerior</b> , <i>hither</i>	<b>citimus</b>
( <b>in</b> , <i>intrā</i> )	<b>interior</b> , <i>inner</i>	<b>intimus</b>
( <b>prae</b> , <i>prō</i> )	<b>prior</b> , <i>former</i>	<b>prīmus</b>
( <b>prope</b> )	<b>propior</b> , <i>nearer</i>	<b>proximus</b>
( <b>ultrā</b> )	<b>ulterior</b> , <i>farther</i>	<b>ultimus</b>
<b>facilis</b> , <i>easy</i>	<b>facilior</b>	<b>facillimus</b>
<b>difficilis</b> , <i>difficult</i>	<b>difficilior</b>	<b>difficillimus</b>
<b>similis</b> , <i>like</i>	<b>similior</b>	<b>simillimus</b>
<b>dissimilis</b> , <i>unlike</i>	<b>dissimilior</b>	<b>dissimillimus</b>
<b>humilis</b> , <i>low</i>	<b>humilior</b>	<b>humillimus</b>

## 578.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<b>lātē</b> ( <i>lātus</i> )	<b>lātius</b>	<b>lātissimē</b>
<b>pulchrē</b> ( <i>pulcher</i> )	<b>pulchrius</b>	<b>pulcherrimē</b>
<b>miserē</b> ( <i>miser</i> )	<b>miserius</b>	<b>miserrimē</b>
<b>fortiter</b> ( <i>fortis</i> )	<b>fortius</b>	<b>fortissimē</b>
<b>ācriter</b> ( <i>ācer</i> )	<b>ācrius</b>	<b>ācerrimē</b>
<b>facile</b> ( <i>facilis</i> )	<b>facilius</b>	<b>facillimē</b>
<b>bene</b> ( <i>bonus</i> )	<b>melius</b>	<b>optimē</b>



POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
male (malus)	peius	pessimē
magnopere (magnus)	magis	maximē
parum (parvus)	minus	minimē
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē

## 579.

## NUMERALS

CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1. ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
2. duo, duae, duo	secundus
3. trēs, tria	tertius
4. quattuor	quārtus
5. quinque	quīntus
6. sex	sextus
7. septem	septimus
8. octō	octāvus
9. novem	nōnus
10. decem	decimus
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus
12. duodecim	duodecim
13. tredecim	tertius decimus
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15. quindecim	quīntus decimus
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus
17. septendecim	septimus decimus
18. duodēvigintī	duōdēvicēsīmus
19. ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsīmus
20. vīgintī	vicēsīmus
21. vīgintī ūnus (ūnus et vīgintī)	vicēsīmus prīmus
29. ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsīmus
30. trīgintā	trīcēsīmus
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus
50. quinquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus
80. octōgintā	octōgēsīmus
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus
100. centum	centēsīmus

## CARDINALS

200.	ducenti, -ae, -a
300.	trecenti
400.	quadringenti
500.	quingenti
600.	sescenti
700.	septingenti
800.	octingenti
900.	nongenti
1000.	mille
2000.	duo milia

## ORDINALS

ducentēsimus
trecentēsimus
quadringentēsimus
quingentēsimus
sescentēsimus
septingentēsimus
octingentēsimus
nongentēsimus
millēsimus
bis millēsimus

## PRONOUNS

## 580.

## PERSONAL

## FIRST PERSON

**Ego, I.**

## SECOND PERSON

**Tū, you (thou).**

## THIRD PERSON

**Is, he; ea, she;  
id, it.**

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL	For declension see § 582, e.
<i>Nom.</i> ego	nōs	tū	vōs	
<i>Gen.</i> mei	{ nostrum nostrī	tuī	{ vestrum vestrī	
<i>Dat.</i> mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	
<i>Acc.</i> mē	nōs	tē	vōs	
<i>Abl.</i> mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	

## 581.

## REFLEXIVE

## FIRST PERSON

**Meī, of myself,**

## THIRD PERSON

**Suī, of himself, herself, itself.**

## SECOND PERSON

**Tuī, of yourself (thyself).**

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

<i>Gen.</i>	suī	suī
<i>Dat.</i>	sibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	sē or sēsē	sē or sēsē
<i>Abl.</i>	sē or sēsē	sē or sēsē

These are declined like the personal pronoun of the same person, except that they have no nominative.

582.

## DEMONSTRATIVE

(a) **Hic**, *this*.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

(b) **Ille**, *that*.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī	illis	illis	illis
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

(c) **Iste**, *that, that of yours*.(d) **Ipsē**, *self*.

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	iste	ista	istud	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
<i>Gen.</i>	istiūs	istiūs	istiūs	ipsiūs	ipsiūs	ipsiūs
<i>Dat.</i>	istī	istī	istī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

The plural is regular.

(e) **Is**, *that, he*.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	īi (ī), eī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	iīs (īs), eīs	iīs (īs), eīs	iīs (īs), eīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	iīs (īs), eīs	iīs (īs), eīs	iīs (īs), eīs

(f) **Idem, same.**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	idem	eadem	idem	idem (iīdem), eidem	eadem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	eidem	eidem	eidem	isdem (iīdem),	eīdem	
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	isdem (iīdem),	eīdem	

## 583.

## RELATIVE

**Quī, who, which, that.**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

## 584.

## INTERROGATIVE

**Quis, who? what?**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae	
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus	
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae	
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus	

The adjective **quī**, *what*, is declined like the relative **quī**.

## 585.

## INDEFINITE

**Aliquis, some one.**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquis	aliquid	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua	
<i>Gen.</i>	alicuius	alicuius	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus	
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquid	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua	
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquō	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus	

The adjective is **aliquī**, **aliqua**, **aliquod**.

## VERBS

586.

## FIRST CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus.**STEMS: **portā-, portāv-, portāt-.**

## Active Voice

## Passive Voice

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

*I carry, am carrying, etc.**I am carried, etc.*

portō            portāmus  
portās          portātis  
portat          portant

portor            portāmur  
portāris (-re)    portāmini  
portātur          portantur

## IMPERFECT

*I carried, was carrying, etc.**I was carried, etc.*

portābam        portābāmus  
portābās        portābātis  
portābat        portābant

portābar        portābāmur  
portābāris (-re) portābāmini  
portābātur      portābantur

## FUTURE

*I shall carry, etc.**I shall be carried, etc.*

portābō        portābimus  
portābis        portābitis  
portābit        portābunt

portābor        portābimur  
portāberis (-re) portābimini  
portābitur      portābuntur

## PERFECT

*I have carried, I carried, etc.**I have been (was) carried, etc.*

portāvī        portāvimus  
portāvistī     portāvistis  
portāvit        portāvērunt (-ēre)

portātus        { sum    portātī        { sumus  
                      es        (-ae, -a)        { estis  
                      est                                { sunt

## PLUPERFECT

*I had carried, etc.**I had been carried, etc.*

portāveram     portāverāmus  
portāverās     portāverātis  
portāverat     portāverant

portātus        { eram    portātī        { erāmus  
                      erās        (-ae, -a)        { erātis  
                      erat                                { erant

## Active Voice

## Passive Voice

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have carried, etc.**I shall have been carried, etc.*

portāverō	portāverimus
portāveris	portāveritis
portāverit	portāverint

portātus	{ erō	portātī	{ erimus
(-a, -um)	{ eris	(-ae, -a)	{ eritis
	{ erit		{ erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

portem	portēmus
portēs	portētis
portet	portent

porter	portēmur
portēris (-re)	portēmini
portētur	portentur

## IMPERFECT

portārem	portārēmus
portārēs	portārētis
portāret	portārent

portārer	portārēmur
portārēris (-re)	portārēmini
portārētur	portārentur

## PERFECT

portāverim	portāverīmus
portāveris	portāveritis
portāverit	portāverint

portātus	{ sim	portātī	{ simus
(-a, -um)	{ sis	(-ae, -a)	{ sitis
	{ sit		{ sint

## PLUPERFECT

portāvissem	portāvissēmus
portāvissēs	portāvissētis
portāvisset	portāvissent

portātus	{ essem	portātī	{ essēmus
(-a, -um)	{ essēs	(-ae, -a)	{ essētis
	{ esset		{ essent

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

*Carry thou, etc.**Be thou carried, etc.*

2d portā	portāte
----------	---------

2d portāre	portāmini
------------	-----------

## FUTURE

*Thou shalt carry.**Thou shalt be carried.*

2d portātō	portātōte
3d portātō	portantō

2d portātor	
3d portātor	portantor

## INFINITIVE

PRES. portāre, to carry.

portārī, to be carried.

PERF. portāvisse, to have carried.

portātus esse, to have been carried.

FUT. portātūrus esse, to be about to carry.

portātum irī, to be about to be carried.

## Active Voice

## Passive Voice

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. portāns, -antis, <i>carrying.</i>	PERF. portātus; -a, -um, <i>having been carried.</i>
FUT. portātūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to carry.</i>	

## GERUND

## GERUNDIVE

Gen. portandī, <i>of carrying.</i>	portandus, -a, -um, <i>to be carried, etc.</i>
Dat. portandō, <i>for carrying.</i>	
Acc. portandum, <i>carrying.</i>	SUPINE
Abl. portandō, <i>by carrying.</i>	Acc. portātum, <i>to carry.</i>
	Abl. portātū, <i>to carry.</i>

587.

## SECOND CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus.

STEMS: monē-, monū-, monit-.

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

*I advise, warn, etc.**I am advised, warned, etc.*

moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris (-re)	monēminī
monet	monent	monētur	monentur

## IMPERFECT

*I advised, was advising, etc.**I was advised, etc.*

monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris (-re)	monēbāminī
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur

## FUTURE

*I shall advise, etc.**I shall be advised, etc.*

monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis (-re)	monēbiminī
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur

## PERFECT

*I have advised, etc.**I have been advised, etc.*

monuī	monuimus	monitus	{ sum	monitī	{ sumus
monuisti	monuistis	{ (-a, -um)	{ es	{ (-ae, -a)	{ estis
monuit	monuērunt (-ēre)		{ est		{ sunt



## Active Voice

## Passive Voice

## PLUPERFECT

*I had advised, etc.**I had been advised, etc.*

monueram	monuerāmus
monuerās	monuerātis
monuerat	monuerant

monitus	{ eram	monitī	{ erāmus
(-a, -um)	{ erās	(-ae, -a)	{ erātis
	{ erat		{ erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have advised, etc.**I shall have been advised, etc.*

monuerō	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

monitus	{ erō	monitī	{ erimus
(-a, -um)	{ eris	(-ae, -a)	{ eritis
	{ erit		{ erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

moneam	moneāmus
moneās	moneātis
moneat	moneant

monear	moneāmur
moneāris (-re)	moneāmini
moneātur	moneantur

## IMPERFECT

monērem	monērēmus
monērēs	monērētis
monēret	monērent

monērer	monērēmur
monērēris (-re)	monērēmini
monērētur	monērentur

## PERFECT

monuerim	monuerīmus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

monitus	{ sim	monitī	{ simus
(-a, -um)	{ sis	(-ae, -a)	{ sitis
	{ sit		{ sint

## PLUPERFECT

monuisssem	monuissēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis
monuisset	monuissent

monitus	{ essem	monitī	{ essēmus
(-a, -um)	{ essēs	(-ae, -a)	{ essētis
	{ esset		{ essent

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

*Advise thou, etc.**Be thou advised, etc.*

2d monē	monēte
---------	--------

2d monēre	monēmini
-----------	----------

## FUTURE

*Thou shalt advise, etc.**Thou shalt be advised, etc.*

2d monētō	monētōte
-----------	----------

2d monētor
------------

3d monētō	monentō
-----------	---------

3d monētor	monentor
------------	----------

## Active Voice

## Passive Voice

## INFINITIVE

PRES. <b>monēre</b> , <i>to advise</i> , etc.	<b>monērī</b> , <i>to be advised</i> , etc.
PERF. <b>monuisse</b> , <i>to have advised</i> , etc.	<b>monitus esse</b> , <i>to have been ad- vised</i> .
FUT. <b>monitūrus esse</b> , <i>to be about to advise</i> , etc.	<b>monitum irī</b> , <i>to be about to be ad- vised</i> , etc.

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. <b>monēns</b> , <b>-entis</b> , <i>advising</i> , etc.	PERF. <b>monitus</b> , <b>-a</b> , <b>-um</b> , <i>having been advised</i> , etc.
FUT. <b>monitūrus</b> , <b>-a</b> , <b>-um</b> , <i>about to advise</i> , etc.	

## GERUND

## GERUNDIVE

Gen. <b>monendī</b> , <i>of advising</i> , etc.	<b>monendus</b> , <b>-a</b> , <b>-um</b> , <i>to be advised</i> , etc.
Dat. <b>monendō</b> , <i>for advising</i> , etc.	
Acc. <b>monendum</b> , <i>advising</i> , etc.	
Abl. <b>monendō</b> , <i>by advising</i> , etc.	

## SUPINE

Acc. <b>monitum</b> , <i>to advise</i> , etc.
Abl. <b>monitū</b> , <i>to advise</i> , etc.

588.

## THIRD CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **dūcō**, **dūcere**, **dūxī**, **ductus**.STEMS: **dūce-**, **dūx-**, **duct-**.

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

*I lead, am leading, etc.**I am led, etc.*

<b>dūcō</b>	<b>dūcimus</b>	<b>dūcor</b>	<b>dūcimur</b>
<b>dūcis</b>	<b>dūcitis</b>	<b>dūceris (-re)</b>	<b>dūcimini</b>
<b>dūcit</b>	<b>dūcunt</b>	<b>dūcitur</b>	<b>dūcuntur</b>

## IMPERFECT

*I led, was leading, etc.**I was led, was being led, etc.*

<b>dūcēbam</b>	<b>dūcēbāmus</b>	<b>dūcēbār</b>	<b>dūcēbāmur</b>
<b>dūcēbās</b>	<b>dūcēbātis</b>	<b>dūcēbāris (-re)</b>	<b>dūcēbāmini</b>
<b>dūcēbat</b>	<b>dūcēbant</b>	<b>dūcēbātur</b>	<b>dūcēbantur</b>

## Active Voice

## Passive Voice

## FUTURE

*I shall lead, etc.**I shall be led, etc.*

dūcam	dūcēmus
dūcēs	dūcētis
dūcet	dūcent

dūcar	dūcēmur
dūcēris (-re)	dūcēminī
dūcētur	dūcentur

## PERFECT

*I led, have led, etc.**I was led, have been led, etc.*

dūxī	dūximus	ductus (-a, -um)	{ sum es est	ductī (-ae, -a)	{ sumus estis sunt
dūxistī	dūxistis				
dūxit	dūxērunt (-ēre)				

## PLUPERFECT

*I had led, etc.**I had been led, etc.*

dūxeram	dūxerāmus	ductus (-a, -um)	{ eram erās erat	ductī (-ae, -a)	{ erāmus erātis erant
dūxerās	dūxerātis				
dūxerat	dūxerant				

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have led, etc.**I shall have been led, etc.*

dūxerō	dūxerimus	ductus (-a, -um)	{ erō eris erit	ductī (-ae, -a)	{ erimus eritis erunt
dūxeris	dūxeritis				
dūxerit	dūxerint				

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

dūcam	dūcāmus	dūcar	dūcāmur
dūcās	dūcātis	dūcāris (-re)	dūcāminī
dūcat	dūcant	dūcātur	dūcantur

## IMPERFECT

dūcerem	dūcerēmus	dūcerer	dūcerēmur
dūcerēs	dūcerētis	dūcerēris (-re)	dūcerēminī
dūceret	dūcerent	dūcerētur	dūcerentur

## PERFECT

dūxerim	dūxerimus	ductus (-a, -um)	{ sim sis sit	ductī (-ae, -a)	{ sīmus sītis sint
dūxeris	dūxeritis				
dūxerit	dūxerint				

## Active Voice

## Passive Voice

## PLUPERFECT

dūxissem	dūxissēmus	ductus	{ essem	ductī	{ essēmus
dūxissēs	dūxissētis	(-a, -um)	{ essēs	(-ae, -a)	{ essētis
dūxisset	dūxissent		{ esset		{ essent

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

*Lead thou, etc.**Be thou led, etc.*

2d dūc <sup>1</sup>	dūcite	2d dūcere	dūcimini
---------------------	--------	-----------	----------

## FUTURE

*Thou shalt lead, etc.**Thou shalt be led, etc.*

2d dūcitō	dūcitōte	2d dūcitor	
3d dūcitō	dūcuntō	3d dūcitor	dūcuntor

## INFINITIVE

PRES. dūcere, to lead.	dūcī, to be led.
PERF. dūxisse, to have led.	ductus esse, to have been led.
FUT. ductūrus esse, to be about to lead.	ductum irī, to be about to be led.

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. dūcēns, -entis, leading.	PERF. ductus, -a, -um, having been led.
FUT. ductūrus, -a, -um, about to lead.	

## GERUND

## GERUNDIVE

Gen. dūcendī, of leading.	dūcendus, -a, -um, to be led.
Dat. dūcendō, for leading.	
Acc. dūcendum, leading.	SUPINE
Abl. dūcendō, by leading.	Acc. ductum, to lead.
	Abl. ductū, to lead.

589.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus.

STEM: audī-, audīv-, audīt-.

<sup>1</sup> Irregular for dūce.

## Active Voice

## Passive Voice

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

*I hear, am hearing, do hear, etc.**I am heard, etc.*

<b>audiō</b>	<b>audīmus</b>	<b>audior</b>	<b>audīmur</b>
<b>audīs</b>	<b>audītis</b>	<b>audīris (-re)</b>	<b>audīminī</b>
<b>audit</b>	<b>audiunt</b>	<b>audītur</b>	<b>audiuntur</b>

## IMPERFECT

*I heard, was hearing, etc.**I was heard, etc.*

<b>audiēbam</b>	<b>audiēbāmus</b>	<b>audiēbar</b>	<b>audiēbāmur</b>
<b>audiēbās</b>	<b>audiēbātis</b>	<b>audiēbāris (-re)</b>	<b>audiēbāminī</b>
<b>audiēbat</b>	<b>audiēbant</b>	<b>audiēbātur</b>	<b>audiēbantur</b>

## FUTURE

*I shall hear, etc.**I shall be heard, etc.*

<b>audiam</b>	<b>audiēmus</b>	<b>audiar</b>	<b>audiēmur</b>
<b>audiēs</b>	<b>audiētis</b>	<b>audiēris (-re)</b>	<b>audiēminī</b>
<b>audiet</b>	<b>audient</b>	<b>audiētur</b>	<b>audientur</b>

## PERFECT

*I have heard, I heard, etc.**I have been (was) heard, etc.*

audīvī	audīvimus	audītus (-a, -um)	{ es est	audītī (-ae, -a)	{ sumus estis sunt
audīvistī	audīvistis				
audīvit	audīvērunt (-ēre)				

## PLUPERFECT

*I had heard, etc.**I had been heard, etc.*

<b>audīveram</b>	<b>audīverāmus</b>	<b>audītus</b> <b>(-a, -um)</b>	{ <b>eram</b> <b>erās</b> <b>erat</b>	<b>audītī</b> <b>(-ae, -a)</b>	{ <b>erāmus</b> <b>erātis</b> <b>erant</b>
<b>audīverās</b>	<b>audīverātis</b>				
<b>audīverat</b>	<b>audīverant</b>				

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have heard, etc.**I shall have been heard, etc.*

audīverō	audīverimus	audītus (-a, -um)	{ erō eris erit	audītī (-ae, -a)	{ erimus eritis erunt
audīveris	audīveritis				
audīverit	audīverint				

## Active Voice

## Passive Voice

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris (-re)	audiāmini
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

## IMPERFECT

audīrem	audirēmus	audīrer	audirēmur
audirēs	audirētis	audirēris (-re)	audirēmini
audiret	audirent	audirētur	audirentur

## PERFECT

audīverim	audīverimus	audītus	{ sim	audītī	{ sīmus
audīveris	audīveritis	{ (-a, -um)	{ sis	{ (-ae, -a)	{ sītis
audīverit	audīverint		{ sit		{ sint

## PLUPERFECT

audīvissem	audīvissemus	audītus	{ essem	audītī	{ essēmus
audīvisse	audīvissetis	{ (-ā, -um)	{ essēs	{ (-ae, -a)	{ essētis
audīvisset	audīvissent		{ esset		{ essent

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

*Hear thou, etc.**Be thou heard, etc.*

2d audi	audīte	2d audire	audīmini
---------	--------	-----------	----------

## FUTURE

*Thou shalt hear, etc.**Thou shalt be heard, etc.*

2d audītō	audītōte	2d audītor	
3d audītō	audiuntō	3d audītor	audiuntor

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	audīre, to hear.	audīrī, to be heard.
PERF.	audīvisse, to have heard.	audītus esse, to have been heard.
FUT.	audītūrus esse, to be about to hear.	audītum irī, to be about to be heard.

## PARTICIPLES

PRES.	audiēns, -entis, hearing.	PERF.	audītus, -a, -um, heard,
FUT.	audītūrus, -a, -um, about to hear.		having been heard.

**Active Voice****GERUND**

<i>Gen.</i>	audiendī, of hearing.
<i>Dat.</i>	audiendō, for hearing.
<i>Acc.</i>	audiendum, hearing.
<i>Abl.</i>	audiendō, by hearing.

**Passive Voice****GERUNDIVE**

audiendus, -a, -um, to be heard.

**SUPINE**

<i>Acc.</i>	audītum, to hear.
<i>Abl.</i>	audītū, to hear.

**590. THIRD CONJUGATION — VERBS IN *iō***PRINCIPAL PARTS: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus.**STEMS: **cape-, cēp-, capt-.****INDICATIVE****PRESENT***I take, am taking, do take, etc.*

capiō	capimus
capis	capitis
capit	capiunt

*I am taken, etc.*

capior	capimur
caperis (-re)	capimini
capitur	capiuntur

**IMPERFECT**

*I took, was taking, etc.*  
*capiēbam, etc.*

*I was taken, etc.*  
*capiēbar, etc.*

**FUTURE***I shall take, etc.*

capiam	capiemus
capies	capietis
capiet	capient

*I shall be taken, etc.*

capiar	capiemur
capieris (-re)	capiemini
capietur	capientur

**PERFECT**

*I have taken, took, etc.*  
*cēpī, etc.*

*I have been (was) taken, etc.*  
*captus sum, etc.*

**PLUPERFECT**

*I had taken, etc.*  
*cēperam, etc.*

*I had been taken, etc.*  
*captus eram, etc.*

**FUTURE PERFECT**

*I shall have taken, etc.*  
*cēperō, etc.*

*I shall have been taken, etc.*  
*captus erō, etc.*



Active Voice		Passive Voice	
SUBJUNCTIVE			
PRESENT			
capiam	capiāmus	capiar	capiāmur
capiās	capiātis	capiāris (-re)	capiāmini
capiat	capiant	capiātur	capiantur
IMPERFECT			
caperem, etc.		caperer, etc.	
PERFECT			
cēperim, etc.		captus sim, etc.	
PLUPERFECT			
cēpisse, etc.		captus essem, etc.	
IMPERATIVE			
PRESENT			
Take (thou), etc.		Be (thou) taken, etc.	
2d cape	capite	2d capere	capimini
FUTURE			
Thou shalt take, etc.		Thou shalt be taken, etc.	
2d capitō	capitōte	2d capitor	
3d capitō	capiuntō	3d capitor	capiuntor
INFINITIVE			
PRES. capere, to take.		capī, to be taken.	
PERF. cēpisse, to have taken.		captus esse, to have been taken.	
FUT. captūrus esse, to be about to take.		captum irī, to be about to be taken.	
PARTICIPLES			
PRES. capiēns, -ientis, taking.		PERF. captus, -a, -um, taken, having been taken.	
FUT. captūrus, -a, -um, about to take.			
GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen. capiendī, of taking.		capiendus, -a, -um, to be taken.	
Dat. capiendō, for taking.			
Acc. capiendum, taking.		SUPINE	
Abl. capiendō, by taking.		Acc. captum, to take.	
		Abl. captū, to take.	

## 591.

## IRREGULAR VERBS

## PRINCIPAL PARTS :

sum, esse, fui.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS :

possum, posse, potui.

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

*I am, etc.*

sum	sumus
es	estis
est	sunt

*I am able, I can, etc.*

possum	possumus
potes	potestis
potest	possunt

## IMPERFECT

*I was, etc.*

eram	erāmus
erās	erātis
erat	erant

*I was able, I could, etc.*

poteram	poterāmus
poterās	poterātis
poterat	poterant

## FUTURE

*I shall be, etc.*

erō	erimus
eris	eritis
erit	erunt

*I shall be able, etc.*

poterō	poterimus
poteris	poteritis
poterit	poterunt

## PERFECT

*I was, have been, etc.*

fui	fuiimus
fuiſtī	fuiſtis
fuit	fueſrunt (-ēre)

*I have been able, I could, etc.*

potui	potuimus
potuiſtī	potuiſtis
potuit	potueſrunt (-ēre)

## PLUPERFECT

*I had been, etc.*

fueraſ	fuerāmus
fuerās	fuerātis
fuerat	fuerant

*I had been able, etc.*

potueraſ	potuerāmus
potuerās	potuerātis
potuerat	potuerant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have been, etc.*

fuerō	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

*I shall have been able, etc.*

potuerō	potuerimus
potueris	potueritis
potuerit	potuerint

## Sum

## Possum

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

sim	sīmus	possim	possīmus
sīs	sītis	possīs	possītis
sit	sint	possit	possint

## IMPERFECT

essem	essēmus	possem	possēmus
essēs	essētis	possēs	possētis
esset	essent	posset	possent

## PERFECT

fuerim	fuerīmus	potuerim	potuerīmus
fuerīs	fuerītis	potuerīs	potuerītis
fuerit	fuerint	potuerit	potuerint

## PLUPERFECT

fuissem	fuissēmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
fuissēs	fuissētis	potuissēs	potuissētis
fuisset	fuissent	potuisset	potuissent

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

*Be thou, etc.*

2d es                      este

## PRESENT

(lacking)

## FUTURE

*Thou shalt be, etc.*

2d estō                      estōte

3d estō                      suntō

## FUTURE

(lacking)

## INFINITIVE

PRES. esse, to be.

posse, to be able.

PERF. fuisse, to have been.

potuisse, to have been able.

FUT. futūrus esse, } to be about

(lacking)

or

fore

to be.

## PARTICIPLES

## PRESENT

(lacking)

## FUTURE

futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be.*

## PRESENT

**potēns, -entis** (used as an adjective), *powerful.*

## FUTURE

(lacking)

**592. PRINCIPAL PARTS:** **volō, velle, voluī**, *be willing, wish.*  
**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī**, *be unwilling.*  
**mālō, mälle, māluī**, *be more willing, prefer.*

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

<b>volō</b>	<b>volumus</b>	<b>nōlō</b>	<b>nolumus</b>	<b>mālō</b>	<b>mālumus</b>
<b>vīs</b>	<b>vultis</b>	<b>nōn vīs</b>	<b>nōn vultis</b>	<b>māvīs</b>	<b>māvultis</b>
<b>vult</b>	<b>volunt</b>	<b>nōn vult</b>	<b>nōlunt</b>	<b>māvult</b>	<b>mālunt</b>

## IMPERFECT

<b>volēbam</b>	<b>nōlēbam</b>	<b>mālēbam</b>
----------------	----------------	----------------

## FUTURE

<b>volam</b>	<b>nōlam</b>	<b>mālam</b>
--------------	--------------	--------------

## PERFECT

<b>voluī</b>	<b>nōluī</b>	<b>māluī</b>
--------------	--------------	--------------

## PLUPERFECT

<b>volueram</b>	<b>nōlueram</b>	<b>mālueram</b>
-----------------	-----------------	-----------------

## FUTURE PERFECT

<b>voluerō</b>	<b>nōluerō</b>	<b>māluerō</b>
----------------	----------------	----------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

<b>velim</b>	<b>velīmus</b>	<b>nōlim</b>	<b>nōlīmus</b>	<b>mālim</b>	<b>mālīmus</b>
<b>velīs</b>	<b>velītis</b>	<b>nōlīs</b>	<b>nōlītis</b>	<b>mālīs</b>	<b>mālītis</b>
<b>velit</b>	<b>velint</b>	<b>nōlit</b>	<b>nōlint</b>	<b>mālit</b>	<b>mālint</b>

## IMPERFECT

<b>vellem</b>	<b>nōllem</b>	<b>māllem</b>
---------------	---------------	---------------

PERFECT		
<b>voluerim</b>	<b>nōluerim</b>	<b>māluerim</b>
PLUPERFECT		
<b>voluissem</b>	<b>nōluissem</b>	<b>māluissem</b>
IMPERATIVE		
PRESENT		
(lacking)	2d <b>nōlī</b> <b>nōlīte</b>	(lacking)
FUTURE		
(lacking)	2d <b>nōlītō</b> <b>nōlītōte</b>	(lacking)
(lacking)	3d <b>nōlītō</b> <b>nōluntō</b>	(lacking)
INFINITIVE		
PRES. <b>velle</b>	<b>nōlle</b>	<b>mālle</b>
PERF. <b>voluisse</b>	<b>nōluisse</b>	<b>māluisse</b>
PARTICIPLES		
PRES. <b>volēns</b>	<b>nōlēns</b>	(lacking)

593. PRINCIPAL PARTS: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**, *bear, carry*.

PRESENT INDICATIVE			
Active		Passive	
<b>ferō</b>	<b>ferimus</b>	<b>feror</b>	<b>ferimur</b>
<b>fers</b>	<b>fertis</b>	<b>ferris (-re)</b>	<b>feriminī</b>
<b>fert</b>	<b>ferunt</b>	<b>fertur</b>	<b>feruntur</b>
INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
IMPERFECT		PRESENT	
<b>ferēbam</b>	<b>ferēbar</b>	<b>feram</b>	<b>ferar</b>
FUTURE		IMPERFECT	
<b>feram</b>	<b>ferar</b>	<b>ferrem</b>	<b>ferrer</b>
PERFECT		PERFECT	
<b>tulī</b>	<b>lātus sum</b>	<b>tulerim</b>	<b>lātus sim</b>

## PLUPERFECT

tuleram                      lātus eram

## PLUPERFECT

tulisse                      lātus essem

## FUTURE PERFECT

tulerō                      lātus erō

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

2d fer                      ferte                      2d ferre                      ferimini

## FUTURE

2d fertō                      fertōte                      2d fertor  
3d fertō                      feruntō                      3d fertor                      feruntor

## INFINITIVE

PRES. ferre                      ferri  
PERF. tulisse                      lātus esse  
FUT. lātūrus esse                      lātum iri

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. ferēns                      —  
PERF. —                      lātus  
FUT. lātūrus                      —

## GERUND

Gen. ferendī  
Dat. ferendō  
Acc. ferendum  
Abl. ferendō

## GERUNDIVE

ferendus

## SUPINE

Acc. lātum  
Abl. lātū

## 594. PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, ire, ii (ivī), itūrus, go.

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

eō                      imus  
is                      itis  
it                      eunt

## IMPERATIVE

PRES. 2d ī, ite  
FUT. 2d itō, itōte  
3d itō, euntō

## INFINITIVE

PRES. ire  
PERF. isse (iisse)  
FUT. itūrus esse

## INDICATIVE

## IMPERFECT

ībam

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

eam

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. iēns, euntis

## FUTURE

ībō

## IMPERFECT

īrem

FUT. itūrus

PERFECT	PERFECT	GERUND
<b>iī</b>	<b>ierim</b>	<i>Gen.</i> <b>eundī</b>
PLUPERFECT	PLUPERFECT	<i>Dat.</i> <b>eundō</b>
<b>ieram</b>	<b>issem</b>	<i>Acc.</i> <b>eundum</b>
		<i>Abl.</i> <b>eundō</b>
FUTURE PERFECT		SUPINE
<b>ierō</b>		<i>Acc.</i> <b>itum</b>
		<i>Abl.</i> <b>itū</b>

**595. PRINCIPAL PARTS: *fiō, fierī, factus sum, be made, become.***

INDICATIVE		IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE
PRESENT		PRESENT	
<b>fiō</b>	<b>fīmus</b>	<b>fī</b>	PRES. <b>fieri</b>
<b>fīs</b>	<b>fītis</b>	<b>fīte</b>	PERF. <b>factus esse</b>
<b>fit</b>	<b>fiunt</b>		FUT. <b>factum iri</b>
		SUBJUNCTIVE	PARTICIPLES
IMPERFECT		PRESENT	
<b>fiēbam</b>		<b>fiam</b>	PRES. —
FUTURE		IMPERFECT	PERF. <b>factus</b>
<b>fiam</b>		<b>fierem</b>	
PERFECT		PERFECT	GERUNDIVE
<b>factus sum</b>		<b>factus sim</b>	<b>faciendus</b>
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
<b>factus eram</b>		<b>factus essem</b>	
FUTURE PERFECT			
<b>factus erō</b>			

### ENGLISH GRAMMAR

As an Aid to the Study of Latin

#### NOUNS

**596.** A *Noun* is the name of some person or thing.

**597.** A *Common Noun* is the name of one of a class of objects: *picture, story.*



**598.** A *Proper Noun* is the name of a particular person or object: *Caesar, Rome*.

**599.** A *Collective Noun* is one which, singular in form, may apply to a group of objects: *family, army*.

**600.** A *Verbal Noun* is the name of an action. *Walking* is good exercise.

**601.** An *Abstract Noun* is the name of a quality or condition: *goodness, wealth*.

### PRONOUNS

**602.** A *Pronoun* (Latin *prō*, *for*, and *nōmen*, *name*) is a word used for a noun. I saw James as *he* was coming.

**603.** A *Personal Pronoun* shows by its form whether it refers to the speaker (first person, *I*); the one spoken to (second person, *you*); or the one spoken of (third person, *he*).

**604.** A *Relative Pronoun* refers to a word in a preceding clause called the antecedent.

(a) The relative connects the two clauses. The man *whom* I saw was blind.

(b) The relative pronouns are *who, which, what* and *that*.

**605.** An *Interrogative Pronoun* asks a question. *Who* are you? The interrogative pronouns are *who, which, what*.

**606.** A *Demonstrative Pronoun* points out a particular person or thing: *this, these; that, those*.

**607.** An *Indefinite Pronoun* does not refer to any definite person or thing: *some, any one*.

**608.** A *Reflexive Pronoun* refers back to the subject. The man praises *himself*.

**609.** Nouns and Pronouns have *gender, person, number*, and *case*.

**610.** *Gender* distinguishes sex.

(a) Names of males are *masculine*; names of females *feminine*; names of things are *neuter*.

(In Latin the gender is often determined by the ending of the noun.)

**611.** *Number* shows how many persons or things are referred to. *Singular* number denotes but one; *plural* number denotes more than one.

**612.** *Case* shows the relation of the noun or pronoun to the other words of the sentence.

(a) There are three cases in English: *Nominative*, *Possessive*, *Objective*.

**613.** The *Nominative Case* is used as the subject of a sentence or in the predicate after an intransitive or passive verb, to refer to the subject. *The boy ran home. You are a wise man. The man was called general.*

**614.** The *Possessive Case* denotes possession. *Caesar's soldiers were brave.*

**615.** The *Objective Case* is used as the object of a verb or preposition. *Caesar sent the army to the city.*

**616.** *Inflection* is the change in the form of a word to show its relation to the other words of a sentence. The inflection of a noun or pronoun is called *Declension*: Nom. *who*, Poss. *whose*, Obj. *whom*. The inflection of a verb is called *Conjugation*.

### ADJECTIVES

**617.** An *Adjective* is used to limit or describe a noun or its equivalent. *Five boys came. The soldiers were brave. To err is human.*

**618.** *A*, *an*, and *the* are called *Articles*. *The* is the definite article; *a* (*an*) is the indefinite article.

**619.** Adjectives denoting number are called *Numeral Adjectives*. They are either *Cardinals*, denoting how many: *three, ten*; or *Ordinals*, denoting which one in order: *third, tenth*.

**620.** *Comparison* of Adjectives is a change in form by which degree of quality is expressed.

- (a) The degrees of comparison are called *positive*, *comparative* and *superlative*.  
(b) The *Positive* denotes the quality in the simple state : *large*, *good*.  
(c) The *Comparative* denotes the quality in a greater or less degree : *larger*, *better*, *less beautiful*.  
(d) The *Superlative* denotes the quality in greatest or least degree : *largest*, *best*, *least beautiful*.

**621.** Adjectives are compared (1) *regularly* by adding to the positive *-r* or *-er* for the comparative, and *-st* or *-est* for the superlative ; (2) *irregularly* ; and (3) by adding *more* and *most*, *less* and *least* to the positive. Most adjectives of more than one syllable are compared in this last way. (1) *Large*, *larger*, *largest* ; (2) *good*, *better*, *best* ; (3) *beautiful*, *more beautiful*, *most beautiful*.

## VERBS

**622.** A *Verb* is a word used to assert action or state of being : *to sing*, *to be*.

**623.** A *Transitive Verb* is one which commonly requires an object to complete its meaning. He *killed* his enemy.

(Transitive is from the Latin *trāns*, *across*, and *eō*, *go*, because the action goes over from the subject to the object of the verb.)

**624.** An *Intransitive Verb* is one which does not require an object to complete its meaning. They *dwell* in Gaul.

**625.** An *Impersonal Verb* is one which does not take a personal subject and is used only in the third person singular. *It rains*.

**626.** An *Auxiliary Verb* (Latin *auxilium*, *aid*) is one which aids in the conjugation of other verbs. *I was reading*. *Does he read* ?

**627.** Verbs have *voice*, *mood*, *tense*, *person*, and *number*.

**628.** The inflection of a verb is called *Conjugation*. The *Conjugation* gives the forms of a verb in all voices, moods, tenses, persons, and numbers.

**629.** The *Synopsis* of a verb gives its forms in any required person and number through all tenses of different moods.

## VOICE

**630.** A verb is in the *Active Voice* when the subject performs the action. Caesar *has fought*.

**631.** A verb is in the *Passive Voice* when the subject is acted upon. The boys *were punished*.

*Note.* — Intransitive verbs are used only in the active voice.

## MOOD

**632.** By *Mood* (Latin **modus**, *manner*) we mean the manner of making a statement.

**633.** A verb is in the *Indicative Mood* when it states a fact or asks whether something is a fact. Rome *was* a great city. *Did* Caesar *conquer* the Gauls?

**634.** The *Subjunctive Mood* states something as *demand*ed, *wished for*, *possible*, *contingent*, or *contrary to fact*.

He *shall pay* me. Heaven *help* us! If it *should rain*, they *would not go*. If we *were* better, we *should be* happier.

**635.** The *Imperative Mood* expresses a command. Soldiers, *draw* your swords.

(a) With the imperative the subject is usually not expressed. The person addressed is put in the Nominative Independent. (Vocative in Latin.)

**636.** The *Infinitive* is a form of the verb not limited by person and number. *To forgive* is divine.

(a) It may be used as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb.

(b) It has the *present* and *perfect* tenses only.

(c) The *Present Infinitive* represents an action as taking place *at the time* of the principal verb. He wishes (wished, will wish) *to fight*.

(d) The *Perfect Infinitive* represents an action as *completed* at the time of the principal verb. The man is said (was said, will be said) *to have fought*.

**637.** The *Infinitive* with subject in the objective (Latin Accusative) case is used after verbs meaning wish, prefer, and the like when its subject is not the same as that of the governing verb. I wish *you to go*.

(a) When the subject of both verbs is the same, the subject of the infinitive is not expressed. I wish *to go*.

#### TENSE (INDICATIVE)

**638.** The *Present Tense* represents an action as taking place at the present time. (Latin Present.) The soldiers *fight*.

**639.** The *Past Tense* represents something as having occurred in the past. (Latin Imperfect and Perfect.) The soldiers *were fighting, fought*.

**640.** The *Future Tense* represents something that will occur in the future. (Latin Future.) The soldiers *will fight*.

**641.** The *Present Perfect* represents an action as completed at the present time. (Latin Perfect.) The soldiers *have fought*.

**642.** The *Past Perfect* represents an action as having been completed before some past time. (Latin Pluperfect.) The soldiers *had fought*.

**643.** The *Future Perfect* represents an action as having taken place before some definite time in the future. (Latin Future Perfect.) The soldiers *will have fought* long before they conquer.

#### PERSON AND NUMBER

**644.** A Verb agrees with its *subject* in *person* and *number*.

(a) A verb having two or more subjects connected by *and* must be in the plural. The boy and the girl *are* my friends.

(b) A verb having two or more singular subjects separated by *or* or *nor* must be in the singular. Neither the boy nor the girl *is* happy.

## PARTICIPLES

**645.** A *Participle* is a *Verbal Adjective*. Like a verb it may take an object and have adverbial modifiers. We saw the man *beating* the horse *severely*.

Like an adjective, it may modify a noun. A *babbling* brook flows through the meadow.

## ADVERBS

**646.** *Adverbs* modify *verbs*, *adjectives*, and *other adverbs*. He ran *swiftly*. He is *nearly* blind. They fought *very* bravely.

**647.** An *Adverb* may express: *Time*, recently; *Manner*, swiftly; *Place*, here; *Degree*, very; *Affirmation*, yes; *Negation*, no, not.

**648.** An *Interrogative Adverb* asks a question with reference to *time*, *place*, *manner*, or *reason*. *When* shall we go? *Where* shall we go? *How* shall we go? *Why* shall we go?

**649.** A *Conjunctive Adverb* is used to introduce an adverbial clause. *While* there is life, there is hope.

## PREPOSITIONS

**650.** A *Preposition* (Latin *prae*, *before*, and *pōnō*, *place*) is a word placed before a noun or pronoun to show its relation to the rest of the sentence. He lived *in* Italy. He went *to* Rome.

## CONJUNCTIONS

**651.** A *Conjunction* (Latin *con*, *together*, and *iungō*, *join*) is a word used to connect words, phrases, or clauses.

(a) A *Coördinate Conjunction* connects elements of equal rank or importance: *and*, *but*, *nor*.

(b) A *Subordinate Conjunction* connects elements of unequal rank or importance: *because*, *if*.

## INTERJECTIONS

**652.** An *Interjection* (Latin *inter*, *between*, and *iaciō*, *throw*) is a word thrown into a sentence to express surprise or emotion and used independently of the rest of the sentence: *ah*, *oh*, *halloo*.

## RULES OF SYNTAX

**653.** The *Subject* of a verb is in the *Nominative* case. *Rome* was a large city.

**654.** The *Direct Object* of a verb is in the *Objective* (Latin Accusative) case. Virgil wrote *poetry*.

**655.** A noun or adjective, used in the predicate after an intransitive or passive verb and referring to the same person or thing as the subject, agrees with the subject in case and is called the *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective*. They were *children*. They were *good*. He was chosen *king*. He was called *wise*.

(a) It may be stated thus: An Intransitive or Passive verb takes the same case after it as before it.

**656.** *Possession* is denoted by the *Possessive* (Genitive) case or *of* with an object. We read *Horace's* poems. We read the poems *of Horace*.

**657.** Some transitive verbs having the general meaning of giving, telling, etc., take two objects, a *direct* and an *indirect*.

(a) The *Direct Object* receives the full effect of the action; the *Indirect Object* is that *to* or *for* which something is done or happens. We gave (to) *Caesar* the letter. We told *him* the reason.

**658.** The *Objective* (Latin Accusative) case is used as the subject of an infinitive. Caesar ordered *him to fight*.



## VOCABULARIES



# LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

## A

- ā, ab**, prep. (with abl.), *from, by*.  
**ab**, adv., *off*.  
**abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus**, *put away, hide; sē abdere, hide (oneself)*.  
**abdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus**, *lead away*.  
**abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus**, *cast away, throw*.  
**absum, -esse, āfuī**, *to be away, absent, to be exempt*.  
**ac**, conj. (same as **atque**), *and, and also*.  
**Acca, -ae, f.**, *Acca*.  
**accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus**, *approach*.  
**accidō, -ere, accidī, —**, *happen*.  
**accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus**, *receive, accept, welcome, entertain*.  
**accumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitūrus**, *recline (at table)*.  
**ācer, ācris, ācre**, adj., *sharp, active*.  
**aciēs, -ēī, f.**, *line of battle*.  
**ācritēr**, adv., *sharply, fiercely*.  
**ad**, prep. (with acc.), *to, near, toward, for, about* (with words of number), *according to*.  
**addō, -ere, -didī, -ditus**, *add*.  
**addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus**, *lead to, influence; hāc ōrātiōne adductī, influenced by this speech*.  
**adeō, -īre, -iī (-ivī), -itus**, *go, to, approach, attack, visit* (followed by acc.).  
**adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus**, *apply, employ*.  
**adiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus**, *throw to, hurl; add*.  
**adigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus**, *drive*.  
**administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *carry on, administer*.  
**admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus**, *remind, advise, admonish*.  
**adorior, -irī, -ortus sum**, *attack*.  
**adsum, -esse, -fuī**, *be near, be present*.  
**Aduatucī, -ōrum, m.**, *Aduatuci, a people of Gaul*.  
**adulēscēns, -centis, m.**, *a youth*.  
**adventus, -ūs, m.**, *arrival, approach*.  
**adversus, -a, -um, adj.**, *turned toward, facing, face to face, against*.  
**advocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *summon*.  
**advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *fly to*.  
**aedificium, -ī, n.**, *building*.  
**aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *build*.  
**aedis, -is, f.**, *temple; pl., house*.  
**Aeduus, -ī, m.**, *Aeduan*.  
**aegrē, adv.**, *with difficulty*.  
**Aenēas, -ae, m.**, *Aeneas*.  
**Aeolia, -ae, f.**, *Aeolia*.  
**Aeolus, -ī, m.**, *Aeolus, god of the winds*.  
**aequitās, -tātis, f.**, *equality, fairness, justice*.  
**aequus, -a, -um**, *equal, serene, right*.  
**āēr, āēris, m.**, *air*.  
**aestās, -tātis, f.**, *summer; primā aestāte, in the early part of the summer*.  
**aetās, -tātis, f.**, *age*.  
**aeternus, -a, -um**, *everlasting; in aeternum, forever*.

- Aetna**, -ae, f., *Etna*, a volcanic mountain in Sicily.
- afferō**, -ferre, attulī, allātus, *bring*.
- afficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *affect, afflict*.
- Āfrica**, -ae, f., *Africa*.
- ager**, agrī, m., *field*.
- agger**, aggeris, m., *rampart*.
- aggredior**, -gredī, -gressus sum, *approach, attack*.
- agmen**, -minis, n., *army* (on the march); **novissimum agmen**, *rear*; **primum agmen**, *van*.
- agnōscō**, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, *recognize*.
- agō**, agere, ēgī, āctus, *do, act; drive, treat, move forward*; passive, *go on*; **grātiās agere**, *give thanks*.
- agricola**, -ae, m., *farmer*.
- ala**, -ae, f., *wing*.
- Alba**, -ae, f., *Alba*, a city, usually called *Alba Longa*.
- Albānī**, -ōrum, m., *Albans*.
- albus**, -a, -um, adj., *white*.
- ālea**, -ae, f., *a die*.
- aliās**, adv., *at another time*.
- alibī**, adv., *at another place*.
- aliēnus**, -a, -um, *belonging to another, another's*.
- aliī** . . . **aliī**, *some . . . others*.
- aliquandō**, adv., *at some time or other, formerly, once*.
- aliquis**, **aliquid**, *some one, something*.
- alius**, -a, -ud, gen. **alius** (often **alterius**), adj., *another, other*.
- alius** . . . **alius**, *one . . . another*.
- alleluia**, interj., *praise the Lord! halleluia!*
- Allobrogēs**, -um, m., *Allobroges*, a people of Gaul.
- almus**, -a, -um, adj., *nourishing*.
- alter**, altera, alterum, *the other*.
- alter** . . . **alter**, *the one . . . the other*.
- altitudō**, -inis, f., *height, depth*.
- altum**, -ī, n., *the deep, the sea*.
- altus**, -a, -um, adj., *high, deep, tall*.
- alveus**, -ī, m., *bed* (of a river).
- Ambiānī**, -ōrum, m., *Ambiani*, a people of Gaul.
- ambulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *walk*.
- America**, -ae, f., *America*.
- amicitia**, -ae, f., *friendship*.
- amicus**, -a, -um, adj., *friendly*.
- amicus**, -ī, m., *friend*.
- āmittō**, -ere, āmisī, āmissus, *send away, lose*.
- amō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *love*.
- amoenus**, -a, -um, *pleasant, delightful*.
- amor**, -ōris, m., *love, longing*.
- āmoveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move away*.
- amplē**, adv., *fully, amply, abundantly*.
- amplius**, adv., *more*.
- amplus**, -a, -um, *large, ample, distinguished*.
- Amūlius**, -ī, m., *Amulius*.
- an**, conj., *or*.
- ancora**, -ae, f., *anchor*.
- Ancus**, -ī, m., *Ancus*.
- Andecomborius**, -ī, m., *Andecomborius*, a prominent man among the Remi.
- angustus**, -a, -um, *narrow*.
- angustē**, adv., *closely*.
- anima**, -ae, f., *soul, breath of life*.
- animadvertō**, -ere, -tī, -sus, *notice*.

**animal**, -ālis, n., *animal*.

**animus**, -ī, m., *mind, heart, spirit*;  
esse in animō, *to intend*; in  
animō habēre, *to purpose, intend*.

**annōn**, or *not*.

**annus**, -ī, m., *year*.

**ante**, adv., *before, ago*.

**ante**, prep. (with acc.), *before*.

**anteā**, adv., *before, formerly*.

**antecēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go  
before, precede, surpass*.

**antepōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *go  
place before, prefer*.

**antiquitus**, adv., *in ancient times*.

**antiquus**, -a, -um, *ancient*.

**ānulus**, -ī, m., *finger-ring*.

**aperiō**, -īre, -uī, -tus, *uncover, open*.

**apertus**, -a, -um, *uncovered, open*.

**Apollō**, -inis, m., *Apollo, god of  
music*.

**appellō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *address,  
call, name*.

**Appius**, -a, -um, *Appian*.

**appropinquō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, *ap-  
proach*.

**apud**, prep. (with accusative),  
*among*.

**aqua**, -ae, f., *water*.

**aquaeductus**, -ūs, m., *aqueduct*.

**aquila**, -ae, f., *eagle, standard*.

**Aquitānia**, -ae, f., *Aquitania*.

**Aquitānus**, -ī, m., *an Aquitanian*.

**āra**, -ae, f., *altar*.

**arbitror**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *think*.

**arbor**, -oris, f., *tree*.

**arceō**, -ēre, -uī, *shut up, shut off,  
keep away*.

**Ardea**, -ae, f., *Ardea*.

**ārdeō**, -ēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, *be on  
fire, burn*; ārdēns, -entis, *as  
adj., burning, blazing*.

**arduum**, -ī, n., *difficulty*.

**arēna**, -ae, f., *arena*.

**āridum**, -ī, n., *dry land*.

**āridus**, -a, -um, *dry*.

**arma**, -ōrum, n., *arms, implements  
of war*.

**armātus**, -a, -um, *armed*.

**armilla**, -ae, f., *armlet, bracelet*.

**arō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *plow*.

**ars**, artis, f., *art, skill*.

**artificium**, -ī, n., *art, trade*.

**ascendō**, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, *ascend,  
climb, ascend, mount*.

**asinus**, -ī, m., *donkey, ass*.

**aspera**, -ōrum, n., *difficulties*.

**astrologus**, -ī, m., *astrologer*.

**astrum**, -ī, n., *star*.

**asylum**, -ī, n., *place of refuge,  
asylum*.

**at**, conj., *but*.

**atque**, conj. (same as *ac*), *and also*;  
*as*.

**Atrebās**, -ātis, m., *an Atrebatian*;  
pl. *Atrebatians*, a Gallic people.

**ātrium**, -ī, n., *atrium*, the principal  
apartment of a Roman house.

**atrōciter**, adv., *fiercely, cruelly*.

**attingō**, -ere, attigī, attāctus, *touch,  
border on*.

**attribuō**, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, *assign*.

**auctor**, -ōris, m., *author*.

**auctōritās**, -tātis, f., *authority, in-  
fluence*.

**audācter**, adv., *boldly*.

**audeō**, -ēre, ausus sum, *dare*.

**audiō**, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, *hear, hear of*.

**augeō**, -ēre, auxī, auctus, *increase*.

**aureus**, -a, -um, *golden*.

**auriga**, -ae, m., *driver, charioteer*.

**auris**, -is, f., *ear*.

**aurum**, -ī, n., *gold*.

**Aurunculēius, -ī, m.,** *Aurunculeius*  
Cotta, a lieutenant of Caesar.

**auspiciū, -ī, n.,** *divination by the flight of birds, auspice.*

**aut, conj., or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.**

**autem, conj., but, moreover.**

**auxiliū, -ī, n.,** *aid, help; pl., auxiliary forces, or troops.*

**aveō, -ēre, —, —, in the imperative, avē, hail!**

**avus, -ī, m.,** *grandfather.*

**Axona, -ae, f.,** *the Aisne (river).*

## B

**baculū, -ī, n.,** *staff, wand.*

**barbarī, -ōrum, m.,** *foreigners.*

**barbarus, -a, -um, foreign, barbarous.**

**Belgae, -ārum, m.,** *Belgians, the bravest of the Gauls.*

**Bellovacī, -ōrum, m.,** *Bellovaci, a people of Gaul.*

**bellum, -ī, n.,** *war.*

**bene, adv., well.**

**beneficiū, -ī, n.,** *kindness, benefit.*

**benignē, adv., kindly.**

**bibō, -ere, bibī, bibitum, drink.**

**Bibrax, -actis, f.,** *Bibrax, a town of the Remi.*

**biennium, -ī, n.,** *period of two years.*

**bis, num. adv., twice.**

**bonus, -a, -um (comp., melior; sup., optimus), adj., good.**

**Brātuspanantium, -ī, n.,** *Bratuspanantium, a stronghold of the Bellovacī.*

**brevis, -e, adj., short, brief.**

**Britannī, -ōrum, m.,** *Britons.*

**Britannia, -ae, f.,** *Britain.*

**Brūtus, -ī, m.,** *Brutus.*

## C

**C.,** abbreviation for **Gāius, -ī, m.,** (Eng.) *Caius.*

**cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, fall.**

**caecus, -a, -um, blind.**

**caedēs, -is, f., slaughter.**

**caelestēs, -ium, m., gods.**

**caelum, -ī, n., sky, heavens.**

**Caemanī, -ōrum, m.,** *Caemani, a people in Belgic Gaul.*

**Caerōsī, -ōrum, m.,** *Caerosi, a people in Belgic Gaul.*

**Caesar, -aris, m.,** *Caesar.*

**calamitās, -tātis, f., calamity.**

**calathus, -ī, m., basket.**

**calefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, make hot.**

**Caletī, -ōrum, m.,** *Caleti, a tribe living near the mouth of the Seine.*

**Campānus, -a, -um, of Campania.**

**canis, -is, m. and f., dog.**

**canō, -ere, cecinī, sound, sing.**

**cantilēna, -ae, f., old song.**

**capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, take, seize, capture.**

**Capitōlium, -ī, n.,** *Capitoline hill.*

**captīva, -ae, f., captive (female).**

**captīvus, -ī, m., captive.**

**captīvus, -a, -um, adj., captive.**

**captō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, catch.**

**caput, -itis, n., head.**

**cāritās, -ātis, f., esteem.**

**carmen, -minis, n., song, poem.**

**carō, carnis, f., flesh.**

**Carolus, -ī, m.,** *Charles.*

**carpentum, -ī, n., carriage.**

**carpō, -ere, -psī, -ptus, grasp.**

**carrus, -ī, m., cart, wagon.**

**Carthāginiēnsēs, -ium, m.,** *Carthaginians.*

- Carthāgō, -inis, f., *Carthage*, a city in Africa.  
 cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear*.  
 casa, -ae, f., *cottage*.  
 Cassius, -ī, m., *Cassius*.  
 castellum, -ī, n., *stronghold*.  
 castra, -ōrum, n., *camp*.  
 cāsus, -ūs, m., *fall, chance; misfortune, calamity*.  
 Catilīna, -ae, m., *Catiline*.  
 Catō, -ōnis, m., *Cato*.  
 cauda, -ae, f., *tail*.  
 causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason; multis dē causis, for many reasons*.  
 causā (with gen.), *for the sake (of)*.  
 caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautūrus, *beware*.  
 cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, *yield*.  
 celebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *practice, engage in; celebrate*.  
 celer, celeris, celere, adj., *quick, swift*.  
 celeritās, -tātis, f., *swiftness*.  
 celeriter, adv., *quickly*.  
 cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *conceal*.  
 Celtae, -ārum, m., *Celts*.  
 cēna, -ae, f., *dinner, supper, feast*.  
 cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *dine, sup*.  
 cēnsus, -ūs, m., *registration, census*.  
 centum, indecl. num., *one hundred*.  
 centuriō, -ōnis, m., *centurion*.  
 cernō, -ere, crēvī, *see, discern*.  
 certāmen, -inis, n., *contest, match*.  
 certē, adv., *certainly*.  
 certus, -a, -um, adj., *certain; certiorem facere, inform*.  
 cēterus, -a, -um, adj., *the other*.  
 Christus, -ī, m., *Christ*.  
 cibus, -ī, m., *food*.  
 Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Cicero*.  
 Cincinnātus, -ī, m., *Cincinnatus*.  
 cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctus, *surround*.  
 circā, adv., *about*.  
 Circē, -ēs, abl. -ē, f., *Circe*.  
 circiter, adv., *about*.  
 circum, prep. (with acc.), *around, about*.  
 circum, adv., *about, around*.  
 circumdō, -are, -dedī, -datus, *put around, surround*.  
 circumciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *place around*.  
 circumsistō, -ere, -stetī, —, *stand around*.  
 circumspiciō, -ere, -exī, -ectus, *look around*.  
 circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come around, surround*.  
 cis, prep. (with acc.), *on this side of*.  
 citerior, -ius, adj., *hither; in citeriōre Galliā, in hither Gaul*.  
 cito, adv., *quickly*.  
 cīvis, -is, m. and f., *citizen*.  
 cīvītās, -tātis, f., *state*.  
 clāmītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call out, cry out*.  
 clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call, cry out*.  
 clāmor, -ōris, m., *shout, noise*.  
 clārus, -a, -um, *clear, honorable*.  
 classis, -is, f., *a fleet*.  
 claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, *shut, close*.  
 clāvus, -ī, m., *stripe*.  
 clēmēntia, -ae, f., *clemency*.  
 Coclēs, -itis, m., *Cocles ("one-eyed")*.  
 coēmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēemptus, *buy*.  
 coepī, -isse (def., found mainly in perfect stem tenses), *began*.  
 cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *consider*.  
 cognōmen, -inis, n., *surname*.



<b>cognōscō</b> , -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, <i>become acquainted with, learn.</i>	<b>cōnātus</b> , -ūs, m., <i>attempt.</i>
<b>cōgō</b> , -ere, cōēgī, cōāctus, <i>collect, compel.</i>	<b>concēdō</b> , -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, <i>yield.</i>
<b>cohors</b> , cohortis, f., <i>cohort</i> (the tenth part of a legion).	<b>concidō</b> , -ere, -cidī, —, <i>fall, be slain.</i>
<b>cohortor</b> , -ārī, -ātus sum, <i>encourage.</i>	<b>concitō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>arouse, excite, stir up.</i>
<b>Collātinus</b> , -ī, m., <i>Collatinus.</i>	<b>concordia</b> , -ae, f., <i>concord.</i>
<b>collis</b> , -is, m., <i>hill</i> ; ab summō colle, <i>from the top of the hill</i> ; (in) mediō colle, <i>halfway up the hill.</i>	<b>conculcō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>trample upon.</i>
<b>collocō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>place together, arrange.</i>	<b>concurrō</b> , -ere, -cucurrī, -cursūrus, <i>run together.</i>
<b>collum</b> , -ī, n., <i>neck.</i>	<b>concursum</b> , -ūs, m., <i>onset.</i>
<b>colō</b> , colere, coluī, cultus, <i>cultivate; worship.</i>	<b>condiciō</b> , -ōnis, f., <i>condition, terms.</i>
<b>columna</b> , -ae, f., <i>column, pillar.</i>	<b>condō</b> , -ere, -didī, -ditus, <i>form, found, establish.</i>
<b>combūrō</b> , -ere, -ussī, -ūstus, <i>burn.</i>	<b>Condrūsī</b> , -ōrum, m., <i>a Belgic tribe.</i>
<b>comedō</b> , -ere, -ēdī, -ēsus, <i>eat up.</i>	<b>condūcō</b> , -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, <i>bring together.</i>
<b>comes</b> , -itis, m. or f., <i>companion, associate.</i>	<b>cōnferō</b> , -ferre, -tulī, collātus, <i>bring together, collect</i> ; (with sē), <i>to betake oneself.</i>
<b>commeātus</b> , -ūs, m., <i>supplies.</i>	<b>cōnficiō</b> , -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, <i>do thoroughly, accomplish, furnish, exhaust.</i>
<b>commilitō</b> , -ōnis, m., <i>fellow soldier, comrade.</i>	<b>cōnfidō</b> , -ere, -fisis sum, <i>trust.</i>
<b>committō</b> , -ere, -mīsī, -missus, <i>join</i> ; proelium committere, <i>join battle, begin an engagement.</i>	<b>cōnfirmō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>declare, arrange for, strengthen, assert.</i>
<b>Commius</b> , -ī, m., <i>Commius.</i>	<b>cōnfligō</b> , -ere, -flixī, -flictus, <i>fight, contend.</i>
<b>commoveō</b> , -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, <i>disturb, alarm.</i>	<b>congregō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>gather, collect.</i>
<b>commūnis</b> , -e, adj., <i>common.</i>	<b>coniciō</b> , -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, <i>hurl together, hurl.</i>
<b>comparō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>prepare.</i>	<b>coniungō</b> , -ere, -iūnxī, -iunctus, <i>join together, unite.</i>
<b>compellō</b> , -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, <i>drive together, compel, force.</i>	<b>coniūnx</b> , -iugis, m. and f., <i>spouse, husband, wife.</i>
<b>compleō</b> , -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, <i>fill, cover, complete.</i>	<b>coniūrō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>conspire.</i>
<b>complicō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus, <i>fold together.</i>	<b>cōnor</b> , -ārī, -ātus sum, <i>try, attempt.</i>
<b>complūrēs</b> , -a, adj., <i>several, very many.</i>	
<b>compos</b> , -otis, adj., <i>having control.</i>	

- cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsū-**  
*rus, climb, go on board.*  
**cōnscrībō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus,**  
*enroll, enlist, levy.*  
**consensus, -ūs, m.,** *agreement.*  
**cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus,**  
*agree, conspire.*  
**cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, spare,**  
*preserve.*  
**cōnsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, look**  
*closely at, consider.*  
**cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, —, encamp,**  
*settle.*  
**cōnsilium, -ī, n., plan, advice,**  
*counsel, wisdom.*  
**cōnsimilis, -e, adj., very like.**  
**cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, stand,**  
*make a stand, stop.*  
**cōnspectus, -ūs, m., sight, view,**  
*presence.*  
**cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus,**  
*observe.*  
**cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, see.**  
**cōnstanter, adv., uniformly.**  
**cōnstat (impers.), it is evident.**  
**cōnstituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitūtus,**  
*determine, found, station, draw*  
*up in line, erect, settle; of ships,*  
*moor.*  
**cōnstitūtō, -ōnis, f., constitution.**  
**cōnsuēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus, become**  
*accustomed; in the perfect tenses,*  
*be accustomed.*  
**cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f., habit, custom.**  
**cōnsul, -ulis, m., consul.**  
**cōnsulō, -ere, -suluī, -sultus, con-**  
*sult.*  
**cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus,**  
*use up, spend, consume.*  
**contendō, -ere, -dī, -tentus, hasten,**  
*contend.*  
**contentiō, -ōnis, f., quarrel, dispute.**  
**conterō, -ere, -trivī, -tritū, grind.**  
**continenter, adv., constantly.**  
**contineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentus, hold**  
*together, hem in, keep in.*  
**contrā, adv., opposite.**  
**contrā, prep. (with acc.), against.**  
**contrōversia, -ae, f., dispute.**  
**conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, as-**  
*semble.*  
**conventus, -ūs, m., assembly, meet-**  
*ing.*  
**convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, turn,**  
*transform.*  
**convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call to-**  
*gether, summon.*  
**cōpia, -ae, f., abundance, plenty,**  
*supply; pl., forces.*  
**cor, cordis, n., heart.**  
**Cornēlia, -ae, f., Cornelia.**  
**cornū, -ūs, n., horn; wing (of an**  
*army); ā sinistrō cornū, on the*  
*left wing; ā dextrō cornū, on the*  
*right wing.*  
**corōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, crown.**  
**corpus, -oris, n., body.**  
**corripiō, -ere, -ripui, -reptus, seize,**  
*snatch.*  
**cotidiānus, -a, -um, adj., daily.**  
**cotidiē, adv., daily.**  
**Cotta, -ae, see Aurunculēius.**  
**crās, adv., to-morrow.**  
**Crassus, -ī, m., Crassus.**  
**crātēra, -ae, f., bowl.**  
**crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., frequent,**  
*numerous.*  
**crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, trust,**  
*believe.*  
**creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, choose, ap-**  
*point, elect.*  
**crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, increase.**

**cruciātus, -ūs, m.,** *torture.*  
**crūdēlis, -e,** *cruel, unmerciful.*  
**crūdēlītās, -tātis, f.,** *harshness, cruelty.*  
**culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *blame, censure.*  
**cultus, -ūs, m.,** *civilization.*  
**cum, prep. (with abl.),** *with.*  
**cum, conj.,** *when, since, although.*  
**cum primum,** *as soon as.*  
**cunctāns, -antis, adj.,** *hesitating, delaying.*  
**cupiditās, -tātis, f.,** *eagerness, desire, greed.*  
**cupidus, -a, -um,** *eager, desirous.*  
**cupiō, -ere, cupivī, cupitus,** *desire, wish, long for.*  
**cūr, adv.,** *why? wherefore?*  
**cūria, -ae, f.,** *curia, the name of a division of the plebeians; senate-house.*  
**cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *cure.*  
**currō, -ere, cucurri, cursus,** *run.*  
**cursus, -ūs, m.,** *running, course, voyage.*  
**cūstōdiō, -īre, -ivī, -itus,** *watch.*  
**cūstōs, -ōdis, m.,** *guard, watch, keeper.*  
**Cyclōps, -ōpis, m.,** *Cyclops; pl., Cyclopes.*

## D

**dē, prep. (with abl.),** *about, concerning, from.*  
**dea, -ae, f.,** *goddess.*  
**dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus,** *ought, must (followed by infin.).*  
**dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus,** *go away, withdraw; pass away, die.*  
**decem, num. adj. (indecl.),** *ten.*  
**dēcērtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *fight.*

**decimus, -a, -um, num. adj.,** *tenth.*  
**dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus,** *deceive.*  
**dēcōrus, -a, -um,** *fitting, seemly.*  
**dēcrētum, -ī, n.,** *decree, decision.*  
**dēditō, -ōnis, f.,** *surrender.*  
**dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus,** *give up, surrender.*  
**dēducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus,** *lead down, conduct; launch.*  
**dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus,** *defend, guard.*  
**dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, f.,** *defense.*  
**dēfēnsor, -ōris, m.,** *defender.*  
**dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus,** *carry down, carry away, report.*  
**dēfessus, -a, -um, adj.,** *tired, weary, worn out.*  
**dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus,** *fail, desert.*  
**dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus,** *throw down, disappoint.*  
**deinde, adv.,** *then, next, thereupon.*  
**dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus,** *destroy.*  
**dēliberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *consult.*  
**dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus,** *choose (from), gather, select.*  
**dēmittō, -ere, -misi, -missus,** *send down, let go down, lower.*  
**dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *point out, explain.*  
**depellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus,** *drive away, ward off.*  
**dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus,** *put down, put aside, give up.*  
**dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus sum,** *lay waste, plunder.*  
**dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus sum,** *beg to escape, ask for quarter.*  
**dēscendō, -ere, -dī, -sus,** *descend.*  
**dēsertus, -a, -um, adj.,** *deserted.*  
**dēsiliō, -īre, -uī, -ultus,** *leap down.*

- dēsīnō, -ere, -sīi, -situs, *leave off, cease.*
- dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitūrus, *leave off, cease.*
- dēspērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *despair, lose hope.*
- dēsum, deesse, dēfui, *be lacking, fail.*
- dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten off, deter.*
- deus, -ī, m., *god.*
- dēvorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *eat, devour.*
- dēvoveō, -ēre, -vōvi, -vōtus, *vow, consecrate.*
- dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., *right, right hand.*
- dīcō, -ere, dixī, dictus, *say, speak.*
- dictātor, -ōris, m., *dictator.*
- dictitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *say repeatedly.*
- diēs, -ēi, m. and f., *day; multō diē, late in the day; posterō diē, the following day.*
- differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātus, *scatter, differ.*
- difficilis, -e, adj. (superl., difficilissimus), *difficult.*
- difficultās, -tātis, f., *difficulty.*
- dignitās, -tātis, f., *worth, position, grandeur.*
- diligenter, adv., *carefully, diligently.*
- diligentia, -ae, f., *diligence, care.*
- dīmīcō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *fight.*
- dīmīttō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send in different directions, dismiss, lose.*
- dirē, *horribly.*
- discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go apart, scatter, depart, leave.*
- disciplīna, -ae, f., *instruction, discipline.*
- discipulus, -ī, m., *pupil.*
- discrīmen, -inis, n., *danger, crisis.*
- disiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw apart, scatter.*
- disputō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *discuss.*
- dissimilis, -e, adj. (superl., dissimillimus), *unlike.*
- dissitus, -a, -um, adj., *remote.*
- distineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *keep apart, separate.*
- distribuō, -ere, -tribuī, -tribūtus, *divide, apportion, distribute.*
- ditō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *enrich.*
- diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, adv., *long; quam diū, how long?*
- divellō, -ere, -velli, -vulsus, *tear apart, rend.*
- diversus, -a, -um, *different.*
- dividō, -ere, -visī, -visus, *divide.*
- divīnus, -a, -um, *divine, sacred.*
- Diviciācus, -ī, Divicia'cus, an Aeduan of great influence.
- dō, -are, dedī, datus, *give; in fugam dare, to put to flight.*
- doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus, *teach, show.*
- dolor, -ōris, m., *pain, grief.*
- domesticus, -a, -um, *domestic.*
- domina, -ae, f., *mistress, matron.*
- dominus, -ī, m., *master, lord.*
- domus, -ūs, f. (locative, domī), *house, home; domī, at home.*
- dōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *give, present.*
- dōnum, -ī, n., *gift, present.*
- dormiō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, *sleep.*
- drāma, -atis, n., *drama, play.*
- Druidēs, -um, m., *Druids.*
- dubitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *doubt, hesitate.*
- dubius, -a, -um, *doubtful.*
- ducentī, -ae, -a, *two hundred.*

**dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead ; consider.**

**dulcis, -e, adj., pleasant, sweet.**

**dum, conj., while, until.**

**duo, duae, duo, adj., two.**

**duodecim, twelve.**

**duodēviginti, eighteen.**

**dūrus, -a, -um, hard.**

**dux, ducis, m., leader, guide.**

## E

**ē or ex, prep. (with abl.), out of, from, on account of.**

**ēbrius, -a, -um, drunk.**

**Eburōnēs, -um, m., a Belgic tribe.**

**ecce, adv., behold.**

**edō, ēsse, ēdī, ēsus, eat.**

**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, give forth, produce, give birth to.**

**ēdoceō, -ēre, -cuī, -doctus, inform, instruct.**

**ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, train, educate.**

**ēdūcō, -ere, ēdūxī, ēductus, lead out.**

**Edvardus, -ī, m., Edward.**

**effērō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus, bring out, carry away, produce.**

**efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, accomplish, bring about.**

**effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fusus, pour out, pour forth.**

**ego, mei, pers. pron., I.**

**ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, go out, disembark.**

**ēgregius, -a, -um, eminent, unusual.**

**ēicio, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus, cast out, expel.**

**ēlēctus, -a, -um, chosen, picked.**

**ēlidō, -ere, -lisī, -lisus, knock out, shatter.**

**ēmineō, -ēre, uī, —, become visible.**

**ēmittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, send out.**

**emptor, -ōris, m., buyer.**

**enim, conj., postpositive, for.**

**Ennius, -ī, m., Ennius.**

**ensis, -is, m., sword.**

**eō, ire, ī (ivī), itūrus, go.**

**eō, adv., there, thither, to that place.**

**epistula, -ae, f., a letter, an epistle.**

**epulae, -ārum, pl., feast, banquet.**

**eques, -itis, m., horseman, knight; pl., cavalry.**

**equester, -tris, -tre, adj., (of) cavalry.**

**equitātus, -ūs, m., cavalry.**

**equus, -ī, m., horse.**

**ēripiō, -ere, -ripui, -reptus, snatch away, seize; sē ēripere, escape.**

**errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, err, wander.**

**et, conj., and, also; et . . . et, both . . . and.**

**etiam, adv., also, even.**

**Etrūsci, -ōrum, m., Etruscans.**

**etsī, conj., although.**

**Eurōpa, -ae, f., Europe.**

**Eurylochus, -ī, m., Eurylochus.**

**ēvādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsūrus, go forth, escape.**

**ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call out.**

**exaudiō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, hear.**

**excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, go out, go away.**

**excelsus, -a, -um, adj., high, lofty.**

**excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, take, accept, catch; entertain, welcome.**

**excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, rouse.**

**exclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, cry out, exclaim.**

**exclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus, shut out, exclude.**



**exemplum**, -ī, n., *example*.  
**exeō**, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus, *go out, withdraw*.  
**exercitus**, -ūs, m., *army*.  
**eximius**, -a, -um, *distinguished, excellent*.  
**existimō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, reckon*.  
**exitium**, -ī, n., *destruction, ruin, death*.  
**exitus**, -ūs, m., *going forth, outcome, departure, end*.  
**expeditus**, -a, -um, *unencumbered*.  
**expellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive out*.  
**experientia**, -ae, f., *experience*.  
**explōrātor**, -ōris, m., *scout, spy*.  
**explōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *investigate, explore*.  
**expōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *set out, array*.  
**expugnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *take by storm*.  
**exsilium**, -ī, n., *exile*.  
**expectō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wait, await, expect*.  
**extruō**, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *pile up, erect, build*.  
**exterus**, -a, -um, adj., *outward*; superl., **extrēmus**, *last*; ad **extrēmum**, *at the end, finally*.  
**extrā**, prep., *outside, beyond*.  
**extrēmus**, -a, -um, sup. of **exterus**, *furthest, last*.

## F

**faber**, **fabrī**, m., *smith*.  
**fābula**, -ae, f., *story*.  
**fac**, imperative of **faciō**.  
**faciēs**, -eī, f., *appearance, sight*.

**facile**, adv., *easily*; **minus facile**, *less easily*.  
**facilis**, -e, adj., *easy*.  
**faciō**, -ere, **fēcī**, **factus**, *make, do, accomplish*; with **iter**, *march*; **certiōrem facere**, *inform*.  
**factum**, -ī, n., *deed*.  
**facultās**, -tātis, f., *opportunity, ability*.  
**fallō**, -ere, **fefellī**, **falsus**, *disappoint, deceive*.  
**fāma**, -ae, f., *report, story, tradition; reputation*.  
**famēs**, -is, abl. -ē, f., *hunger, famine*.  
**familiāris**, -e, *belonging to the family, of the household, intimate*; **rēs familiāris**, **reī familiāris**, f., *household affair, private property*.  
**fās**, indecl. n., *right, justice*.  
**Faustulus**, -ī, m., *Faustulus*.  
**fax**, **facis**, f., *torch, firebrand*.  
**fēlicitās**, -tātis, f., *happiness, prosperity, good luck*.  
**fēliciter**, adv., *happily, successfully, fortunately*.  
**fēmina**, -ae, f., *woman*.  
**fenestra**, -ae, f., *window*.  
**ferāx**, -ācis, adj., *fertile, productive*.  
**ferē**, adv., *almost, quite*.  
**feriālis**, -e, adj., *festival*.  
**ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, *bear, carry, report, say*.  
**ferōx**, **ferōcis**, *bold, fierce, headstrong*.  
**ferrum**, -ī, n., *iron, sword*.  
**fertilitās**, -ātis, f., *fertility*.  
**festinō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make haste*.

**festus, -a, -um, adj.,** *festive, joyous, (of a) holiday.*

**fidēlis, -e, adj.,** *faithful, loyal.*

**fidēs, -eī, f.,** *faith, pledge, confidence.*

**fidō, -ere, fīsus sum,** *trust.*

**fidus, -a, -um,** *faithful, reliable.*

**figūra, -ae, f.,** *shape, figure.*

**filia, -ae, f.,** *daughter.*

**filius, -ī, m.,** *son.*

**finiō, -ire, -ivī, -ītus,** *limit, stop, put an end to.*

**finis, -is, m.,** *end; pl., territory.*

**finitimī, -ōrum, m.,** *neighbors.*

**finitimus, -a, -um, adj.,** *neighboring.*

**fiō, fierī, factus sum,** *become, be made, happen.*

**firmus, -a, -um, adj.,** *firm, solid.*

**flamma, -ae, f.,** *flame.*

**flēō, flēre, flēvī, flētus,** *weep, lament.*

**flōreō, -ēre, -uī, —,** *flourish, prosper.*

**flōs, flōris, m.,** *flower.*

**fluctus, -ūs, m.,** *wave, billow.*

**fluitāns, -tis,** *waving.*

**flūmen, -inis, n.,** *river.*

**fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxus,** *flow.*

**focus, -ī, m.,** *hearth.*

**fōns, fontis, m.,** *fountain, spring.*

**foris, adv.,** *out of doors, outside.*

**fōrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *form.*

**forte, adv.,** *by chance.*

**fortis, -e, adj.,** *brave.*

**fortiter, adv.,** *bravely; quam fortissimē, as bravely as possible.*

**fortūna, -ae, f.,** *fortune.*

**forum, forī, n.,** *forum.*

**fossa, -ae, f.,** *ditch, trench.*

**frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus,** *break, shatter, wreck.*

**frāter, -tris, m.,** *brother.*

**fraus, fraudis, f.,** *trick, stratagem, fraud.*

**Fredericus, -ī, m.,** *Frederick.*

**frōns, frontis, f.,** *forehead.*

**frūctus, -ūs, m.,** *fruit.*

**frūmentārius, -a, -um,** *pertaining to grain, of grain; rēs frūmentāria, rei frūmentāriae, f., grain supply.*

**frūmentum, -ī, n.,** *grain.*

**fruor, fruī, frūctus sum,** *enjoy.*

**frūstrā, adv.,** *in vain.*

**fuga, -ae, f.,** *flight.*

**fugiō, -ere, fūgī,** *flee.*

**fulgēns, -entis,** *flashing.*

**fulgidus, -a, -um,** *flashing, shining.*

**fulgur, -uris, n.,** *lightning.*

**fūmus, -ī, m.,** *smoke.*

**funditor, -ōris, m.,** *slinger.*

**fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum,** *perform.*

**fūnis, -is, m.,** *rope.*

**fūr, fūris, m. and f.,** *thief.*

**furor, -ōris, m.,** *rage, frenzy.*

## G

**Gaius, -ī, m.,** *Caius.*

**Galba, -ae, m.,** *Galba.*

**Gallī, -ōrum, m.,** *Gauls.*

**Gallia, -ae, f.,** *Gaul.*

**Gallicus, -a, -um, adj.,** *Gallic, of Gaul.*

**Garumna, -ae, f.,** *the Garonne (river).*

**gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum,** *rejoice.*

**gaudium, -ī, n.,** *delight, gladness.*

**geminī, -ōrum, m.,** *twins.*

**Genava, -ae, f.,** *Geneva.*

**generālis, -e, adj.,** *general.*

**gēns, gentis, f.,** *family, nation.*

**genus, -eris, n.,** *kind, class.*

**Germānia, -ae, f.,** *Germany.*



**Germānus, -a, -um, adj.,** *German.*  
**Germānus, -ī, m.,** *a German.*

**gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus,** *carry on, wear; with bellum, wage; his rēbus gestis, when these things had been accomplished.*

**gigās, -antis, m.,** *giant.*

**gladius, -ī, m.,** *sword.*

**globus, -ī, m.,** *sphere; bomb.*

**glōria, -ae, f.,** *glory.*

**glōriōsē, gloriously.**

**Gracchus, -ī, m.,** *Gracchus.*

**gradus, -ūs, m.,** *step, stair.*

**Graecus, -a, -um, adj.,** *Greek.*

**grānum, -ī, n.,** *grain.*

**grātia, -ae, f.,** *influence, favor; abl., for the sake (of).*

**grātus, -a, -um, pleasing.**

**gravis, -e, adj.,** *heavy, severe.*

**graviter, adv.,** *heavily, weightily, seriously.*

**gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, taste.**

## H

**habeō, -ēre, habuī, -itus, have, hold, consider; with ōrātiō, deliver.**

**Hamilcar, -aris, m.,** *Hamilcar.*

**hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustus, draw, drain.**

**Helvētīi, -ōrum, m.,** *Helvetians.*

**Helvētius, -a, -um, adj.,** *Helvetian.*

**herba, -ae, f.,** *herb, plant, grass.*

**hesternus, -a, -um, of yesterday; hesternō diē, yesterday.**

**hiberna, -ōrum, n.,** *winter quarters.*

**hic, adv.,** *here.*

**hic, haec, hoc, gen. huius, dem. pron., this.**

**hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, pass the winter, winter.**

**hiems, hiemis, f.,** *winter, stormy weather.*

**hinc, adv.,** *from this place.*

**hodiē, adj.,** *to-day.*

**Homērus, -ī, m.,** *Homer.*

**homō, -inis, m. and f.,** *human being, man.*

**honor, -ōris, m.,** *honor, esteem, glory.*

**hōra, -ae, f.,** *hour; tertiā hōrā, at nine o'clock.*

**Horātius, -ī, m.,** *Horatius.*

**horreum, -ī, n.,** *granary, barn.*

**horribilis, -e, dreadful, horrible.**

**hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, encourage, urge.**

**hortus, -ī, m.,** *garden.*

**hospitium, -ī, n.,** *hospitality, entertainment.*

**Hostilius, -ī, m.,** *Hostilius.*

**hostis, -is, m.,** *enemy; pl., the enemy.*

**hūc, adv.,** *here, hither, to this place.*

**hūmānitās, -ātis, f.,** *refinement, humanity.*

**hūmānus, -a, -um, adj.,** *human.*

**humus, -ī, f.,** *earth, soil; grave.*

## I

**iaceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, lie.**

**iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, throw, throw up, banish.**

**iaculum, -ī, n.,** *javelin.*

**iam, adv.,** *already.*

**iānitor, -ōris, m.,** *doorkeeper, porter.*

**iānua, -ae, f.,** *door.*

**ibi, adv.,** *there, in that place.*

**İccius, -ī, m.,** *a leader of the Remi.*

**īdem, eadem, idem, dem. pron., the same.**

idōneus, -a, -um (comp., magis idōneus; sup., maximē idōneus), adj., fit, suitable.	impudens, -entis, adj., impudent.
Iēsus, -u, m., Jesus.	impūne, adv., without punishment.
igitur, conj., therefore.	in, prep. (with abl.), in, on, upon, across, over; (with acc.), into, against, upon.
ignis, -is, m., fire.	incautus, -a, -um, off guard, unaware.
ignōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, not know, be ignorant of.	incēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus, go, step.
ignōtus, -a, -um, adj., unknown.	incendō, -ere, -cendi, -census, set on fire, burn.
Ilias, -adis, f., the Iliad.	incipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus, begin, undertake.
ille, illa, illud, gen., illius, dem. pron., that.	inclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus, keep in, surround.
illō, adv., there, thither, to that place.	incola, -ae, m. or f., inhabitant.
imber, -bris, m., rain, shower.	incolō, -ere, -uī, —, (intrans.), live, dwell; (trans.), inhabit, dwell in.
immittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, send in, let in.	incolumis, -e, unharmed, safe.
immolō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, sacrifice.	incrēdibilis, -e, adj., incredible.
immortālis, -e, adj., immortal.	incursiō, -ōnis, f., invasion, raid.
impār, -paris, adj., unequal.	incūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, find fault with, blame, accuse.
impedimentum, -ī, n., hindrance; pl., heavy baggage.	indūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, lead in, lead, induce.
impediō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, hinder.	ineō, -īre, -iī (-ivī), -itus, enter, begin.
impellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus, urge on, incite.	inferō, -ferre, intuli, illātus, bring in, upon, or against; bellum inferre, make war (on); signa inferre, advance (to the attack).
impendeō, -ēre, —, —, hang over.	inferus, -ī, m., inhabitant of the lower world.
imperātor, -ōris, m., commander-in-chief, general, emperor.	inferus, -a, -um (comp., inferior; sup., infimus or imus), adj., below.
imperātum, -ī, n., command, order.	infestō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trouble, plunder.
imperium, -ī, n., command, control, military authority, empire.	infinitum, -ī, n., that which is boundless, infinity.
imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, order (governs dat., followed by ut with the subjunctive).	inflūō, -ere, -flūxi, -flūxus, flow into.
impetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, obtain by request.	
impetus, -ūs, m., attack.	
impluvium, -ī, n., impluvium (the square basin in which the rain water was received).	
impōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, place upon.	

- ingēns, ingentis, vast, huge.**  
**iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, throw on, place on.**  
**inimicus, -a, -um, adj., unfriendly.**  
**inimicus, -ī, m., a personal enemy.**  
**iniquus, -a, -um, uneven, unfavorable, unjust.**  
**initium, -ī, n., beginning.**  
**iniūria, -ae, f., injury, wrong.**  
**inopia, -ae, f., want, scarcity.**  
**inquam, inquis, inquit, say.**  
**inrideō, -ēre, -rīsī, -risus, laugh at, mock, ridicule.**  
**īnsidiae, -ārum, f., ambush.**  
**insidiōr, -ārī, -ātus sum, lie in wait.**  
**īnstītūtum, -ī, n., institution, custom.**  
**īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, draw up, construct, furnish.**  
**īnsula, -ae, f., island.**  
**integer, -gra, -grum, whole, sound, unimpaired.**  
**intellegō, -ere, -ēxī, -lēctus, understand.**  
**inter, prep. (with acc.), between, among.**  
**intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, intervene.**  
**intercipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, intercept, cut off; usurp, steal.**  
**interclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus, shut off, cut off, stop.**  
**intereā, adv., in the meantime, meanwhile.**  
**interest, impers., it concerns.**  
**interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, kill.**  
**intericiō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, throw between; interiectus, -a, -um, having elapsed.**  
**interim, adv., in the meantime.**
- interior, -ius (sup., intimus), adj., inner.**  
**intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, send between, interrupt, discontinue; intermissus, -a, -um, having elapsed.**  
**interrēgnum, -ī, n., interregnum, an interval between two reigns.**  
**interscindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus, cut down, destroy.**  
**intersum, -esse, -fui, take part in.**  
**intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, enter.**  
**introducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead into.**  
**introitus, -ūs, m., entrance.**  
**inūtilis, -e, adj., useless.**  
**inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, come upon, find.**  
**inventor, -ōris, m., inventor.**  
**invictus, -a, -um, adj., unconquered, invincible.**  
**invidēō, -ēre, -vīdī, -visus, envy, with dative.**  
**invidia, -ae, f., envy, hatred.**  
**invitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, invite.**  
**invītus, -a, -um, adj., unwilling.**  
**invocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call upon, invoke.**  
**iocus, -ī, m., joke.**  
**ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen., ipsius dem. pron., self, himself, etc.**  
**ira, -ae, f., anger, wrath.**  
**irātus, -a, -um, angry, enraged.**  
**is, ea, id, gen., eius, dem. pron., this, that, he.**  
**iste, ista, istud, gen., istius, dem. pron., that, that of yours.**  
**ita, adv., so (manner).**  
**Italia, -ae, f., Italy.**  
**itaque, adv., and so.**  
**item, adv., in like manner.**

iter, itineris, n., *journey, march.*  
 iterum, adv., *a second time, again.*  
 Ithaca, -ae, f., *Ithaca.*  
 iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, order,  
     *command.*  
 iūcundus, -a, -um, adj., *joyful.*  
 Iūdaei, -ōrum, m., *Jews.*  
 iūdex, -icis, m., *judge.*  
 iūdicium, -ī, n., *decision.*  
 iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *judge.*  
 iugum, -ī, n., *yoke; sub iugum,*  
     *under the yoke; (of mountains)*  
     *ridge, summit.*  
 Iūlia, -ae, f., *Julia.*  
 iumentum, -ī, n., *beast of burden.*  
 iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iunctus, *join.*  
 iūnior, -ius, comp. of *iuvenis,*  
     *younger.*  
 Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter.*  
 Iūra, -ae, m., *the Jura (a range*  
     *of mountains).*  
 iūs, iūris, n., *right, law.*  
 iūs iurandum, iūris iurandī, n.,  
     *oath.*  
 iūstitia, -ae, f., *justice.*  
 iūstus, -a, -um, *just.*  
 iuvenis, -e (comp., iūnior; sup.,  
     *minimus nātū*), adj., *young.*  
 iuventūs, -ūtis, f., *youth.*  
 iuvō, -āre, iuāvī, iūtus, *help, aid,*  
     *assist.*

## L

L. = Lūcius.

Labiēnus, -ī, m., *Titus Labienus,*  
     *Caesar's lieutenant.*  
 labor, -ōris, m., *toil, labor.*  
 labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *labor.*  
 lac, lactis, n., *milk.*  
 Lacedaemonii, -ōrum, m., *Lace-*  
     *daemonians, Spartans.*

lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, *arouse,*  
     *provoke, harm.*  
 lacrima, -ae, f., *tear.*  
 lacus, -ūs, m., *lake.*  
 laetitia, -ae, f., *joy.*  
 laetus, -a, -um, *joyful.*  
 lambō, -ere, *lick, wash.*  
 lampas, -adis, f., *torch.*  
 lapis, -idis, m., *stone.*  
 lapsus, -ūs, m., *a slip, error.*  
 Lārentia, -ae, f., *Larentia.*  
 lātē, adv., *widely.*  
 latebra, -ae, f., *hiding-place.*  
 lātītūdō, -inis, f., *width.*  
 lātrātus, -ūs, m., *barking.*  
 latrō, -ōnis, m., *robber.*  
 latus, -eris, n., *side.*  
 lātus, -a, -um, adj., *broad, wide.*  
 laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *praise.*  
 laus, laudis, f., *praise.*  
 lectus, -ī, m., *couch, bed.*  
 lēgātus, -ī, m., *lieutenant, am-*  
     *bassador.*  
 legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion.*  
 legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *read, choose.*  
 Lemannus, -ī, m., *(Lake) Geneva.*  
 lentē, adv., *slowly.*  
 Lentulus, -ī, m., *Lentulus.*  
 lepus, -oris, m., *hare.*  
 levis, -e, adj., *light (in weight), slight.*  
 leviter, adv., *lightly, slightly.*  
 lēx, lēgis, f., *law.*  
 libenter, adv., *gladly.*  
 liber, librī, m., *book.*  
 liber, -era, -erum, adj., *free.*  
 liberī, -ōrum, m., *children.*  
 liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *set free.*  
 libertās, -ātis, f., *freedom, liberty.*  
 Libya, -ae, f., *Libya, Africa.*  
 licet, -ēre, -uit, impers. (with dat.),  
     *it is permitted.*

lignum, -ī, n., *wood*.  
 lilium, lili, n., *lily*.  
 limen, -inis, n., *threshold*.  
 lingua, -ae, f., *tongue, language*.  
 littera, -ae, f., *letter of the alphabet*;  
 pl., *letter, an epistle, literature, letters*.  
 litus, -oris, n., *shore (of the sea)*.  
 locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *place, put*.  
 locus, -ī, m., pl., *loci*, n., *place, location*.  
 longē, adv., *far, by far*; quam longē, *how far*.  
 longitūdō, -inis, f., *length*.  
 longus, -a, -um, adj., *long, tall*.  
 loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *speak, say*.  
 lōtus, -ī, f., *lotus*.  
 Lūcius, -ī, m., *Lucius*.  
 Lucrētia, -ae, f., *Lucretia*.  
 lūdicer, -cra, -crum, *sportive*.  
 Ludovicus, -ī, m., *Louis*.  
 lūdus, -ī, m., *game, play*.  
 lūmen, -inis, n., *light*.  
 lūna, -ae, f., *moon*.  
 lupa, -ae, f., *she-wolf*.  
 lūridus, -a, -um, *pale, dim*.  
 lustrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *purify*.  
 lūx, lūcis, f., *light*; primā lūce, *at daybreak*.

## M

maculō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *spot, spoil*.  
 Maecēnās, -ātis, m., *Maecenas*, a famous Roman patron of letters, hence any patron of letters.  
 magicus, -a, -um, *magic*.  
 magister, -trī, m., *teacher*.  
 magnitūdō, -inis, f., *greatness, size*.  
 magnopere (comp., *magis*; sup., *maximē*), adv., *greatly*.

magnus, -a, -um (compar., *maior*, superl., *maximus*), adj., *large, great*.  
 maior, -ius, comp. of *magnus*, *greater*; maior nātū, see *nātū*.  
 maiōrēs, -um, m. pl., *forefathers, ancestors*.  
 male, adv., *badly*.  
 maleficium, -ī, n., *harm*.  
 mālō, mälle, mālui (magis and volō), *prefer*.  
 malum, -ī, n., *evil*.  
 malus, -a, -um (comp., *peior*; sup., *pessimus*), adj., *bad*.  
 mandātum, -ī, n., *commission, order*.  
 mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *command*.  
 maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, *remain*.  
 mānsuētūdō, -inis, f., *compassion*.  
 manus, -ūs, f., *hand*; *band*.  
 Mārcius, -ī, m., *Marcus*.  
 Mārcus, -ī, m., *Marcus*.  
 mare, -is, n., *sea*.  
 Maria, -ae, f., *Mary*.  
 marmoreus, -a, -um, adj., *made of marble*.  
 Mārs, Mārtis, m., *Mars*.  
 māter, -tris, f., *mother*.  
 mātrimonium, -ī, n., *marriage*; in mātrimonium dare, *give in marriage*; in mātrimonium dūcere, *marry*.  
 Matrona, -ae, f., *the Marne (river)*.  
 mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make haste, hasten*.  
 maximē, see *magnopere*.  
 maximus, -a, -um, sup. of *magnus*; *maximus nātū*, see *nātū*.  
 medicāmentum, -ī, n., *drug*.  
 medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle*;



mediā nocte, *midnight*; (in) mediō colle, *halfway up the hill*.  
 mei (gen.), reflex. pron., *of myself*.  
 melior, -ōris, compar. of bonus, *better*.  
 membrum, -ī, n., *limb*.  
 memoria, -ae, f., *memory*; memoriā tenēre, *to recollect*.  
 Menapii, -ōrum, m., a *Belgic people*.  
 mēns, mentis, f., *mind, purpose*.  
 mēnsa, -ae, f., *table*.  
 mercātor, -ōris, m., *merchant*.  
 mercātūra, -ae, f., *trade*.  
 Mercurius, -ī, m.; *Mercury*.  
 mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *deserve*.  
 mergō, -ere, mersi, mersus, *sink*.  
 meridiēs, -ēī, m., *midday, noon*; the south.  
 meus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *my, mine*.  
 miles, -itis, m., *soldier*; novus miles, *recruit*.  
 milia, -ium, n., *thousands*.  
 militāris, -e, of soldiers, *military*; rēs militāris, rei militāris, f., *military affairs, art of war*.  
 mille, adj., indecl., *a thousand*.  
 minae, -ārum, f., *threats*.  
 Minerva, -ae, f., *Minerva*.  
 ministrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *attend*.  
 ministerium, -ī, n., *office, service*.  
 minor, *less*; see parvus.  
 minus, adv., *less*; not.  
 mirābilis, -e, adj., *wonderful*.  
 miror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *wonder*.  
 mirus, -a, -um, *strange*.  
 misceō, -ēre, miscuī, mixtus, *mix*.  
 miser, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched*.  
 misericordia, -ae, f., *mercy, compassion*.

mittō, -ere, misi, missus, *send*.  
 modus, -ī, m., *manner*.  
 moenia, -ium, n., *fortifications, walls of a city*.  
 molestus, -a, -um, adj., *troublesome, irksome*.  
 moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *advise, warn*.  
 mōns, montis, m., *mountain*; sub monte, *at the foot of the mountain*.  
 mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *show*.  
 mōnstrum, -ī, n., *monster*; portent.  
 montānus, -ī, m., *mountaineer*.  
 monumentum, -ī, n., *monument*.  
 mora, -ae, f., *delay*.  
 morbus, -ī, m., *disease, sickness*.  
 mordeō, -ēre, momordi, morsus, *bite*.  
 Morini, -ōrum, m., a *Belgic people*.  
 morior, mori, mortuus sum, *die*.  
 moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *delay*.  
 mors, mortis, f., *death*.  
 mortālis, -e, *mortal*; *deadly*.  
 mōs, mōris, m., *custom*; pl., *character, manners, habits*.  
 mōtus, -ūs, m., *movement, revolt*.  
 moveō, -ēre, mōvi, mōtus, *move*; with castra, *break up*.  
 mox, adv., *soon*.  
 mulier, -eris, f., *woman*.  
 multitūdō, -inis, f., *great number, multitude*.  
 multum, adv., *much*.  
 multus, -a, -um, *much*; pl., *many*.  
 mundus, -ī, m., *world*.  
 mūnimentum, -ī, n., *rampart*.  
 mūniō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, *fortify*.  
 mūnitiō, -ōnis, f., *fortification*.  
 mūrus, -ī, m., *wall*.  
 mūs, mūris, m., *mouse*.  
 mūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *change*.

## N

**nam**, conj., *for*.  
**narrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *tell*.  
**nāscor**, nāscī, nātus sum, *be born*.  
**Nāsica**, -ae, m., *Nasica*.  
**Naso**, -ōnis, m., P. Ovidius Naso, the Roman poet, *Ovid*.  
**nātiō**, -ōnis, f., *nation*.  
**nātū**, m., abl., *by birth*; **maior nātū**, *older*; **maximus nātū**, *eldest*.  
**nātūra**, -ae, f., *nature*.  
**nauta**, -ae, m., *sailor*.  
**nāvālis**, -e, *of ships, naval*.  
**nāvigium**, -ī, n., *boat*.  
**nāvigō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *sail*.  
**nāvis**, -is, f., *ship*.  
**Nazarēnus**, -a, -um, *of Nazareth*.  
**nē**, conj., *that not, lest*; **nē . . . quidem**, *not . . . even*, the emphatic word standing between **nē** and **quidem**.  
**-ne**, interrog. particle (enclitic).  
**nec**, conj. (same as **neque**), *and not*.  
**necessārius**, -a, -um, *necessary, urgent*.  
**necessitās**, -tātis, f., *need, necessity*.  
**necō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *put to death*.  
**negō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *deny, say not*.  
**negōtium**, -ī, n., *business; trouble*.  
**nēmō**, —, dat., **nēminī**, m., *no one*.  
**nepōs**, -ōtis, m., *grandson*.  
**Neptūnus**, -ī, m., *Neptune, god of the sea*.  
**neque**, conj., *and . . . not, neither*; **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor*.  
**Nerviī**, -ōrum, m., *the Nervii, a warlike Belgic people*.

**neuter**, -tra, -trum, gen., **neutrius**, adj., *neither*.  
**niger**, -gra, -grum, adj., *black*.  
**nihil**, also **nīl**, indecl., n., *nothing*.  
**nisi**, conj., *if not, unless, except*.  
**nōbilis**, -e, *of high rank, noble, well-known, famous*; **nōbilis**, -is, m., *noble*.  
**noceō**, -ēre, -ui, —, *do harm, injure*.  
**nōlō**, nōlle, nōluī, *to be unwilling*.  
**nōmen**, -inis, n., *name*.  
**nōn**, adv., *not*.  
**nōnāgintā**, num. adj., indecl., *ninety*.  
**nōndum**, adv., *not yet*.  
**nōnne**, interrog. particle, expecting the answer "*yes*."  
**nōnnūllus**, -a, -um, adj., *some*.  
**nōnnumquam**, adv., *sometimes*.  
**nōn solum**, . . . **sed etiam**, adv., *not only, . . . but also*.  
**nōs**, nostrum, pron., *we*.  
**nōscō**, -ere, **nōvī**, **nōtus** (used only as adj.), *learn, know*.  
**noster**, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., *our, ours*.  
**notō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *mark, note*.  
**nōtus**, -a, -um, adj., *familiar, famous*.  
**novem**, num. adj., indecl., *nine*.  
**Noviodūnum**, -ī, n., *a town of the Suessiones*.  
**novissimī**, -ōrum, m., *those in the rear*.  
**novus**, -a, -um, adj., *new*; **novus miles**, *recruit*.  
**nox**, noctis, f., *night*; **mediā nocte**, *at midnight*; **proximā nocte**, *on the following night*.  
**nūbēs**, -is, f., *cloud*.  
**nubila**, -ōrum, n., *clouds*.



**nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *strip, leave unprotected.*

**nūllus, -a, -um**, gen., **nūllius**, adj., *no, none, no one.*

**num**, interrog. particle, expecting the answer "no"; *whether.*

**Numa, -ae**, m., *Numa.*

**nūmen, -inis**, n., *divinity.*

**numerus, -i**, m., *number, account.*

**Numitor, -ōris**, m., *Numitor.*

**numquam**, adv., *never.*

**nunc**, adv., *now.*

**nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *announce, report, declare.*

**nūntius, -ī**, m., *messenger, message.*

## O

**Ō**, interj., *O! Oh!*

**ob**, prep. (with acc.), *on account of.*

**obducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus**, *extend.*

**obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus**, *throw against, set before, oppose.*

**oblītus, -a, -um**, *forgetful.*

**obliviscor, -liviscī, -lītus sum**, *forget.*

**obses, -idis**, m. and f., *hostage, pledge, security.*

**obsidiō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus**, *besiege.*

**obstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus**, *block up, obstruct.*

**obtemperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *obey.*

**obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus**, *hold, have, obtain, prevail.*

**occāsiō, -ōnis**, f., *chance, opportunity.*

**occāsus, -ūs**, m., *setting.*

**occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus**, *kill, slay.*

**occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *hide.*

**occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *seize, take possession of.*

**occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus**, *meet.*

**octāvus, -a, -um**, *eighth.*

**octō**, num. adj., indecl., *eight.*

**octōgintā**, num. adj., indecl., *eighty.*

**oculus, -ī**, m., *eye.*

**ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus**, *hate*; note that the perfect has the force of the present.

**officina, -ae**, f., *workshop.*

**officium, -ī**, n., *office, official employment, duty.*

**ōlim**, adv., *once, formerly.*

**olus, -eris**, n., *vegetables, greens.*

**ōmen, -inis**, n., *omen.*

**omittō, -ere, -misi, -missus**, *let go, neglect, lose.*

**omninō**, adv., *in all.*

**omnis, -e**, adj., *all, every.*

**onus, -eris**, n., *burden, weight.*

**opera, -ae**, f., *work.*

**operor, -ārī, -ātus sum**, *work.*

**opiniō, -ōnis**, f., *belief, reputation, expectation.*

**oportet, -ēre, -uit**, impers., *it is fitting, it is necessary.*

**oppidānī, -ōrum**, m., *townspeople.*

**oppidum, -ī**, n., *town.*

**oppōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus**, *put against, oppose.*

**opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus**, *weigh down.*

**oppugnātiō, -ōnis**, f., *assault, attack, siege.*

**oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus**, *storm, attack, besiege.*

**optimus**, *excellent*; see **bonus**.

**opus, operis**, n., *work, labor.*

**ōra, -ae**, f., *coast*; **ōra maritima**, *sea coast.*

**ōrātiō, -ōnis**, f., *speech, oration.*

**orbis**, -is, m., *ring, circle.*

**ordinō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *appoint, settle.*

**ordō**, -inis, m., *rank, order, row.*

**Orgetorix**, -igis, m., a Helvetian lord.

**orior**, **oriri**, **ortus sum**, *spring from, rise.*

**ornāmentum**, -ī, n., *ornament, jewel.*

**ornō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *adorn.*

**orō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *beg, pray.*

**ostendō**, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *show.*

**ostium**, -ī, n., *door, entrance.*

**ovis**, -is, f., *sheep.*

## P

**pābulum**, -ī, n., *fodder.*

**pācō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *pacify, subdue.*

**paean**, -ānis, m., *hymn.*

**paene**, adv., *almost, nearly.*

**pāgina**, -ae, f., *page.*

**Palātium**, -ī, n., *Palatine hill.*

**palma**, -ae, f., *palm, reward.*

**palūs**, -ūdis, f., *swamp, marsh.*

**pālus**, -ī, m., *stick, stake.*

**pandō**, -ere, **pandī**, **passus**, *stretch out.*

**pār**, **paris**, adj., *equal.*

**parātus**, -a, -um, adj., *prepared.*

**parcō**, -ere, **pepercī**, **parsūrus**, *spare.*

**parēns**, -entis, m. and f., *parent.*

**pāreō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *obey.*

**pariēs**, -etis, m., *wall (of a house).*

**parō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *get ready, prepare for, prepare.*

**pars**, **partis**, f., *part, side, direction.*  
**ab superiōre parte**, *from a higher*

*position; ex omnibus partibus, on all sides, from all sides.*

**parum** (comp., **minus**; sup., **minimē**), adv., *little, too little.*

**parvulus**, -a, -um, *tiny.*

**parvus**, -a, -um (comp., **minor**; sup., **minimus**), adj., *small.*

**passus**, -ūs, m., *pace; mille passūs, a mile.*

**pāstor**, -ōris, m., *shepherd.*

**patefaciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, *open.*

**pateō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *lie open, extend.*

**pater**, -tris, m., *father.*

**pator**, **patī**, **passus sum**, *suffer, permit.*

**patria**, -ae, f., *native land.*

**paucī**, -ae, -a, adj., *few.*

**paulisper**, adv., *for a short time.*

**paulō**, adv., *by a little, a little; paulō ante mediam noctem, a little before midnight.*

**paulum**, -ī, n., *a little.*

**paulum**, adv., *a little, somewhat.*

**pāx**, **pācis**, f., *peace.*

**pectus**, -oris, n., *breast.*

**pecūnia**, -ae, f., *riches, wealth.*

**pecus**, -oris, n., *cattle, herd, flock.*

**pedes**, -itis, m., *foot soldier; pl., infantry.*

**pedester**, -tris, -tre, *of infantry, infantry (adj.).*

**Pedius**, -ī, m., *Quintus Pedius.*

**peior**, **peius**, *worse; see malus.*

**pellō**, -ere, **pepulī**, **pulsus**, *drive out, put to flight, defeat.*

**pendō**, -ere, **pendī**, **pēnsus**, *pay.*

**Pēnelopē**, -ēs, acc. -ēn, f., *Penelope.*

**pēninsula**, -ae, f., *peninsula.*

**per**, prep. (with acc.), *through, by, on account of.*

- percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *feel*.  
 perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead through, construct, extend*.  
 perfectus, -a, -um, adj., *perfect*.  
 perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *report*.  
 perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *finish*.  
 perfugium, -ī, n., *place of refuge, shelter*.  
 periclitōr, -ārī, -ātus sum, *prove, make trial of*.  
 periculum, -ī, n., *danger, peril*.  
 peristȳlium, -ī, n., *peristyle*.  
 peritus, -a, -um, *skilled, experienced*.  
 perlūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wander through, survey*.  
 permanēō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, *remain through, continue; hold out*.  
 permittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, *intrust, commit*.  
 permovēō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *alarm, influence*.  
 perpauci, -ae, -a, adj., *very few*.  
 perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *break through*.  
 perscribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus, *write through, write in full*.  
 persōna, -ae, f., *character*.  
 personō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *sound*.  
 perspicīō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, *look, observe*.  
 persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, *persuade, governs the dat. followed by ut with the subjunctive*.  
 perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten thoroughly, alarm; perterritus, -a, -um, thoroughly frightened*.  
 pertineō, -ēre, -uī, —, *extend*.  
 perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *disturb greatly*.  
 perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *arrive (at)*.  
 pēs, pedis, m., *foot*.  
 petō, -ere, -īvī or -iī, -ītus, *seek, ask; takes acc. of the thing and abl. of the person*.  
 Phoebus, -ī, m., *Phoebus*.  
 pictūra, -ae, f., *picture*.  
 pīlum, -ī, n., *javelin*.  
 placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *please; used impersonally, placet, it seems good*.  
 placidus, -a, -um, adj., *calm*.  
 Plancus, -ī, m., *Plancus*.  
 plēbs, plēbis, f., *common people, plebeians*.  
 plēnus, -a, -um, adj., *full*.  
 plērique, -ōrumque, m., *the majority, most*.  
 plērumque, adv., *generally*.  
 plūrēs, -ium, pl. adj., compar. of multus, *more, several*.  
 plūrimus, superl. of multus, *most*.  
 plūs, plūris, compar. of multum, *more; plūs posse, to be more powerful; plūrimum posse, to be most powerful, have very great influence*.  
 pluvia, -ae, f., *rain*.  
 pōculum, -ī, n., *cup*.  
 poena, -ae, f., *fine, penalty, punishment; poenās dare, suffer punishment; poenam sūmere, inflict punishment*.  
 Poenī, -ōrum, m., *Carthaginians*.  
 poēta, -ae, m., *poet*.  
 polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum, *promise (with fut. infin.)*.  
 Polyphēmus, -ī, m., *Polyphemus*.  
 Pompēius, -ī, m., *Pompey*.  
 Pompilius, -ī, m., *Pompilius*.

**pōmum**, -ī, n., *fruit, apple*.  
**pōnō**, -ere, **posuī**, **positus**, *put, place; (with castra), pitch*.  
**pōns**, **pontis**, m., *bridge*.  
**pontifex**, -icis, m., *pontifex* (a Roman high priest).  
**populor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *lay waste, devastate*.  
**populus**, -ī, m., *people, nation*.  
**porcus**, -ī, m., *pig, swine*.  
**Porsena**, -ae, m., *Porsena*.  
**porta**, -ae, f., *gate*.  
**portendō**, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *predict, portend*.  
**portentum**, -ī, n., *marvel, portent*.  
**portō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry*.  
**portus**, -ūs, m., *harbor, port*.  
**poscō**, -ere, **poposci**, —, *demand*.  
**possideō**, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, *occupy, possess*.  
**possum**, **posse**, **potuī**, *can, able; plūs posse, to have more influence; plūrimum posse, to have very great influence*.  
**post**, adv., *afterwards, after*.  
**post**, prep. with acc. (of place), *behind; (of time), after*.  
**posteā**, adv., *after, afterwards, thereafter*.  
**posteritās**, -ātis, f., *posterity*.  
**posterus**, -a, -um (comp., **posterior**; sup., **postrēmus**), adj., *following*.  
**postquam**, conj., *after*.  
**postrēmus**, -a, -um, superl. of **posterus**, *last*.  
**postulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *claim, demand*.  
**potēns**, **potentis**, adj., *powerful*.  
**potestās**, -tātis, f., *power, opportunity*.

**potior**, -irī, -ītus sum, *get possession of*.  
**praeacūtus**, -a, -um, *sharp (at the end)*.  
**praeambulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *walk before*.  
**praeecēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *surpass*.  
**praeceptum**, -ī, n., *command, direction*.  
**praecipio**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *instruct, advise, direct, order*.  
**praecipuē**, adv., *especially*.  
**praedicō**, -ere, -dixī, -dictus, *foretell*.  
**praefficō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *place over or in command of*.  
**praemittō**, -ere, -misi, -missus, *send ahead*.  
**praemium**, -ī, n., *reward*.  
**praepōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -ītus, *place in command of*.  
**praesēns**, -sentis, *present in person, present; immediate*.  
**praeses**, -idis, m., *guardian, protector*.  
**praesidium**, -ī, n., *guard, garrison*.  
**praestō**, -āre, -stitī, -stitus, *excel; to be responsible for; impers., praestat, it is better; officium praestāre, to do one's duty*.  
**praesum**, -esse, -fui, *have command of, be at the head of*.  
**praeter**, prep. (with acc.), *except*.  
**praetereā**, adv., *besides*.  
**praeterquam**, adv., *besides, other than*.  
**praetervehō**, -ere, -vexī, -vectus, *carry by; in pass., be carried by, ride by*.  
**precēs**, -um, f., *prayers*.

**premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, press;**  
pass., *be weighed down, pursue.*

**primum, adv., first.**

**primus, -a, -um, adj., first, chief;**  
*first part of, early; primā luce, at daybreak; quam primum, as soon as possible; primō, at first.*

**princeps, -cipis, m., chief.**

**prior, -ius, adj., former.**

**Priscus, -i, m., Priscus.**

**prius, adv., before, previously.**

**privātus, -a, -um, adj., private.**

**prō, prep. (with abl.), in front of, in proportion to.**

*for,* { *instead of.*  
          *in defense of.*  
          *in behalf of.*

**probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, approve.**

**Proca, -ae, m., Proca.**

**prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, go forward, advance.**

**prōdigium, -ī, n., portent, omen, sign.**

**prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, surrender.**

**prōducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead forward, lead forth.**

**proelium, -ī, n., battle.**

**profectiō, -ōnis, f., departure.**

**prōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, go forward.**

**proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus sum, set out.**

**profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, flee.**

**prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum, advance, proceed.**

**prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, keep off, hinder, prohibit.**

**prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, throw forward; sē prōicere, leap down, expose oneself, fall.**

**prōmō, -ere, prōmpsi, prōmptus, bring forth, produce, render.**

**prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, move forward, promote.**

**prope, adv., near, nearly, almost.**

**properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hurry, hasten.**

**propinquus, -a, -um, near, neighboring; related.**

**propinquus, -ī, m., relative.**

**propior, -ius (sup., proximus), adj., nearer.**

**prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, set forth, put before, propose.**

**proprius, -a, -um, adj., one's own.**

**propter, prep. (with acc.), on account of.**

**propterea quod, because.**

**prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, follow, pursue.**

**prōsperē, adv., successfully.**

**prōsperus, -a, -um, prosperous.**

**prōtegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus, protect.**

**prōvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectus, carry forward.**

**prōvideō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsus, provide.**

**prōvincia, -ae, f., province.**

**proximē, adv., next, most recently.**

**proximus, -a, -um, next; see propior; proximā nocte, on the following night.**

**prūdētia, -ae, f., foresight, prudence.**

**psallō, -ere, -ī, —, play the harp; rejoice.**

**pūblicus, -a, -um, public.**

**puella, -ae, f., girl.**

**puer, puerī, m., boy.**

**pugna, -ae, f., fight, battle.**

**pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fight.**

**pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., beautiful.**



**pulchrē**, adv., *beautifully*.  
**pūritas**, -ātis, f., *purity*.  
**pūrus**, -a, -um, *pure, clear*.  
**putō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, believe*.

## Q

**Q.** = **Quintus**, proper name.  
**quā**, adv., *where, by what way*.  
**quadrāgēsīmus**, -a, -um, *fortieth*.  
**quadrāgīntā**, num. adj., indecl., *forty*.  
**quadrīngentī**, -ae, -a, *four hundred*.  
**quaerō**, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus, *ask, seek*; takes the acc. of the thing and the abl. of the person with **ē**, **ex**, **ā**, **ab**, or **dē**.  
**quaestus**, -ūs, m., *getting of money, gain*.  
**quālis**, -e, adj., *of what sort? of what kind?*  
**quam**, adv. and conj., *than, as*; with superlatives, *as . . . as possible; how*.  
**quamobrem**, adv., *why?*  
**quandō**, *since*.  
**quantō opere**, *how much?*  
**quantus**, -a, -um, adj., *how great? how much?*  
**quārtus**, -a, -um, *fourth*.  
**quasi**, adv., *as if*.  
**quattuor**, num. adj., indecl., *four*.  
**quattuordecim**, num. adj., indecl., *fourteen*.  
**-que** (an enclitic), *and*.  
**quī**, **quae**, **quod**, rel. pron., *who, which, that, what*.  
**quī**, **quae**, **quod**, interrog. adj., *what?, which?*  
**quia**, conj., *because*.

**quicquid** (**quisquis**), n., *whatever*.  
**quicumque**, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, indef. pron. and adj., *whoever, whatever*.  
**quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quiddam**, indef. pron., *a certain one*.  
**quidem**, adv., postpositive, *to be sure, indeed, certainly, at least*; **nē . . . quidem**, *not even*.  
**quīēs**, -ētis, f., *repose, rest*.  
**quīn**, conj., *that not, but that*.  
**quīndecim**, num. adj., indecl., *fifteen*.  
**quīngentī**, -ae, -a, *five hundred*.  
**quīnquāgīntā**, num. adj., indecl., *fifty*.  
**quīnque**, num. adj., indecl., *five*.  
**quīntus**, -a, -um, *fifth*.  
**quis**, **quid**, interrog. pron., *who? what?*  
**quispiam**, —, **quidpiam**, indef. pron., *any one, anything*.  
**quisquam**, —, **quicquam**, indef. pron., *any one, anything*.  
**quisque**, **quaeque**, **quidque**, pron. and adj., *each one, every one*.  
**quō**, rel. adv., *where, whither, to which place, and . . . thither*; interrog. adv., *where? whither?*  
**quod**, conj., *because; that*.  
**quōmodō**, interrog. adv., *how?*  
**quoque**, conj., *also*.  
**quot**, adj., indecl., *how many?*  
**quum**, conj. (same as **cum**), *when, since, although*.

## R

**rapīna**, -ae, f., *robbery, plundering, plunder*.  
**rapīō**, -ere, -uī, **raptus**, *seize, carry off*.

**ratio**, -ōnis, f., *account, theory, manner*; **ratio pācis**, a regard for peace.

**ratīs**, -is, f., *raft*.

**ratus**, -a, -um, *reckoned, fixed by calculation*.

**raucus**, -a, -um, *hoarse, discordant*.

**recēns**, recentis, *fresh, new, recent*.

**receptus**, -ūs, m., *retreat*.

**recipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, **receptus**, *take back, receive*; with **sē**, *retreat, withdraw, recover*.

**rēctus**, -a, -um, *straight, direct*.

**recūsō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *refuse*.

**reddō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give back, restore*.

**redeō**, -ire, -ivī (-iī), -itūrus, *go back, return*.

**redigō**, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, *drive back, reduce, render*.

**redintegrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *renew*.

**reditus**, -ūs, m., *return*.

**redūcō**, -ere, **redūxī**, **reductus**, *lead back, withdraw*.

**referō**, -ferre, **rettulī**, -lātus, *bring back, report, reconsider*.

**reficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *repair, make over*.

**refugiō**, -ere, -fūgī, —, *flee back*.

**refulgeō**, -ere, -sī, —, *shine brightly*.

**rēgina**, -ae, f., *queen*.

**regiō**, -ōnis, f., *region, boundary*.

**rēgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rule*.

**rēgnum**, -ī, n., *royal power, kingdom*.

**regō**, -ere, **rēxī**, **rēctus**, *rule, manage*.

**Rēgulus**, -ī, m., *Regulus*.

**reiciō**, -ere, **reiēcī**, **reiectus**, *throw back, repulse*.

**relēgō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *banish*.

**religiō**, -ōnis, f., *sense of duty, religion*.

**relinquō**, -ere, **reliquī**, **relictus**, *leave*.

**reliquus**, -a, -um, *remaining, the rest of*.

**remaneō**, -ēre, -mānsī, *remain*.

**Remus**, -ī, m., *Remus*.

**Rēmus**, -ī, m., *one of the Remi*.

**remittō**, -ere, -misi, -missus, *send back*.

**removeō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move back, remove*.

**repellō**, -ere, **reppulī**, **repulsus**, *repulse*.

**reperiō**, -ire, **repperī**, **repertus**, *find, discover*.

**repertor**, -ōris, m., *discoverer*.

**repleō**, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *refill, fill up*.

**reportō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry back, bring back*.

**requiēscō**, -ere, **requiēvī**, **requiētus**, *rest, repose*.

**requirō**, -ere, -quisivī, -quisitus, *require*.

**rēs**, **rei**, f., *thing, affair*; **omnibus rēbus**, *in all respects*.

**resistō**, -ere, **restiti**, —, *resist, oppose*.

**respondeō**, -ēre, -dī, **respōnsus**, *answer, reply, respond*.

**respōnsum**, -ī, n., *answer*.

**rēs pūblica**, **rei pūblicae**, f., *state, republic*.

**restituō**, -ere, -stitui, -stitūtus, *restore*.

**retineō**, -ēre, -ui, -tentus, *restrain, detain, retain*.

**revertō**, -ere, -ti, -sus, and **revertor**, -ī, **reversus sum**, *turn*



*back, return; the perfect stem tenses are from the active forms, the others from the deponent.*

*rēx, rēgis, m., king.*

*Rhēa, -ae, f., Rhea.*

*Rhēnus, -ī, m., the Rhine (river).*

*Rhodanus, -ī, m., the Rhone (river).*

*rideō, -ēre, risi, risus, laugh, laugh at.*

*ripa, -ae, f., bank (of a river).*

*Robertus, -ī, m., Robert.*

*rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ask.*

*Rōma, -ae, f., Rome.*

*Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., Roman.*

*Rōmānus, -ī, m., a Roman.*

*Rōmulus, -ī, m., Romulus.*

*rōs, rōris, m., dew.*

*rosa, -ae, f., rose.*

*rōstrum, -ī, n., beak; pl., rostra.*

*rubēns, -entis, red.*

*ruīna, -ae, f., ruin.*

*rūmor, -ōris, m., rumor, report.*

*rumpō, -ere, rūpi, ruptus, burst.*

*ruō, -ere, ruī, ruitūrus, rush.*

*rūpēs, -is, f., rock, reef.*

*rūrsus, adv., again, anew.*

## S

*Sabīnī, -ōrum, m., Sabines.*

*Sabīnus, -ī, m., Sabinus.*

*saccus, -ī, m., bag.*

*sacer, sacra, sacrum, adj., sacred.*

*sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f., priest, priestess.*

*sacrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, render sacred.*

*saepe, adv., often.*

*saevus, -a, -um, cruel, savage.*

*sagittārius, -ī, m., archer, bowman.*

*sāl, salis, m., salt.*

*saltus, -ūs, m., leap, bound.*

*salūs, -ūtis, f., safety.*

*salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, salute.*

*salvātor, -ōris, m., savior.*

*salveō, -ēre, —, —, to be well;*

*salvē (imperative), welcome.*

*salvus, -a, -um, adj., safe; salvam fac, keep, preserve, save.*

*sānus, -a, -um, adj., sound, sane.*

*sapiēns, -entis, m., a wise person.*

*sapienter, adv., wisely.*

*satis (also sat), adv., enough, sufficient.*

*satisfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, satisfy, with dative.*

*saxum, -ī, n., stone, rock.*

*scelus, -eris, n., crime.*

*scientia, -ae, f., knowledge.*

*sciō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, know.*

*Scōtī, -ōrum, m., Scots.*

*scribō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, write.*

*scūtum, -ī, n., shield.*

*secundus, -a, -um, second, following; favorable.*

*sēcūrus, -a, -um, adj., safe, secure.*

*sed, conj., but.*

*sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, sit.*

*sēdēs, -is, f., seat, abode.*

*sēmentis, -is, f., sowing.*

*semper, adv., always, ever.*

*senātor, -ōris, m., senator.*

*senectūs, -ūtis, f., old age.*

*senātus, -ūs, m., senate.*

*senex, -is (comp., senior; sup., maximus nātū), adj., old; as a subst., old man.*

*Senonēs, -um, m., a people of Gaul.*

*sententia, -ae, f., feeling, thought, opinion, decision.*

*sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, realize, perceive, think.*

*septem, num. adj., indecl., seven.*

septimus, -a, -um, *seventh*.

Sēquana, -ae, f., *the Seine (river)*.

Sēquanus, -ī, m., *a Sequanian*.

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*.

serva, -ae, f., *slave (female)*.

serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *be slave to, serve*.

servitūs, -ūtis, f., *slavery*.

Servius, -ī, m., *Servius*.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *save, protect, maintain, keep*.

servus, -ī, m., *slave, servant (male)*.

sescentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *six hundred*.

sex, num. adj., indecl., *six*.

sexāgintā, num. adj., indecl., *sixty*.

sī, conj., *if*.

sic, adv., *so (manner), in this way*.

siccum, -ī, n., *dry land*.

siccus, -a, -um, *dry*.

Sicilia, -ae, f., *Sicily*.

sīdus, -eris, n., *constellation; pl., heavenly bodies*.

significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *show, indicate*.

signum, -ī, n., *signal, standard*.

silenter, adv., *silently*.

silva, -ae, f., *forest, woods*.

Silvia, -ae, f., *Silvia*.

similis, -e, adj., *like, similar*.

simul, adv., *at once, as soon as*.

simulācrum, -ī, n., *image, statue*.

simulāns, -antis, adj., *pretending*.

sine, prep. (with abl.), *without*.

singulāris, -e, *single, universal, unique*.

singulī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., *one by one*.

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left, left hand*.

siquis, siqua, siquid, *if any one or thing*.

situs, -ūs, m., *situation*.

socius, -ī, m., *comrade, ally*.

sōl, sōlis, m., *sun; sōlis occāsū, at sunset*.

soleō, -ēre, -itus sum, *be accosted*.

solum, -ī, n., *ground, floor*.

sōlus, -a, -um, gen., sōlius, *only, alone*.

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *loosen, unfasten; nāvem (nāvēs) solve, or solve alone, cast off, set sail*.

somnus, -ī, m., *sleep*.

sonitus, -ūs, m., *sound, noise*.

soror, -ōris, f., *sister*.

spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsus, *scatter*.

Sparta, -ae, f., *Sparta*.

Spartacus, -ī, m., *Spartacus*.

Spartānus, -a, -um, adj., *Spartan*.

spatium, -ī, n., *space, time*.

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *look at, watch*.

speculātor, -ōris, m., *scout*.

speculum, -ī, n., *mirror*.

spēlunca, -ae, f., *cave*.

spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētus, *spurn, despise*.

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hope*.

spēs, speī, f., *hope*.

spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *breathe*.

spissus, -a, -um, *crowded*.

stabiiliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *make firm, establish*.

statim, adv., *immediately*.

statua, -ae, f., *statue*.

statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *determine, establish*.

status, -ūs, m., *state, condition*.  
 stella, -ae, f., *star*.  
 stellātus, -a, -um, *star-spangled*.  
 stilus, -ī, m., *stilus; pen*.  
 stō, -āre, steti, stātus, *stand*.  
 strepitus, -ūs, m., *noise, uproar*.  
 stridor, -ōris, m., *squeaking*.  
 studium, -ī, n., *zeal; pursuit*.  
 sub, prep. (with acc. after verbs of motion), *under*; (with words denoting time), *about, towards*; (with abl. to denote place at which), *at the foot of, under*.  
 subiciō, -ēre, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw under, place under*.  
 subitō, adv., *suddenly*.  
 sublātus, see tollō.  
 submittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send secretly*.  
 subruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus, *undermine*.  
 subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, *follow close upon*.  
 subsidium, -ī, n., *aid, support*.  
 succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *approach; succeed*.  
 Suēbī, -ōrum, m., *Swabians*.  
 Suessionēs, -um, m., *Suessiones*.  
 suī (gen.), reflex. pron., *of himself, herself, itself, themselves*.  
 sum, esse, fuī, *be*.  
 summus (superl. of superus), *highest, top of*.  
 sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take, assume, put on*.  
 super, prep., *over, above*.  
 Superbus, -ī, m., *"the Proud."*  
 superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *surpass, conquer, overcome, excel*.  
 supersedeō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessūrus, *refrain (from)*.

supersum, -esse, -fuī, *be left over, survive*.  
 superus, -ī, m., *inhabitant of the upper world*.  
 superus, -a, -um (comp., superior; sup., suprēmus or summus), *high, above*.  
 suppetō, -ere, -ivī, -ītus, *be at hand*.  
 supplicium, -ī, n., *punishment*.  
 suprā, adv., *above*.  
 suprēmus, -a, -um (sup. of superus), *highest*.  
 suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *take up, undertake, assume*.  
 suspiciō, -ōnis, f., *suspicion*.  
 sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *check, withstand, sustain*.  
 suus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *his, her, their, its*.  
 Syrācūsae, -ārum, f., *Syracuse*.

## T

T. = Titus, proper name.  
 taberna, -ae, f., *shop, booth*.  
 tabernāculum, -ī, n., *tent*.  
 tablinum, -ī, n., *tablinum* (apartment of a Roman house where the family records were kept).  
 tabula, -ae, f., *tablet, document*.  
 tacitus, -a, -um, *silent*.  
 tālis, -e, adj., *of such a kind, such*.  
 tam, adv. of degree, *so*.  
 tamen, conj., *nevertheless, still*.  
 Tanaquil, -quīlis, f., *Tanaquil*.  
 tandem, adv., *at length*.  
 tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, *touch*.  
 tantum, adv., *only*.  
 tantus, -a, -um, *so great, such*.  
 tardus, -a, -um, *slow, late*.  
 Tarpēia, -ae, f., *Tarpeia*.

Tarquinius, -ī, m., *Tarquinius*,  
*Tarquin*.

tectum, -ī, n., *roof*.

tegō, -ere, tēxi, tectus, *cover*.

telum, -ī, n., *dart, weapon*.

tempestās, -tātis, f., *storm, bad weather*.

templum, -ī, n., *temple*.

temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *try, test, attempt*.

tempus, -oris, n., *time*.

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentus, *extend*.

tenebrae, -arum, f., *darkness*.

teneō, -ēre, -uī, —, *hold*.

tentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *attempt*.

tergum, -ī, n., *back*.

terra, -ae, f., *earth, land*.

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten*.

terribilis, -e, *terrible, frightful*.

terror, -ōris, m., *fright, terror*.

tertium, adv., *a third time*.

tertius, -a, -um, *third*.

testūdō, -inis, f., *testudo*.

Tiberis, -is, acc. -im, abl. -ī, m.,  
*the Tiber (river)*.

Tiberius, -ī, m., *Tiberius*.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *fear*.

timidus, -a, -um, *fearful, cowardly*.

timor, -ōris, m., *fear, dread*.

Titurius, -ī, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*.

toga, -ae, f., *toga*.

togātus, -a, -um, *wearing a toga*.

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus,  
*raise, remove; ancorās tollere,*  
*to weigh anchor.*

tortmentum, -ī, n., *engine of war*.

tot, adj., indecl., *so many*.

totidem, adj., *just as many*.

tōtus, -a, -um, gen., tōtius, *whole*.

trāctō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *touch, feel*.

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give up,*  
*hand over, surrender; impart,*  
*hand down, teach.*

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, *lead across*.

trahō, -ere, trāxi, trāctus, *draw, drag*.

trāciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw across, carry across, transport; cross; pierce.*

trānō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, *swim across*.

tranquillitās, -ātis, f., *tranquillity*.

trāns, prep. (with acc.), *across*.

trānseō, -īre, -ii (-īvi), -itus, *go across, cross*.

trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *carry across*.

trānsfigō, -ere, -fixī, -fixus, *pierce*.

trānsfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossus, *pierce through, stab through*.

trānsversus, -a, -um, adj., *cross-wise, oblique*.

trecentī, -ae, -a, *three hundred*.

trēs, tria, *three*.

tribūtum, -ī, n., *tax, tribute*.

tricēsimus, -a, -um, *thirtieth; tri-*  
*cēsimus septimus, thirty-seventh*.

trīgintā, num. adj., indecl., *thirty*.

trīumphō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *triumph*.

Trōia, -ae, f., *Troy*.

tū, tuī, pers. pron., *you*.

tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet*.

tuī (gen.), reflex. pron., *of yourself*.

Tullia, -ae, f., *Tullia*.

Tullius, -ī, m., *Tullius*.

Tullus, -ī, m., *Tullus*.

tum, adv., *then*.

tumultus, -ūs, m., *disturbance, tumult*.

tumulus, -ī, m., *mound*.

turba, -ae, f., uproar, commotion;  
crowd.

turris, -is, f., tower.

tutor, -oris, m., guardian.

tutus, -a, -um, adj., safe.

tuus, -a, -um, poss. pron., your,  
yours.

tyrannus, -i, m., tyrant.

## U

ubi, interrog. adv., where? rel. adv.,  
when, where.

ubique, adv., everywhere.

Ulixēs, -is, m., Ulysses.

ullus, -a, -um, gen., ullius, any.

ulterior, -ius (sup., ultimus), adj.,  
farther; in ulteriōre Galliā, in  
farther Gaul.

ultimus, -a, -um, last, extreme.

ultrā, adv., beyond, on the other side.

umerus, -i, m., shoulder.

unā, adv., along with.

unde, adv., whence.

undique, adv., from all sides, on all  
sides.

ungō, -ere, unxi, unctus, anoint.

unguentum, -i, n., ointment.

uniō, -ire, -iī, -itus, unite.

universi, -orum, m., all together.

unus, -a, -um, gen., unius, one;  
pl., only, alone.

urbs, urbis, f., city.

usus, -ūs, m., use.

ut, conj., that, in order that, as  
(when followed by indicative).

uter, utris, m., skin, used as a bag  
or bottle.

uter, utra, utrum, gen., utrius,  
adj., which (of two); either.

uterque, -traque, -trumque, each,  
every.

utī, see ut.

utilis, -e (comp., -ior; sup., -issimus), adj., useful.

utinam, adv., would that! O that!

utor, utī, usus sum, with abl., use.

utrimque, adv., on both sides.

utrum, conj., not translated in  
direct questions; in indirect  
questions, whether.

uva, -ae, f., grape.

uxor, -oris, f., wife.

## V

vacuus, -a, -um, adj., empty;  
vacuus ab, destitute of.

vadum, -i, n., shoal, ford.

vāgītus, -ūs, m., crying.

vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, wander.

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, be power-  
ful, be strong.

vāllum, -i, n., rampart.

valor, -oris, m., value.

vās, vāsis, pl. vāsa, -ōrum, n.,  
dish, vessel.

vastātiō, -ōnis, f., devastation.

vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, lay waste.

vehementer, adv., violently, ex-  
tremely, exceedingly.

vehō, -ere, vexī, vectus, carry.

vel, conj., or; vel . . . vel, either  
. . . or.

Veliocassēs, -ium, m., the Velio-  
casses.

vēlōciter (comp., vēlōcius; sup.,  
vēlōcissimē), adv., swiftly.

vēlōx, gen., vēlōcis, adj., swift.

vēlum, -i, n., curtain.

venēnum, -i, n., poison.

venerātiō, -ōnis, f., worship.

Venetī, -ōrum, m., the Veneti, a  
maritime people of Gaul.

**veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, come.**

**venter, -tris, m., belly.**

**ventus, -ī, m., wind.**

**verbum, -ī, n., word.**

**vereor, -ērī, -itus sum, fear, dread.**

**vērō, adv., in truth, but.**

**vērītās, -ātis, f., truth.**

**vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, turn.**

**vērūs, -a, -um, adj., true.**

**vescor, vescī, with abl., feed (on), eat.**

**vesper, -erī, m., evening.**

**vespertinus, -a, -um, (pertaining to) evening.**

**Vesta, -ae, f., Vesta.**

**Vestālis, -e, adj., Vestal.**

**vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., your, yours.**

**vēstibulum, -ī, n., vestibule.**

**vēstīgium, -ī, n., trace, vestige.**

**vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitus, forbid.**

**vetus, gen., veteris, adj., old.**

**vexillum, -ī, n., banner.**

**via, -ae, f., road, way, journey.**

**vice, f. (abl. of vicis, change), in turn; in place (of).**

**vīcēsīmus, -a, -um, twentieth.**

**victor, -ōris, m., victor, conqueror.**

**victōria, -ae, f., victory.**

**vīcus, -ī, m., village.**

**videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, see.**

**videor, -ērī, vīsus sum, seem, appear.**

**vigilia, -ae, f., watch (part of the night).**

**vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, keep awake, watch.**

**vīgintī, num. adj., indecl., twenty.**

**vīlla, -ae, f., farmhouse; country-house.**

**vīmen, -inis, n., pliant twig, osier.**

**vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, conquer, defeat.**

**vinculum, -ī, n., chain; pl., chains, prison.**

**vindēmia, -ae, f., vintage.**

**vīnea, -ae, f., vinea.**

**vīnum, -ī, n., wine.**

**violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, dishonor, violate, break.**

**vir, -ī, m., man.**

**virgō, -inis, f., virgin, maiden.**

**Viromandui, -ōrum, m., the Viromandui.**

**virtūs, -tūtis, f., virtue, valor, courage, bravery.**

**vīs, vīs, f., force, violence; pl., vīrēs, vīrium, etc., strength; number.**

**vīta, -ae, f., life.**

**vitiātus, -a, -um, spoiled, tainted.**

**vitiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, spoil, taint.**

**vīvō, -ere, vixī, vīctus, live.**

**vīvus, -a, -um, alive.**

**vix, adv., scarcely.**

**vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call.**

**Volcānus, -ī, m., Vulcan, the god of fire.**

**volito, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fly to and fro, flutter, float, flow.**

**volō, velle, voluī, —, be willing, wish.**

**volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fly.**

**voluptās, -tātis, f., delight.**

**Volusēnus, -ī, m., Volusenus.**

**vōtum, -ī, n., vow, wish.**

**vōx, vōcis, f., voice; pl., words.**

**vulgus, -ī, n., (the) crowd.**

**vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, wound.**

**vulnus, -eris, n., wound.**

**vultur, -uris, m., vulture.**

**vultus, -ūs, m., face, countenance.**

## Z

**Zephyrus, -ī, m., Zephyrus, west wind.**



# ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

## A

- ability**, *facultās, -tātis, f.*  
**able**, *possum, posse, potuī, —.*  
**about**, *dē*, with *abl.*; *ad, circum*, with *acc.*  
**abundance**, *cōpia, -ae, f.*  
**accept**, *accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.*  
**accomplish**, *cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.*  
**across**, *trāns*, with *acc.*; *in*, with *abl.*  
**act**, *agō, agere, ēgī, āctus.*  
**active**, *ācer, ācris, ācre.*  
**advance**, *prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum; signa īnferre.*  
**advise**, *moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*  
**affair**, *rēs, rei, f.*  
**after**, *post.*  
**again**, *rūrsus.*  
**against**, *in, contrā*, with *acc.*  
**ago**, *ante.*  
**aid**, *auxilium, auxili, n.; subsidium, subsid, n.*  
**all**, *omnis, -e.*  
**allow**, *patior, patī, passus sum.*  
**almost**, *prope, paene, ferē.*  
**alone**, *sōlus, -a, -um.*  
**already**, *iam.*  
**although**, *cum.*  
**always**, *semper.*  
**ambassador**, *lēgātus, -ī, m.*  
**Ambiani**, *Ambiānī, -ōrum, m.*  
**among**, *inter*, with *acc.*  
**and**, *et, ac, atque, -que.*  
**anew**, *rūrsus.*  
**animal**, *animal, -ālīs, n.*  
**announce**, *nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*  
**another**, *alius, alia, aliud.*  
**answer**, *respondeō, ēre, -dī, re-spōnsus.*  
**any**, *ullus, -a, -um.*  
**approach**, *n., adventus, -ūs, m.*  
**approach**, *v., adeō, -īre, -īvī, -itus.*  
**Aquitania**, *Aquītānia, -ae, f.*  
**Arivistus**, *Arivistus, -ī, m.*  
**arms**, *arma, -ōrum, n.*  
**army**, *exercitus, -ūs, m.*  
**around**, *circum*, with *acc.*  
**arrange**, *ordinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*  
**arrival**, *adventus, -ūs, m.*  
**as**, . . . *ut.*  
**as soon as**, *cum primum.*  
**ascertain**, *cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus; reperīō, -īre, repperī, repertus.*  
**ask**, *petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus; quaerō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus.*  
**assemble**, *conveniō, -īre, -vēmī, -ventus.*  
**assembly**, *conventus, -ūs, m.*  
**assert**, *cōfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*  
**associate**, *comes, -itis, m. and f.*  
**assume**, *sūmō, -ere, sumpsī, sumptus.*  
**at**, *abl. of time or place, locative.*  
**attack**, *n., impetus, -ūs, m.*  
**attack**, *v., oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*  
**attempt**, *cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum.*  
**authority**, *auctōritās, -tātis, f.*  
**auxiliary forces**, *auxilia, -ōrum, n.*



## B

bad, *malus*, -a, -um.  
 band, *manus*, -ūs, f.  
 bank, *rīpa*, -ae, f.  
 battle, *proelium*, *proelī*, n.  
 be, *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, —.  
 bear, *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*.  
 beautiful, *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum.  
 because, *quod*.  
 become, *fiō*, *fieri*, *factus sum*.  
 before, *ante*, with acc.  
 begin, *coepī*, *coepisse*; *incipiō*,  
   -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus; *ineō*, -īre, -ī, -itus.  
 beginning, *initium*, *initī*, n.  
 behalf of, *prō*, with abl.  
 behind, *post*, with acc.  
 Belgians, *Belgae*, -ārum, m.  
 believe, *crēdō*, -ere, -didī, -ditus.  
 Bellovacī, *Bellovacī*, -ōrum, m.  
 besides, *praeterquam*.  
 besiege, *oppugnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 best, *optimus*, -a, -um.  
 better (it is), *praestat*.  
 better, *melior*, -ius.  
 between, *inter*, with acc.  
 black, *niger*, -gra, -grum.  
 blame, *culpō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 body, *corpus*, -oris, n.  
 book, *liber*, *librī*, m.  
 born (be), *nāscor*, *nāscī*, *nātus sum*.  
 both . . . and, *et* . . . *et*.  
 boundary, *regiō*, -ōnis, f.; *finis*,  
   -is, m.  
 boy, *puer*, -ī, m.  
 brave, *fortis*, -e.  
 bravely, *fortiter*.  
 bravery, *virtūs*, -tūtis, f.  
 break (camp), *moveō*, *ēre*, *mōvī*,  
   *mōtus*.

bridge, *pōns*, *pontis*, m.  
 brief, *brevis*, -e.  
 bring, *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*; *afferō*,  
   -ferre, *attulī*, *allātus*.  
 bring back, *redūcō*, -ere, -dūxī,  
   -ductus; *referō*, -ferre, *rettulī*,  
   *relātus*.  
 bring in or upon, *īnferō*, -ferre,  
   *intulī*, *illātus*.  
 bring out, *efferō*, -ferre, *extulī*,  
   *ēlātus*.  
 bring together, *cōnferō*, -ferre, -*tulī*,  
   *collātus*.  
 bring (war on), *īnferō*, -ferre,  
   *-tulī*, *illātus*.  
 broad, *lātus*, -a, -um.  
 brother, *frāter*, -trīs, m.  
 Brutus, *Brūtus*, -ī, m.  
 build, *aedificō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 building, *aedificium*, *aedificī*, n.  
 burn, *incendō*, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus.  
 but, *sed*.  
 by, *ā*, *ab*, with abl.

## C

Caesar, *Caesar*, -aris, m.  
 call, *vocō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 call together, *convocō*, -āre, -āvī,  
   -ātus.  
 camp, *castra*, -ōrum, n.  
 can, *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*, —.  
 captive, *captīvus*, -ī, m.  
 capture, *capīō*, -ere, *cēpī*, *captus*;  
   *expugnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 care, *diligentia*, -ae, f.  
 carefully, *diligenter*.  
 carry, *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*; *portō*,  
   -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 carry away, *efferō*, -ferre, *extulī*,  
   *ēlātus*.  
 carry on war, *bellum gerō*.

**carry out**, *efferrō, -ferre, extulī, elātus*.

**Cassius**, *Cassius, -ī, m.*

**Catiline**, *Catilīna, -ae, m.*

**Cato**, *Catō, -ōnis, m.*

**cause**, *causa, -ae, f.*

**cavalry**, pl. of *eques, -itis, m.*;  
*equitātus, -ūs, m.*

**censure**, *culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*.

**centurion**, *centuriō, -ōnis, m.*

**certain**, adj., *certus, -a, -um*.

**certain one**, pron., *quīdam, quaedam, quiddam*.

**character**, pl. of *mōs, mōris, m.*

**check**, *sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus*.

**chief**, *prīnceps, -cipis, m.*

**children**, *liberī, -ōrum, m.*

**choose**, *dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus*.

**Cicero**, *Cicerō, -ōnis, m.*

**citizen**, *cīvis, -is, m. and f.*

**city**, *urbs, urbis, f.*

**close**, *claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus*.

**cohort**, *cohors, cohortis, f.*

**collect**, *cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, collātus; cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus*.

**come**, *veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus*.

**command**, n., *imperium, imperī, n.*

**command**, v., *imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus*.

**command of (be in)**, *praesum, -esse, -fuī*.

**commander-in-chief**, *imperātor, -ōris, m.*

**companion**, *comes, -itis, m. and f.*

**compel**, *cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus*.

**conceal**, *cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*.

**concerning**, *dē*, with abl.

**confidence**, *fidēs, -eī, f.*

**conquer**, *superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus*.

**conqueror**, *victor, -ōris, m.*

**consider**, *cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus*.

**construct**, *īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus*.

**consul**, *cōnsul, -ulis, m.*

**contend**, *contendō, -ere, -dī, -tentus*.

**control**, *imperium, imperī, n.*

**country**, *patria, -ae, f.*; *fīnēs, -ium, m.*

**courage**, *virtūs, -ūtis, f.*

**cover**, *compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus*.

**Crassus**, *Crassus, -ī, m.*

**cross**, *trānseō, -īre, -īvī (-ī), -itus*

**custom**, *mōs, mōris, m.*

## D

**daily**, adj., *cotīdiānus, -a, -um*.

**daily**, adv., *cotīdiē*.

**danger**, *perīculum, -ī, n.*

**dare**, *audeō, -ēre, ausus sum*.

**daughter**, *fīlia, -ae, f.*

**day**, *diēs, diē, m. and f.*; **late in the day**, *multō diē*; **following day**, *posterō diē*.

**daybreak**, at, *prīmā lūce*.

**dear**, *cārus, -a, -um*.

**death**, *mors, mortis, f.*

**deceive**, *fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus*.

**decide**, *cōstituō, -ere, -stitūī, -stitūtus; statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus*.

**declare**, *cōfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*.

**deep**, *altus, -a, -um*.

**defeat**, *superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus*.

**defend**, *dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus*.

**defender**, *dēfēnsōr, -ōris, m.*

**defense of**, *prō*, with abl.

**delay**, n., *mora, -ae, f.*

**delay**, v., *moror, -ārī, -ātus sum*.

deliver (a speech), *habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*

deny, *negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*

departure, *profectiō, -ōnis, f.*

deprive, *nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*

desire, *cupiditās, -ātis, f.*

desirous, *cupidus, -a, -um.*

destroy, *dēlēō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.*

detain, *retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.*

determine, *cōstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus; statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.*

devastate, *populor, -ārī, -ātus sum.*

differ, *differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātus.*

difficult, *difficilis, -e.*

difficulty, *difficultās, -tātis, f.*

diligence, *diligentia, -ae, f.*

diligently, *diligenter.*

direction, *pars, partis, f.*

disappoint, *fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus.*

discover, *reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus.*

dismiss, *dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.*

ditch, *fossa, -ae, f.*

do, *agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus; faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.*

draw up, *īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus.*

dread, n., *timor, -ōris, m.*

dread, v., *vereor, -ērī, veritus sum.*

drive, *agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus; pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus.*

drive out, *expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus; pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus.*

dwell, *incolō, -ere, -uī, —.*

## E

each, *quisque, quidque.*

eager, *cupidus, -a, -um.*

early, *prīmus, -a, -um* (with noun).

earth, *terra, -ae., f.*

easy, *facilis, -e.*

easily, *facile.*

eight, *octō.*

either . . . or, *vel . . . vel, aut . . . aut.*

encamp, *cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, —.*

encourage, *cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.*

end, *fīnis, -is, m.*

enemy, *hostis, -is, m.; inimīcus, -ī, m.*

engage (in battle), *committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.*

enjoy, *fruor, fruī, frūctus sum.*

enlist, *cōscribō, -ere, -psī, -ptus.*

enroll, *cōscribō, -ere, -psī, -ptus. enter, ineō, -īre, -uī (-ivī), -itus.*

epistle, *epistula, -ae, f.*

equal, *pār, paris.*

esteem, *honor, -ōris, m.*

every, *omnis, -e; every one, quisque, quidque.*

evident (it is), *cōstat.*

evil, *malus, -a, -um.*

excel, *superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus.*

excellent, *optimus, -a, -um.*

extend, *pateō, -ēre, -uī, —.*

## F

face to face, *adversus, -a, -um.*

facing, *adversus, -a, -um.*

fail, *dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.*

faith, *fidēs, -eī, f.*

faithful, *fidus, -a, -um.*

far, *longē.*

farmer, *agricola, -ae, m.*

farther, *ulterior*, -*ius*.  
 father, *pater*, -*tris*, *m*.  
 fear, *n.*, *tīmor*, -*ōris*, *m*.  
 fear, *v.*, *tīmēō*, -*ēre*, -*uī*, —; *vereor*,  
     -*ērī*, -*ītus sum*.  
 few, *paucī*, -*ae*, -*a*.  
 field, *ager*, *agrī*, *m*.  
 fiercely, *ācritēr*.  
 fight, *pugnō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātus*.  
 fill, *compleō*, -*ēre*, -*ēvī*, -*ētus*.  
 find out, *reperiō*, -*īre*, *repperī*, *re-*  
     *pertus*; *cognōscō*, -*ere*, -*nōvī*,  
     -*nitus*.  
 fire, *ignis*, -*is*, *m*.  
 first, *prīmus*, -*a*, -*um*.  
 fit, *idōneus*, -*a*, -*um*.  
 five, *quīnque*.  
 flee, *fugiō*, -*ere*, *fūgī*, —.  
 fleet, *classis*, -*is*, *f*.  
 flight, *fuga*, -*ae*, *f*.  
 follow, *sequor*, *sequī*, *secūtus sum*.  
 following, *posterus*, -*a*, -*um*.  
 foot (at), *sub*, with *abl*.  
 foot, *pēs*, *pedis*, *m*.  
 foot-soldier, *pedes*, -*itis*, *m*.  
 for, *prō*, with *abl*.  
 force, *vīs*, *vīs*, *f*.  
 forces, *cōpiaē*, -*ārum*, *f*.  
 forest, *silva*, -*ae*, *f*.  
 former, *prior*, -*ius*.  
 fortifications, *moenīa*, -*ium*, *n*.;  
     *mūnitīō*, -*ōnis*, *f*.  
 fortify, *mūniō*, -*īre*, -*īvī*, -*ītus*.  
 four, *quattuor*.  
 free, *v.*, *liberō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātus*.  
 free, *adj.*, *liber*, -*era*, -*erum*.  
 frequent, *crēber*, -*bra*, -*brum*.  
 friend, *amīcus*, -*i*, *m*.  
 friendly, *amīcus*, -*a*, -*um*.  
 frighten, *terreō*, -*ēre*, -*uī*, -*itus*.  
 from, *ā*, *ab*, *ē*, *ex*, with *abl*.

front of, *prō*, with *abl*.  
 full, *plēnus*, -*a*, -*um*.

## G

Galba, *Galba*, -*ae*, *m*.  
 garrison, *praesidium*, *praesidī*, *n*.  
 gate, *porta*, -*ae*, *f*.  
 gather, *dēligō*, -*ere*, -*lēgī*, -*lēctus*.  
 Gaul, *Gallia*, -*ae*, *f*.  
 Gauls, *Gallī*, -*ōrum*, *m*.  
 general, *imperātor*, -*ōris*, *m*.  
 German, *Germānus*, -*i*, *m*.  
 get possession of, *potior*, -*irī*, -*ītus*  
     *sum*.  
 gift, *dōnum*, -*i*, *n*.  
 girl, *puella*, -*ae*, *f*.  
 give, *dō*, -*are*, *dedī*, *datus*.  
 give up, *dēdō*, -*ere*, -*didī*, -*ditus*;  
     *trādō*, -*ere*, -*didī*, -*ditus*.  
 gladly, *libenter*.  
 glory, *glōria*, -*ae*, *f*.; *honor*, -*ōris*,  
     *m*.  
 go, *eō*, *īre*, *ivī* (*ivī*), *itūrus*.  
 go across, *trānseō*, -*īre*, -*ivī* (*ivī*),  
     -*itus*.  
 go out, *exeō*, -*īre*, -*ivī* (*ivī*), -*itūrus*.  
 go to, *adeō*, -*īre*, -*ivī* (*ivī*), -*itus*.  
 god, *deus*, -*i*, *m*.  
 goddess, *dea*, -*ae*, *f*.  
 good, *bonus*, -*a*, -*um*.  
 grain, *frūmentum*, -*i*, *n*.  
 great, *magnus*, -*a*, -*um*; so great,  
     *tantus*, -*a*, -*um*; how great, *quan-*  
     *tus*, -*a*, -*um*.  
 greatly, *magno**pere*.  
 guard, *n.*, *cūstōs*, -*ōdis*, *m*.; *prae-*  
     *sidium*, *praesidī*, *n*.  
 guard, *v.*, *dēfendō*, -*ere*, -*fendī*,  
     -*fēnsus*.  
 guide, *dux*, *ducis*, *m*.

## H

**hand**, *manus*, -ūs, f.  
**happen**, *fiō*, *fierī*, *factus sum*.  
**harm**, *noceō*, -ēre, -uī, —.  
**hasten**, *properō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus;  
*contendō*, -ere, -dī, -tentus.  
**have**, *habeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.  
**he**, *is*; often not expressed.  
**head**, *caput*, -itis, n.  
**hear**, *audiō*, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.  
**heavy**, *gravis*, -e.  
**heavy baggage**, *impedimenta*,  
-ōrum, n.  
**height**, *altitūdō*, -inis, f.  
**help**, *auxilium*, *auxili*, n.  
**Helvetians**, *Helvētī*, -ōrum, m.  
**hem in**, *contineō*, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.  
**her**, *eius*; *suus*, -a, -um (reflexive).  
**high**, *altus*, -a, -um; *superus*, -a,  
-um.  
**hill**, *collis*, -is, m.  
**himself**, *suī* (reflexive); *ipse*  
(intensive).  
**hinder**, *prohibeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.  
**hindrance**, *impedimentum*, -i, n.  
**his**, *eius*; *suus*, -a, -um (reflexive).  
**hither**, *citerior*, -ius.  
**hold**, *habeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus; *teneō*,  
-ēre, -uī, —.  
**hold together**, *contineō*, -ēre, -uī,  
-tentus.  
**home**, *domus*, -ūs, f.; at home,  
*domī*.  
**honor**, *honor*, -ōris, m.  
**hope**, *spēs*, -eī, f.  
**horn**, *cornū*, -ūs, n.  
**horse**, *equus*, *equā*, m.  
**horseman**, *eques*, -itis, m.  
**hostage**, *obses*, -idis, m. and f.  
**hour**, *hōra*, -ae, f.

**house**, *domus*, -ūs, f.  
**how**, *quam*, *quōmodō*.  
**how great**, *quantus*, -a, -um.  
**how long**, *quam diū*.  
**how many**, *quot*.  
**how much**, *quantus*, -a, -um.  
**hurl**, *iaciō*, -ere, *iēcī*, *iactus*.  
**hurl together**, *coniciō*, -ere, -iēcī,  
-iectus.  
**hurry**, *properō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

## I

**I**, *ego*, *meī*.  
**if**, *sī*.  
**if not**, *nisi*.  
**immediately**, *statim*.  
**immortal**, *immortālis*, -e.  
**in**, *in*, with abl.  
**incredible**, *incrēdibilis*, -e.  
**infantry**, *peditēs*, -itum, m.  
**inferior**, *īnferior*, -ius.  
**influence**, n., *auctōritās*, -lātis, f.  
**influence**, v., *adducō*, -ere, -dūxī,  
-ductus.  
**inform**, *certiōrem facere*; *ēdoceō*,  
-ēre, -uī, -doctus.  
**inhabit**, *incolō*, -ere, -uī, —.  
**injure**, *noceō*, -ēre, -uī, —.  
**injury**, *iniūria*, -ae, f.  
**inner**, *interior*, -ius.  
**instruct**, *ēdoceō*, -ere, -uī, -doctus.  
**into**, *in*, with acc.  
**invincible**, *invictus*, -a, -um.  
**island**, *īnsula*, -ae, f.  
**it**, *is*, *ea*, *id*; often not expressed.

## J

**javelin**, *pilum*, -ī, n.  
**join**, *coniungō*, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-  
tus; *committō*, -ere, -mīsī, -mis-  
sus.

journey, *iter, itineris*, n.; *via*, -ae, f.  
 judge, *iūdex*, -icis, m.  
 Julia, *Iūlia*, -ae, f.  
 Jura, *Iūra*, -ae, m.

## K

keep from, *prohibeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.  
 keep in, *contineō*, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.  
 keeper, *cūstōs*, -ōdis, m.  
 kill, *interficiō*, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus;  
     *occidō*, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus.  
 king, *rēx*, *rēgis*, m.  
 know, *sciō*, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.

## L

labor, n., *labor*, -ōris, m.  
 labor, v., *labōrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 land, *terra*, -ae, f.  
 language, *lingua*, -ae, f.  
 large, *magnus*, -a, -um.  
 last, *extrēmus*, -a, -um.  
 law, *lēx*, *lēgis*, f.  
 lay waste, *vāstō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus;  
     *populor*, -ārī, -ātus sum.  
 lead, *dūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, ductus.  
 lead across, *trādūcō*, -ere, -dūxī,  
     -ductus.  
 lead back, *redūcō*, -ere, -dūxī,  
     -ductus.  
 lead out, *ēdūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -duc-  
     tus.  
 lead to, *addūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.  
 leader, *dux*, *ducis*, m.  
 learn, *cognōscō*, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus.  
 leave, *relinquō*, -ere, *reliquī*, *re-*  
     *lictus*.  
 left, *sinister*, -tra, -trum.  
 legion, *legiō*, -ōnis, f.  
 length, *longitūdō*, -inis, f.  
 Lentulus, *Lentulus*, -ī, m.  
 less, *minor*, minus.

lest, *nē*, with subjunctive.  
 letter, *littera*, -ae, f.; *epistula*, -ae, f.  
 levy, *cōnscrībō*, -ere, -psī, -ptus.  
 liberty, *libertās*, -ātis, f.  
 lie open, *pateō*, -ēre, -uī, —.  
 lieutenant, *lēgātus*, -ī, m.  
 life, *vīta*, -ae, f.  
 light, n., *lūx*, *lūcis*, f.  
 light, adj., *levis*, -e.  
 like, *similis*, -e.  
 line of battle, *aciēs*, -ē, f.  
 line of march, *agmen*, -minis, n.  
 little, adv., *paulum*.  
 live, *vīvō*, -ere, *vīxī*, *vīctus*.  
 live in, *incolō*, -ere, -uī, —.  
 location, *locus*, -ī, m.  
 long, adj., *longus*, -a, -um.  
 long, adv., *diū*.  
 lord, *dominus*, -ī, m.  
 lose, *āmittō*, -ere, -mīsī, -missus;  
     *dīmittō*, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.  
 love, *amō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 love, *amor*, -ōris, m.  
 low, *īnferus*, -a, -um.

## M

make, *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factus*.  
 man, *vir*, -ī, m.; *homō*, -inis, m.  
     and f.  
 manage, *regō*, -ere, *rēxī*, *rēctus*.  
 manners, pl. of *mōs*, *mōris*, m.  
 many, *multī*, -ae, -a.  
 march, v., *iter facere*.  
 march, n., *iter, itineris*, n.  
 Marcus, *Mārcus*, -ī, m.  
 marsh, *palūs*, -ūdis, f.  
 master, *dominus*, -ī, m.; *magis-*  
     *ter*, -trī, m.  
 me, see *L*.  
 meantime, *intereā*.  
 meet, *occurrō*, -ere, -currī, -cursus.



meeting, *conventus*, -ūs, m.  
 memory, *memoria*, -ae, f.  
 merchant, *mercātor*, -ōris, m.  
 message, *nūntius*, *nūntī*, m.  
 messenger, *nūntius*, *nūntī*, m.  
 middle, *medius*, -a, -um.  
 midnight, *media nox*.  
 mile, *mille passūs*.  
 mistress, *domina*, -ae, f.  
 mother, *māter*, -tris, f.  
 mountain, *mōns*, *montis*, m.  
 move, *moveō*, -ēre, *mōvī*, *mōtus*.  
 move forward, *prōmoveō*, -ēre,  
     *-mōvī*, *-mōtus*.  
 movement, *mōtus*, -ūs, m.  
 much, *multus*, -a, -um.  
 must, *dēbeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus; or  
     pass. periphrastic.  
 my, *meus*, -a, -um.  
 myself, *meī*.

## N

name, *nōmen*, -inis, n.  
 nation, *nātiō*, -ōnis, f.  
 native land, *patria*, -ae, f.  
 nature, *nātūra*, -ae, f.  
 near, *ad*, *prope*.  
 nearer, *propior*, -ius.  
 nearly, *paene*, *prope*.  
 neither, conj., *neque*.  
 neither, adj., *neuter*, -tra, -trum.  
 nevertheless, *tamen*.  
 new, *novus*, -a, -um.  
 next, *proximus*, -a, -um.  
 night, *nox*, *noctis*, f.  
 nine, *novem*.  
 no, *nūllus*, -a, -um.  
 no one, *nūllus*, -a, -um; *nēmō*  
     —, dat. *nēmīnī*, m.  
 noise, *clāmor*, -ōris, m.  
 none, *nūllus*, -a, -um; *nēmō*, —,  
     dat. *nēmīnī*, m.

nor, *neque*.  
 not, *nōn*.  
 not only . . . but also, *nōn sōlum*  
     . . . *sed etiam*.  
 nothing, *nihil*, indecl., n.  
 number, *numerus*, -ī, m.  
 numerous, *crēber*, -bra, -brum.

## O

oath, *iūs iūrandum*, *iūris iūrandī*, n.  
 obey, *pāreō*, -ēre, -uī, —.  
 of (concerning), *dē*, with abl.  
 often, *saepe*.  
 old, *senex*, *senis*.  
 on, *in*, with abl.  
 on account of, abl. of cause, or *ob*  
     with acc.  
 on all sides, *undique*.  
 one, *ūnus*, -a, -um.  
 one hundred, *centum*.  
 only, *sōlus*, -a, -um.  
 opportunity, *facultās*, -tātis, f.;  
     *potestās*, -tātis, f.  
 oppose, *resistō*, -ere, *resistī*, —.  
 or, *aut*, *vel*, *an*.  
 oration, *ōrātiō*, -ōnis, f.  
 order, *iubeō*, -ēre, *iussī*, *iussus*  
     (with acc.); *imperō*, -āre, -āvī,  
     -ātus (with dat.).  
 other, *alius*, -a, -ud.  
 ought, *dēbeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.  
 our, *noster*, -tra, -trum.  
 out of, *ē*, *ex*, with abl.  
 outer, *exterus*, -a, -um.  
 over, *in*, with abl.  
 overcome, *superō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

## P

pace, *passus*, -ūs, m.  
 pacify, *pācō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 part, *pars*, *partis*, f.



pass the winter, *hiemō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

peace, *pāx*, *pācis*, f.

people, *populus*, -ī, m.

peril, *periculum*, -ī, n.

permit, *licet*, -ēre, *licuit*; *patior*, *patī*, *passus sum*.

persuade, *persuādeō*, -ēre, -sī, -sus.

picture, *pīctūra*, -ae, f.

pitch (camp), *pōnō*, -ere, *posuī*, *positus*.

place, n., *locus*, -ī, m.

place, v., *pōnō*, -ere, *posuī*, *positus*.

place before, *antepōnō*, -ere, -posuī, -positus.

place in command of, *praefficiō*, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; *praepōnō*, -ere, -posuī, -positus.

plan, *cōnsilium*, *cōnsilī*, n.

please, *placeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

pledge, *fidēs*, -eī, f.

plenty, *cōpia*, -ae, f.

Pompey, *Pompēius*, *Pompēi*, m.

port, *portus*, -ūs, m.

possession (get), *potior*, *potīrī*, *potītus sum*.

possible (as), *quam* with superlative.

power, *potestās*, -tātis, f.

powerful, *potēns*, *potētis*.

praise, *laudō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

prefer, *mālō*, *mälle*, *mālūi*; *antepōnō*, -ere, -posuī, -positus.

prepare, *parō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

presence, *cōspectus*, -ūs, m.

present, *dōnum*, -ī, n.

private, *prīvātus*, -a, -um.

prohibit, *prohibeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

promise, *polliceor*, -ērī, -itus sum.

promote, *prōmoveō*, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.

protection, *praesidium*, *praesidi*, n.

province, *prōvincia*, -ae, f.

pupil, *discipulus*, -ī, m.

put, *pōnō*, -ere, *posuī*, *positus*.

put to flight, *pellō*, -ere, *pepulī*, *pulsus*.

## Q

queen, *rēgīna*, -ae, f.

quick, *celer*, *celeris*, *celere*.

quickly, *celeriter*.

## R

rank, *ōrdō*, -inis, m.

rather (comparative).

read, *legō*, -ere, *lēgī*, *lēctus*.

rear, *novissimum agmen*.

receive, *accipiō*, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.

recently (most), *proximē*.

reckon, *existimō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

recruit, *novus miles*.

region, *regiō*, -ōnis, f.

remain, *maneō*, -ēre, *mānsī*, *mānsus*.

remaining, *reliquus*, -a, -um.

Remi, *Rēmī*, -ōrum, m.

reply, *respondeō*, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsus.

report, n., *rūmor*, -ōris, m.

report, v., *nūntiō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; *referō*, -ferre, *rettulī*, -lātus.

republic, *rēs pública*, *reī publicae*, f.

repulse, *reiciō*, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.

resist, *resistō*, -ere, *restitī*, —.

respects, in all, *omnibus rebus*.

respond, *respondeō*, -ēre, -dī, -sus.

rest, *reliquus*, -a, -um.

restrain, *retineō*, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.

retain, *retineō*, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.

retreat, *recipiō*, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.

return, *revertō*, -ere, -tī, -sus; *revertor*, -ī, *reversus sum*.

revolt, *mōtus*, -ūs, m.  
 revolution, *rēs novae*.  
 reward, *praemium*, *praemī*, n.  
 Rhine, *Rhēnus*, -ī, m.  
 Rhone, *Rhodanus*, -ī, m.  
 ridge, *iugum*, -ī, n.  
 right, *dexter*, -tra, -trum.  
 river, *flūmen*, -inis, n.  
 road, *via*, -ae, f.  
 Roman, n. *Rōmānus*, -ī, m.  
 Roman, adj., *Rōmānus*, -a, -um.  
 Rome, *Rōma*, -ae, f.  
 rose, *rosa*, -ae, f.  
 row, *ōrdō*, -inis, m.  
 royal power, *rēgnum*, -ī, n.  
 rule, *regō*, -ere, *rēxī*, *rēctus*.  
 rumor, *rūmor*, -ōris, m.  
 run, *currō*, -ere, *cucurrī*, *cursus*.

## S

Sabinus, *Sabīnus*, -ī, m.  
 safe, *tūtus*, -a, -um.  
 safety, *salūs*, -ūtis, f.  
 sail, *nāvigō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 sailor, *nauta*, -ae, m.  
 sake of, *causā*, with genitive.  
 same, *īdem*, *eadem*, *īdem*.  
 save, *servō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 say, *dīcō*, -ere, *dīxī*, *dictus*; *loquor*,  
*loquī*, *locūtus sum*.  
 scarcity, *īnopia*, -ae, f.  
 scatter, *differō*, -ferre, *distulī*, *dīlā-*  
*tus*.  
 scout, *explōrātor*, -ōris, m.  
 sea, *mare*, -is, n.  
 seashore, *lītus*, -oris, n.  
 see, *videō*, -ēre, *vīdī*, *vīsus*.  
 seek, *petō*, -ere, -ī (-īvī), -ītus.  
 seem, *videor*, -ērī, *vīsus sum*.  
 seize, *capīō*, -ere, *cēpī*, *captus*;  
*occupō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

select, *dēligō*, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus.  
 senate, *senātus*, -ūs, m.  
 senator, *senātor*, -ōris, m.  
 send, *mittō*, -ere, *mīsī*, *missus*.  
 send ahead, *praemittō*, -ere, -mīsī,  
*-missus*.  
 send away, *āmittō*, -ere, *āmīsī*,  
*āmissus*.  
 send back, *remittō*, -ere, -mīsī,  
*-missus*.  
 send in different directions, *dī-*  
*mittō*, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.  
 Sequanian, *Sēquanus*, -ī, m.  
 servant, *servus*, -ī, m.; *serva*,  
*-ae*, f.  
 set fire to, *incendō*, -ere, -cendī,  
*-cēnsus*.  
 set free, *liberō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 set out, *proficīscor*, -ī, *profectus*  
*sum*.  
 setting, *occāsus*, -ūs, m.  
 settle, *cōnsūdō*, -ere, -sēdī, —.  
 seven, *septem*.  
 several, *complūrēs*, -a.  
 severe, *gravis*, -e.  
 sharp, *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*.  
 sharply, *ācritēr*.  
 ship, *nāvis*, -is, f.  
 shore, *lītus*, -oris, n.  
 short, *brevis*, -e.  
 shout, *clāmor*, -ōris, m.  
 show, *doceō*, -ēre, -uī, *doctus*;  
*mōnstrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.  
 shut, *claudō*, -ere, *clausī*, *clausus*.  
 side, *pars*, *partis*, f.; *latus*, -eris, n.  
 sight, *cōspectus*, -ūs, m.  
 signal, *signum*, -ī, n.  
 since, *cum*.  
 sister, *soror*, -ōris, f.  
 six, *sex*.  
 six hundred, *sescentī*, -ae, -a.

size, *magnitūdō*, -*inis*, f.  
slaughter, *caedēs*, -*is*, f.  
slave, *servus*, -*i*, m.  
slavery, *servitūs*, -*ūtis*, f.  
slay, *occidō*, -*ere*, -*cīdī*, -*cīsus*; *interficiō*, -*ere*, -*fēcī*, -*fectus*.  
small, *parvus*, -*a*, -*um*.  
so, *ita* (manner); *tam* (degree).  
so great, *tantus*, -*a*, -*um*.  
soldier, *mīles*, -*itis*, m.  
some one, *aliquis*, *aliquid*.  
some . . . others, *aliī* . . . *aliī*.  
somewhat, *paulum*.  
son, *filius*, *filī*, m.  
speak, *loquor*, *loquī*, *locūtus sum*.  
speech, *ōrātiō*, -*ōnis*, f.  
speed, *celeritās*, -*tātis*, f.  
spend winter, *hiemō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātus*.  
spy, *explorātor*, -*ōris*, m.  
stand, *stō*, -*āre*, *stetī*, *stātus*.  
standard, *signum*, -*i*, n.  
star, *stella*, -*ae*, f.  
state, *civitās*, -*tātis*, f.; *rēs publica*, *rei publicae*, f.  
stone, *lapis*, -*idis*, m.  
storm, v., *oppugnō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātus*.  
storm, n., *tempestās*, -*tātis*, f.  
stormy weather, *hiems*, *hiemis*, f.  
story, *fābula*, -*ae*, f.  
strength, *vīrēs*, *vīrium*, f.  
strengthen, *cōfirmō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātus*.  
strip, *nūdō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātus*.  
subdue, *pācō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātus*.  
such, *tantus*, -*a*, -*um*.  
Suessiones, *Suessiōnēs*, -*um*, m.  
suffer, *patior*, *patī*, *passus sum*.  
suitable, *idōneus*, -*a*, -*um*.  
summer, *aestās*, -*tātis*, f.

summon, *convocō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātus*.  
sun, *sōl*, *sōlis*, m.  
sunset, at, *sōlis occāsū*.  
superior, *superior*, -*ius*.  
supplies, *commeātus*, -*ūs*, m.  
supply, *cōpia*, -*ae*, f.  
surpass, *superō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātus*; *praestō*, -*āre*, -*stitī*, -*stitus*.  
surrender, n., *deditiō*, -*ōnis*, f.  
surrender, v., *dēdō*, -*ere*, -*didī*, -*ditus*; *trādō*, -*ere*, -*didī*, -*ditus*.  
survive, *supersum*, -*esse*, -*fuī*.  
suspicion, *suspiciō*, -*ōnis*, f.  
swamp, *palūs*, -*ūdis*, f.  
swift, *celer*, *celeris*, *celere*; *vēlōx*, *vēlōcis*.  
swiftly, *celeriter*.  
swiftness, *celeritās*, -*tātis*, f.  
sword, *gladius*, *gladiī*, m.

T

table, *mēsa*, -*ae*, f.  
take, *capiō*, -*ere*, *cēpī*, *captus*; *sūmō*, -*ere*, *sūmpsī*, *sūmptus*.  
take back, *recipiō*, -*ere*, -*cēpī*, -*ceptus*.  
take by storm, *expugnō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātus*.  
tall, *altus*, -*a*, -*um*; *longus*, -*a*, -*um*.  
teach, *doceō*, -*ēre*, -*uī*, *doctus*.  
teacher, *magister*, -*trī*, m.  
tell, *nārrō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātus*.  
ten, *decem*.  
tenth, *decimus*, -*a*, -*um*.  
territory, pl. of *finis*, -*is*, m.  
than, *quam*.  
that, conj., *ut*; not expressed after verbs of saying, thinking, and the like.  
that, demon. pron., *is*, *ea*, *id*; *ille*, *illa*, *illud*.

that of yours, *iste, ista, istud*.  
 that, rel. pron., *quī, quae, quod*.  
 theirs, gen. pl. of *is*; *suus, -a, -um*,  
 (reflexive).  
 there, *ibi*.  
 thing, *rēs, reī, f.*  
 think, *putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*; *ar-*  
*bitror, -ārī, -ātus sum*; *existimō,*  
*-āre, -āvī, -ātus*.  
 third, *tertius, -a, -um*.  
 this, *hic, haec, hoc*.  
 thousand, *mille*.  
 three, *trēs, tria*.  
 through, *per*, with acc.  
 throw, *iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus*.  
 throw back, *reiciō, -ere, -iēcī*  
*-iectus*.  
 time, *tempus, -oris, n.*  
 tired, *dēfessus, -a, -um*.  
 to, *ad*, with acc.  
 toil, labor, *-ōris, m.*  
 tongue, *lingua, -ae, f.*  
 top, *summus, -a, -um*.  
 torture, *cruciātus, -ūs, m.*  
 toward, *ad*, with acc.  
 tower, *turris, -is, f.*  
 town, *oppidum, -ī, n.*  
 tree, *arbor, -oris, f.*  
 trench, *fossa, -ae, f.*  
 troops, *cōpiae, -ārum, f.*  
 trumpet, *tuba, -ae, f.*  
 trust, *crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus*.  
 try, *cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum*.  
 tumult, *tumultus, -ūs, m.*  
 twenty-five, *vīgintī quīnque*.  
 two, *duo, duae, duo*.  
 two hundred, *ducentī, -ae, -a*.

## U

unconquerable, *invictus, -a, -um*.  
 under, *sub*.

understand, *intelligō, -ere, -ēxī,*  
*-lēctus*.  
 undertake, *incipiō, -ere, -cēpī,*  
*-ceptus*.  
 unfriendly, *inimīcus, -a, -um*.  
 unhappy, *miser, misera, miserum*.  
 unite, *coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-*  
*tus*.  
 unless, *nisi*.  
 unlike, *dissimilis, -e*.  
 unwilling, *nōlō, nōlle, nōlū*.  
 upon, *in* (with acc. or abl.).  
 upper, superior, *-ius*.  
 us, pl. of *ego*.  
 use, *utor, ūtī, ūsus sum*.  
 useful, *utilis, -e*.  
 useless, *inutilis, -e*.

## V

vain (in), *frūstrā*.  
 valor, *virtūs, -ūtis, f.*  
 van, *prīmum agmen*.  
 Veneti, *Venetī, -ōrum, m.*  
 very (superlative).  
 victor, *victor, -ōris, m.*  
 victory, *victōria, -ae, f.*  
 view, *cōspectus, -ūs, m.*  
 village, *vīcus, -ī, m.*  
 violence, *vīs, vīs, f.*  
 virtue, *virtūs, -ūtis, f.*  
 visit, *adeō, -īre, -īvī, -itus*.  
 voice, *vōx, vōcis, f.*

## W

wage, *gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus*.  
 wall, *mūrus, -ī, m.*  
 want, *inopia, -ae, f.*  
 war, *bellum, -ī, n.*  
 warn, *moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus*.  
 war-ship, *nāvis longa*.

watch, <i>vigilia</i> , -ae, f.; <i>cūstōs</i> , -ōdis, m.	wish, <i>volō</i> , <i>velle</i> , <i>voluī</i> .
water, <i>aqua</i> , -ae, f.	with, <i>cum</i> , with abl.
way, <i>via</i> , -ae, f.	withdraw, <i>exeō</i> , -āre, -īī (-īvī), -itūrus; <i>reducō</i> , -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.
we, <i>nōs</i> .	without, <i>sine</i> , with abl.
weapon, <i>tēlum</i> , -ī, n.	withstand, <i>sustineō</i> , -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
weary, <i>dēfessus</i> , -a, -um.	woman, <i>fēmina</i> , -ae, f.
weather (stormy), <i>hiems</i> , <i>hiemis</i> , f.; <i>tempestās</i> , -tātis, f.	woods, <i>silva</i> , -ae, f.
well, <i>bene</i> .	word, <i>verbum</i> , -ī, n.
what, <i>quis</i> , <i>quid</i> (substantive); <i>quī</i> , <i>quae</i> , <i>quod</i> (adjective).	work, n., <i>opera</i> , -ae, f.
when, <i>cum</i> , <i>ubi</i> .	work, v., <i>labōrō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
where, <i>ubi</i> .	worn out, <i>dēfessus</i> , -a, -um.
wherefore, <i>cūr</i> .	worse, <i>peior</i> , <i>peius</i> .
whether, <i>utrum</i> , <i>num</i> .	would that, <i>utinam</i> .
which, <i>quī</i> , <i>quae</i> , <i>quod</i> .	wound, n., <i>vulnus</i> , -eris, n.
which of two, <i>uter</i> , <i>utra</i> , <i>utrum</i> .	wound, v., <i>vulnerō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
white, <i>albus</i> , -a, -um.	wretched, <i>miser</i> , -era, -erum.
who, <i>quī</i> , <i>quae</i> , <i>quod</i> (relative); <i>quis</i> , <i>quid</i> (interrog.).	write, <i>scribō</i> , -ere, <i>scripsī</i> , <i>scriptus</i> .
whole, <i>tōtus</i> , -a, -um.	wrong, <i>iniūria</i> , -ae, f.
why, <i>cūr</i> , <i>quamobrem</i> .	
wide, <i>lātus</i> , -a, -um.	Y
width, <i>lātitudō</i> , -inis, f.	year, <i>annus</i> , -ī, m.
willing, <i>volō</i> , <i>velle</i> , <i>voluī</i> .	yet, <i>tamen</i> .
wind, <i>ventus</i> , -ī, m.	yoke, <i>iugum</i> , -ī, n.
wing (of an army), <i>cornū</i> , -ūs, n.	you, <i>tū</i> , <i>tuī</i> .
winter, n., <i>hiems</i> , <i>hiemis</i> , f.	young, <i>iūvenis</i> , -e.
winter quarters, <i>hiberna</i> , -ōrum, n.	young man, <i>adulēscēns</i> , -centis, m.
wisely, <i>sapienter</i> .	your, <i>tuus</i> , -a, -um; <i>vester</i> , -tra, -trum.
	yourself, <i>tuī</i> (reflexive).



# INDEX

*References are to sections*

## A

- ā** or **ab** with ablative of agent, 175.  
 place whence, 112,  
 place in which, 112.
- abbreviations**, page 278.
- ablative case**,  
 absolute, 484;  
 adverbial, 406;  
 of accompaniment, 136;  
 of agent, 175;  
 of cause, 229;  
 of degree of difference, 272;  
 of manner, 151;  
 of means, 87;  
 of quality, 464;  
 of separation, 336;  
 of specification, 238;  
 of time, 182;  
 with *utor*, etc., 389;  
 with prepositions, 352;  
 with *dē* or *ex* instead of the genitive of the whole, 283, note;  
 with *quaerō* and *petō*, 422, 464.
- accent**, see Introduction VIII.
- accompaniment**, 136.
- accusative case**,  
 adverbial, 405;  
 direct object, 21;  
 duration of time, 307;  
 extent of space, 307;  
 place whither, 112;  
 subject of infinitive, 327;  
 with prepositions, 353.
- ācer**, declension, 570;  
 comparison, 576.
- ācriter**, comparison, 578.
- ad**, with accusative, place to which, 112.
- adjectives**, 52, 617–621;  
 agreement of, 56;  
 of first and second declensions, 52;  
 of third declension, one termination, 194; two terminations, 187; three terminations, 179;  
 of peculiar declension, 311;  
 comparison, 246; regular, 247, irregular, 262, 577; with *magis* and *maximē*, 262 (c);  
 meaning of comparatives, 247 (a);  
 meaning of superlatives, 247 (a);  
 declension of comparatives, 248;  
 declension of superlatives, 248 (a);  
 ending in *er*, 254;  
 five ending in *lis*, 255;  
 with dative, 258, 290;  
 numerals, 346, 579.
- adverbs**, 646–649; derivation, 268;  
 formation, 268;  
 comparison, 269, 578;  
 adverbial ablative, 406;  
 adverbial accusative, 405.



**agent**, expressed by ablative with  
*ā* or *ab*, 175;  
 expressed by dative with pas-  
 sive periphrastic, 546.  
**agreement** of adjectives, 56;  
 of appositives, 221;  
 of possessive pronouns,  
 436 (a);  
 of relative pronouns, 417;  
 of verb with subject, 18.  
**aliquis**, declension, 467.  
**alius**, declension, 574.  
**alphabet**, see Introduction I.  
**answers**, 26.  
**Appendix I**, pages 275–281;  
**Appendix II**, pages 282–296;  
**Appendix III**, pages 297–330.  
**apposition**, 221.  
**audiō**, 589.

## B

**base**, 8 (b).  
**bene**, comparison, 578.  
**bonus**, declension, 569;  
 comparison, 577.

## C

**Caesar Phrases**, 186, 192, 267,  
 275, 286, 302, 320, 351,  
 358, 460, 483, 540.  
**capiō**, conjugation, 590.  
**cardinals**, 346, 619; list of, 579;  
 indeclinable, 346 (a).  
**case**, 612.  
**cases**, names and uses, 5, 549–  
 551, 554–557, 613–615.  
**causal clauses**, 492.  
**cause**, ablative of, 229.  
**circumstantial clauses**, 491.  
**comparative**, declension, 248;  
 meaning, 247 (a).

**comparison** of adjectives, 620, 621;  
 regular, 247;  
 irregular, 262, 577;  
 positive wanting, 262 (b);  
 ending in *er*, 254;  
 four ending in *lis*, 255;  
 of adverbs, 269, 578.

**complementary infinitive**, 210.

**composition**, 162, 185, 205, 213,  
 363, page 296.

**compound nouns**, 287 (a).

**compound verbs**, 440.

**concessive clauses**, 493.

**conditional sentences**, 498–504.

**conjugations**, 140;

how distinguished, 140;

*portō*, 67, 73, 74, 586;

*moneō*, 141, 142, 587;

*dūcō*, 588;

*audiō*, 589;

*capiō*, 590;

*sum*, *possum*, 591;

*volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, 592;

*ferō*, 593;

*eō*, 594;

*fiō*, 595.

**conjunctions**, 651.

**consonants**, how pronounced, see  
 Introduction IV.

**cum clauses**, 490–493.

## D

**dative case**,

of agent, 546;

with adjectives, 258, 290;

with compound verbs, 440;

of indirect object, 79;

with intransitive verbs, 516;

of possessor, 528;

of purpose, 522;

reference, 522.

**dē or ex**, with ablative instead of genitive of the whole, 283, note.

**dea**, declension, 568.

**declensions**, defined, 4;  
how distinguished, 32;  
first, 7, 8;  
second, 32, 33, 45, 46;  
third, 125, 133, 148, 155;  
fourth, 280;  
fifth, 287.

**definite measurements**, 464 (a).

**degree of difference**, 272.

**demonstrative pronouns**, 454, 582.

**deponent verbs**, 385.

**descriptive**, ablative, or genitive, 464.

**deus**, declension, 568.

**difficilis**, comparison, 255.

**diphthongs**, pronunciation, see Introduction III.

**direct object**, 21.

**domus**, declension, 568;  
in expressions of place, 299.

**double questions**, 461.

**dūcō**, conjugation, 588.

**duo**, declension, 575.

**duration of time**, 307.

## E

**ē or ex**, place out of which, 112.

**ego**, declension, 580.

**English Grammar**, 596-658.

**English-Latin Letter**, 2.

**eō**, conjugation, 594.

**esse**, often omitted, 470 ².

**ex** with ablative instead of genitive of the whole, 283, note.

**expression of place**, 112.

**extent of space**, 307.

**exterus**, comparison, 577.

## F

**facile**, comparison, 578.

**facilis**, comparison, 255, 577.

**feminine gender**, see Introduction IX (b).

**ferō**, conjugation, 593.

**filius**, vocative, 33 (b).

**fiō**, conjugation, 595.

**fruor**, followed by ablative, 389.

**future tense**, formation, 74, 214.

**future perfect**, formation, 106.

## G

**gender**, 610; rules for, Introduction IX.

in first declension, 7;

in second declension, 32, 45;

in third declension, 125;

in fourth declension, 280;

in fifth declension, 287.

of possessive pronouns, 439.

**genitive case**,

of description or quality, 464;

of definite measurement, 464 (a);

of the whole, 283;

of possession, 36;

objective, 395;

subjective, 394;

with adjectives, 396.

**gerund**, 531.

**gerundive**, 532;

gerundive construction, 533;

takes dative of agent, 546;

used with *ad* to express purpose, 536, 3;

used with *causā* to express purpose, 536, 4;

**gerundive** (*continued*),  
 used with *sum* to form pas-  
 sive periphrastic, 543;  
 with *sum* implies duty or  
 necessity, 543.

## H

**helpful hints**, Appendix II.  
**hic**, declension, 582.  
**historical tenses**, 375.  
**hostis**, distinguished from *inimī-*  
*cus*, 288.

## I

**i**, takes place of **j**, Introduction I.  
**i-stems**, 155, 156.  
**idem**, declension, 582.  
**idōneus**, comparison, 577.  
**ille**, declension, 582.  
**imperative**, 635.  
**imperfect**, distinguished from  
 perfect, 100 (a);  
 formation of, 73.  
**imperō**, governs dative and sub-  
 junctive, 373.  
**impersonal verbs**, 625.  
**in**, with accusative and ablative,  
 353 (a).  
**indefinite pronouns**, 467.  
**indicative**, 633.  
**indirect discourse**, 323, 324, 424.  
**indirect object**, 79, 657.  
**indirect question**, 424.  
**infinitives**, 636, 637;  
 formation, 322;  
 complementary, 210;  
 used as subject, 496<sup>1</sup>;  
 in indirect discourse, 323;  
 takes accusative as subject,  
 327;  
 time denoted by, 324;

in compounds *esse* omitted,  
 470<sup>2</sup>;  
 not used to express purpose,  
 366.  
**inflection**, 3, 616.  
**inimīcus**, distinguished from *hos-*  
*tis*, 288.  
**instrumental ablative**, 87.  
**intensive pronoun**, 455.  
**interior**, comparison, 577.  
**interjections**, 652.  
**interrogative particles**, 96.  
**interrogative pronouns**, 421.  
**-iō verbs** of the third conjugation,  
 340.  
**ipse**, declension, 582.  
**irregular adjectives**, comparison,  
 577.  
**irregular verbs**, *sum*, 591;  
*possum*, *eō*, *ferō*, *fīō*, *volō*, *nōlō*,  
*mālō*, 591-595.  
**is**, declension, 582;  
 used as pronoun, 428.  
**iste**, declension, 582.  
**iubeō**, governs infinitive, 456.

## J

**j**, supplied by **i**, see Introduction  
 I.

## L

**Latin Phrases**, page 277.  
**Latin in every day use**, page  
 275.  
**Latin words in the Constitution**,  
 page 277.  
**Latin Quotations**, pages 279-281.  
**Latin Songs**, pages 267-274.  
**locative case**, 299.  
**longior**, declension, 248.

## M

- magis**, used in comparison, 262  
 (c).  
**magnopere**, comparison, 578.  
**magnus**, comparison, 577;  
 declension, 53.  
**male**, comparison, 578.  
**mālō**, conjugation, 592.  
**malus**, comparison, 577.  
**manner**, ablative of, 151.  
**masculine gender**, Introduction  
 IX (a).  
**means**, ablative of, 87.  
**melior**, declension, 573.  
**meus**, 436.  
**mile**, how expressed, 304 (a).  
**mille**, how used, 304.  
**miser**, declension, 83;  
 comparison, 576.  
**miserē**, comparison, 578.  
**moneō**, 587.  
**mood**, 632-637.  
**multus**, comparison, 577.

## N

- nē**, introducing negative clause  
 of purpose, 366.  
**-ne**, enclitic, 26.  
**neuter gender**, Introduction IX  
 (c).  
**nōlō**, conjugation, 592.  
**nominative case**, 613;  
 subject of finite verb, 17;  
 of pronouns expressed only  
 for emphasis, 433<sup>2</sup>;  
 predicate nominative, 41.  
**nōnne**, 96.  
**nōs**, declension, 580.  
**noster**, formation and declen-  
 sion, 436.

**note book suggestions**, pages  
 289-290.

- nouns**, 596-601;  
 first declension, 7, 8;  
 second declension, 32, 33, 45,  
 46;  
 third declension, 125, 133, 148,  
 155, 156;  
 fourth declension, 280;  
 fifth declension, 287;  
 compound nouns, 287 (a);  
 parsing, 128.

**num**, 96.

**number**, 13, 611.

- numerals**, list of, 346, 579;  
 indeclinable, 346 (a).

## O

- object**, direct, 21, 654;  
 indirect, 79.  
**objective genitive**, 395.  
**Oral Exercises**, 27, 39, 44, 51,  
 59, 72, 82, 90, 97, 105, 111,  
 119, 132, 139, 147, 154, 178,  
 201, 220, 225, 232, 241, 253,  
 261, 293, 310, 316, 332, 339,  
 345, 371, 380, 392, 401, 409,  
 420, 427, 435, 443, 453.  
**ordinals**, list of, 346, 579.

## P

- parsing**, nouns, 128;  
 verbs, 222.  
**participles**, 476, 485, 645;  
 agreement, 477 (a);  
 declension, 477;  
 time denoted, 478;  
 how translated, 477 (a);  
 future, with *sum* to form active  
 periphrastic, 542;  
 in deponent verbs, 485 (b).

partitive genitive, 283<sup>1</sup>.  
 parum, comparison, 578.  
 parvus, comparison, 577.  
 passive, 168, 169, 170.  
 penult, when accented, Introduction VIII (b).  
 perfect, distinguished from imperfect, 100 (a).  
 periphrastic conjugations, 541-543.  
 personal endings, 13, 99, 168.  
 personal pronouns, 428;  
     supplied by *is*, 428.  
 petō, governs accusative and ablative, 462.  
 phrases from Caesar, see Caesar.  
 phrases, Latin, pages 277, 278.  
 place constructions, 112, 299;  
     with names of towns, etc., 299.  
 portō, conjugation, 586.  
 possession, genitive of, 36, 656.  
 possessive pronouns, 436;  
     gender of, 439.  
 possessor, dative of, 528.  
 possum, composition, 207;  
     conjugation, 591.  
 posterus, comparison, 577.  
 potēns, declension, 572.  
 potior, governs ablative, 389.  
 predicate nominative, 41, 655.  
 prepositions, 650; govern accusative, 353; govern ablative, 352.  
 principal parts of verbs, 65;  
     why so called, 65.  
 principal tenses, 375.  
 prior, comparison, 577.  
 pronouns, 602-608;  
     demonstrative, 454;  
     indefinite, 467;

pronouns, intensive, 455;  
     interrogative, 421;  
     personal, 428; order, 433<sup>2</sup>;  
     possessive, 436; agreement, 436 (a); gender, 439; used substantively, 441<sup>2</sup>;  
     relative, 414, 417;  
     reflexive, 429.  
 pronunciation, see Introduction.  
 propior, comparison, 577.  
 pulchrē, comparison, 578.  
 purpose, clauses of,  
     subjunctive with *ut* or *nē*, 366;  
     subjunctive with *quā*, 418<sup>1</sup>, 536, 2;  
     gerundive construction with *ad*, 536, 3;  
     gerundive construction with *causā*, 536, 4;  
     expressed by the dative, 522;  
     not expressed by infinitive, 366.

## Q

quaerō, governs accusative and ablative, 422.  
 quality, genitive, or ablative, 464.  
 quantity of vowels, Introduction V.  
 quantity of syllables, Introduction VII.  
 questions, direct, 26, 131; indirect, 424; double, 461.  
 quī, declension, 583.  
 quī, equivalent to *ut* and personal pronoun, 418<sup>1</sup>.  
 quis, declension, 584.  
 quotations, Latin, pages 279-281.

## R

**Reading Lessons**, pages  
 Arena Romana, 12;  
 Gallia, 18;  
 Oppugnatio Oppidi, 23;  
 Via Appia, 26;  
 Servus Malus, 35;  
 Carolus et Poma, 44;  
 Servus Fidus, 52;  
 Helvetii, 63;  
 Auxilium Amici, 73;  
 Dux Militibus, 79;  
 Populus Romanus, 83;  
 Puer et Poma, 92;  
 Rex Galliae, 97;  
 A Practical Joke, 106;  
 Horatius Cocles, 109;  
 The Mouse-Tower, I, 115;  
 The Mouse-Tower, II, 119;  
 Corneliae Ornamenta, 125;  
 Forum Romanum, 129;  
 The Weather-wise Donkey, 136;  
 A Breach of Discipline, 143;  
 Orgetorix, 146;  
 Nasica et Ennius, 148;  
 Tarpeia, 155;  
 Robert, King of Scots, I, 158;  
 Robert, King of Scots, II, 161;  
 Domus Romana, 167;  
 The Beginnings of Rome, 175;  
 Romulus and Remus, 179;  
 The Death of Amulius, 183;  
 The Naming of Rome, 187;  
 The Seizure of the Women, 193;  
 The Reign of Romulus, 198;  
 Numa and Tullus, 202;  
 The Fourth and Fifth Kings, 205;  
 Servius Tullius, 210;

Tarquin the Proud, 221;  
 Virgines Vestales, 224;  
 The First Punic War, 227;  
 The Capture of Regulus, 231;  
 The Heroism of Regulus, 240.  
**reflexive pronouns**, 429.  
**relative pronoun**, 414, 417.  
**result**, clauses of, 402.  
**review**, Lessons 6, 11, 19, 25, 30, 36, 41, 47, 53, 56, 60, 65, 70, 75.  
 of cases, Lessons 81, 82.  
 of subjunctives, Lesson 83.

## S

**semi-deponent verbs**, 525.  
**separation**, ablative of, 336.  
**sequence of tenses**, 376.  
**sī**, introducing conditions, 498.  
**Sight Reading**, 64, 124, 167, 206, 245, 279, 321, 364, 384, 413, 475, 512.  
**similis**, governing dative, 258;  
 governing genitive, 396 (a).  
**Songs**, pages 267-274.  
**space**, extent of, 307.  
**specification**, ablative of, 238.  
**State Mottoes**, page 276.  
**stem**, of nouns, 155 (a); of verbs, 66, 98, 170.  
**sub** with accusative and ablative, 353 (a).  
**subject**, of finite verb, 17; agreement of verb, 18; of infinitive, 327; not expressed, 13.  
**subjective genitive**, 394.  
**subjunctive**, 560, 634; translation, 365 (b);  
 formation of, 365, 372;  
 in causal clauses, 492;  
 in circumstantial clauses, 491;

**subjunctive** (*continued*),

- in concessive clauses, 493;
- in conditional clauses, 498-504;
- in purpose clauses, 366;
- in result clauses, 402;
- in temporal clauses, 491 (a);
- in indirect discourse, 424;
- in indirect questions, 424.

**suī**, declension, 581.

**sum**, 40; conjugation, 591.

**Supplementary Reading**,

- Story of Ulysses, pages 243-254;
- Selections from Caesar, pages 255-266.

**suus**, 436.

**syllables**, how many, how divided, quantity, Introduction VI, VII.

**synopsis**, 108, 629.

**T**

**temporal clauses**, 491 (a).

**tenses**, 638-643; principal and historical, 375; sequence of, 376.

**time**, when, 182; duration of, 307.

**towns**, construction with names of, 299.

**tuus**, formation and declension, 436.

**U**

**ūnus**, declension, 574.

**ut**, introducing clauses of purpose, 366; of result, 402; of negative result (*ut nōn*), 402.

**ūtor**, governs ablative, 389.

**utrum** . . . **an**, 461.

**V****Value of Latin**, 1-3.

- verbs**, 622-645; agreement with subject, 18, 644; personal endings, 13, 99, 168;
- first conjugation, 586;
- second conjugation, 587;
- third conjugation, 588;
- verbs in -iō, 340, 590;
- fourth conjugation, 589;
- conjugations distinguished, 140;
- stems, how found, 66, 98, 170;
- deponents, 385;
- why so called, 385<sup>1</sup>;
- how distinguished, 385;
- semi-deponents, 525;
- compounded with prepositions, 419, 440;
- impersonal, 625;
- parsing, 222;
- irregular, see *sum*, *possum*, *eō*, *ferō*, *fīō*, *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*.
- vester**, formation and declension, 436.
- vīs**, declension, 568.
- Vocabularies**, Latin-English, page 1;
- English-Latin, page 33.
- vocative case**, 5; form of, 8 (a), 33 (a), (b).
- voice**, 630, 631.
- volō**, conjugation, 592;
- syntax of, 519.
- vowels**, quantity, long, short, see Introduction V.

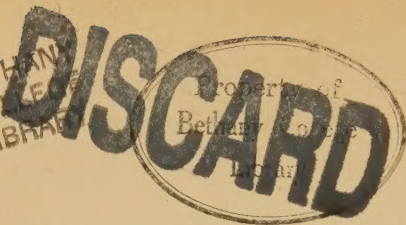
**W**

**word formation**, pages 287-289, 295, 296.





BETHANY  
COLLEGE  
LIBRARY



Smith, M. L.

Elementary Latin

BETHANY  
COLLEGE  
LIBRARY  
**DISCARD**

Sm

